

**KWiC**  
Key Words  
in Context

**WEB**

# Fachwortschatz Medizin **Englisch**

Sprachtrainer & Fachwörterbuch in einem

Ingrid & Michael Friedbichler

3. unveränderte Auflage



 Online-Version in der eRef

 **Thieme**



# A Short Guide to KWic-Web

## Das Wichtigste über Aufbau und Struktur auf einen Blick

Die Fachbereiche (Units) sind von 1–142 durchnummeriert und über das nach Abschnitten gegliederte Register schnell auffindbar.

### Unit 43 Lungs & Airways

Related Units: **44** Respiration, **21** Head & Neck, **22** Trunk, **32** Heart, **45** Digestive Tract, **66** Human Sound & Speech, **111** Respiratory Signs & Symptoms

Auf Module, die angrenzende Fachbereiche (Units) bzw. verwandte Wortfelder behandeln, wird am Kopf jedes Moduls verwiesen.

Die blau hinterlegten engl. Schlüsselwörter (= Haupteinträge) sind fachlichen Kriterien folgend angeordnet (jeweils vom grundlegenden zum spezifischen Fachausdruck).

Deutsche Übersetzung(en) des Haupteintrags; falls wie hier mehrere Bedeutungen vorliegen, werden die dt. Entsprechungen jeweils den engl. Erklärungen zugeordnet.

<p><b>potency</b> [ˈpɒtənsɪ] <i>n term</i>    <b>opposite impotence</b><sup>1</sup> [ɪmˈpɒtənsɪ] <i>n term</i></p> <p>(i) capable of having <b>sexual intercourse</b><sup>2</sup> (ii) the pharmacological activity of a <b>substance</b></p> <p><b>potent</b> [ˈpɒtənt] <i>adj term</i> • <b>impotent</b> <i>adj</i> • <b>potency-sparing</b><sup>3</sup> [ˈpɒtənsɪˈsɜːɪ] <i>adj</i></p> <p>» Advances in <b>surgical technique</b> [tekniːk] have led to preservation of <b>potency</b> in up to 80% of <b>prostatectomy patients</b>. The patient was <b>potent prior to</b><sup>4</sup> and after the procedure [siː].</p> <p>Use <b>to affect</b><sup>5</sup>/<b>preserve</b><sup>6</sup>/<b>restore</b> <b>potency</b> • <b>potency rate</b> • <b>potency-sparing surgery</b> • fully <b>potent</b> • sexual / postoperative / <b>erectile impotence</b> • <b>potent drug</b><sup>7</sup></p>	<p>(i) <b>Potenz</b>; (ii) <b>Wirkung, Wirksamkeit</b></p> <p>Impotenz<sup>1</sup> Geschlechtsverkehr<sup>2</sup> potenzerhaltend<sup>3</sup> vor<sup>4</sup> die Potenz beeinträchtigt<sup>5</sup> die Potenz erhalten<sup>6</sup> hochwirksames Medikament<sup>7</sup></p>
---	--

Die Schlüsselwörter werden in engl. Sprache umschrieben bzw. erläutert; den Bedeutungen im jeweiligen Fachgebiet gilt dabei das Hauptaugenmerk.

Gebräuchliche Wendungen und typische Wortverbindungen mit den Schlüsselwörtern, verwandten Termini und der Wortfamilie sind angeführt.

Wortart(en) und Stilebene(n) der Termini sind angegeben.

Mit dem Schlüsselwort in enger Beziehung stehende Termini, bes. Synonyme, Antonyme, Ober- und Unterbegriffe (Thesaurus-Prinzip).

<p><b>embryo transfer</b> <i>n term</i>    <b>rel oocyte retrieval</b><sup>1</sup> [iː], <b>donor oocyte</b><sup>2</sup> <i>n term</i></p> <p>after in vitro [ɪnˈvɪtʁo] insemination the fertilized ovum is transferred to the recipient's uterus or oviduct</p> <p><b>donate</b><sup>3</sup> [ˈdɒneɪt] <i>v term</i> • <b>retrieve</b><sup>4</sup> [rɪˈtriːv] <i>v</i></p> <p>» The patient's single fertilized ovum was <b>cultured</b><sup>5</sup> for 41 hours and transferred as a four-cell embryo. Not all patients entering an IVF program progress to <b>oocyte retrieval</b> and <b>embryo transfer</b> along with cycle [saɪkl] <b>outcome</b>.</p> <p>Use (non)operative / laparoscopic / <b>tubal</b><sup>6</sup> [tʃ(ɪ)ʊbəl] (<b>abbr TET</b>) <b>embryo transfer</b> • <b>frozen</b><sup>7</sup> (<b>abbr FET</b>) or <b>cryopreserved</b><sup>7</sup> (<b>abbr CET</b>) / <b>IVF</b><sup>8</sup> and (<b>abbr IVF-ET</b>) <b>embryo transfer</b> • <b>tubal ovum</b> (<b>abbr TOT</b>) <b>low tubal ovum</b> (<b>abbr LTOT</b>) <b>transfer</b></p>	<p><b>Embryo(nen)transfer</b></p> <p>Eizellennentnahme, -gewinnung<sup>1</sup> Spendereizelle<sup>2</sup> spenden<sup>3</sup> entnehmen<sup>4</sup> kultiviert<sup>5</sup> tubarer Embryo-transfer<sup>6</sup> Transfer/ Einsetzen von kryokonservierten Embryonen, IVF-Kryozyklus, Aufzuchtzyklus<sup>7</sup> in vitro Fertilisation mit Embryo-transfer<sup>8</sup></p>
---	---

Wichtige Begriffe aus der Wortfamilie des Haupteintrags sowie der verwandten Termini ergänzen und vertiefen den Wortschatz.

Wichtige englische Begriffe und Textpassagen, die schwer erschließbar sind (blau), werden zusätzlich übersetzt (Zuordnung über Hochzahlen).

Die Aussprache bzw. Betonung schwieriger Wörter ist in internationaler Lautschrift angegeben.

Beispielsätze aus der Fachliteratur u. klinischen Praxis veranschaulichen die Verwendung der Fachtermini.

<p><b>surgeon</b> [ˈsɜːrʒən] <i>n term</i>    <b>syn operator</b> <i>n term</i></p> <p>physician who specializes in surgery; in the UK they are traditionally <b>addressed</b><sup>1</sup> as Mr X rather than Dr X.</p> <p><b>operator-dependent</b><sup>2</sup> <i>adj term</i></p> <p>» Given an <b>accomplished</b><sup>3</sup> surgeon and good preoperative preparation this nerve can be <b>preserved</b><sup>4</sup> in more than 98% of cases. In this technique skillful operators make only minimal use of sutures [tʃ].</p> <p>Use <b>attending</b><sup>5</sup> / general / plastic / <b>house</b><sup>6</sup> (BE) / assistant / experienced <b>surgeon</b> • <b>the surgeon's</b> technical [k] skills / <b>judgement</b><sup>7</sup> [dʒʌdʒ-] responsibility / experience</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Do not be confused by the fact that the <b>operator</b> is commonly the person who works on a telephone switchboard or operates any other apparatus or machine.</p>	<p><b>Chirurg(in), Operateur(in)</b></p> <p>angesprochen<sup>1</sup> abhängig v. Chirurg(in)<sup>2</sup> gut, fähig<sup>3</sup> erhalten<sup>4</sup> behandelnde(r) Chirurg(in)<sup>5</sup> Arzt od. Ärztin i. Praktikum / Turnusarzt od. -ärztin a.d. chir. Abteilung<sup>6</sup> Ermessen d. Chirurgen/-in<sup>7</sup></p>
--	--

Zusätzliche Anmerkungen und Tipps weisen auf sprachliche Besonderheiten, Fallen und Stolpersteine hin.

Die Einträge sind modulweise durchnummeriert (leichteres Auffinden über den Index und bei Querverweisen).



# Overview of Parts & Units • Register der Abschnitte & Module

## Part 1 Basic Medical Terms

**Unit 1** Health & Fitness, **Unit 2** Diet & Dieting, **Unit 3** Food & Drink, **Unit 4** Illness & Recovery, **Unit 5** Injuries, **Unit 6** Accidents & Emergencies, **Unit 7** States of Consciousness, **Unit 8** First Aid, **Unit 9** Drugs & Remedies, **Unit 10** Alcohol & Smoking, **Unit 11** Substance Abuse, **Unit 12** Death & Mortality

## Part 2 Health Care

**Unit 13** Health Care Administration, **Unit 14** Hospitals & Medical Facilities, **Unit 15** Medical Staff & Specialties, **Unit 16** Nurses & Paramedical Staff, **Unit 17** Basic Medical Equipment & Supplies, **Unit 18** At the Doctor's, **Unit 19** On the Ward, **Unit 20** Hospital Routines

## Part 3 Body Structures & Functions

**Unit 21** Head & Neck, **22** The Trunk, **23** Extremities, **24** Body Height & Weight, **25** Build & Appearance, **26** Teeth, **27** Dentition & Mastication, **28** Bones, **29** Joints, **30** Muscles & Tendons, **31** Musculoskeletal Function, **32** The Heart, **33** Cardiac Function, **34** Blood Vessels, **35** The Lymphatic System, **36** Blood & Lymph Circulation, **37** The Blood, **38** Hematopoiesis & Coagulation, **39** The Immune System, **40** The Nervous System, **41** The Brain, **42** Nerve Function, **43** Lungs & Airways, **44** Respiration, **45** Digestive Tract, **46** Digestion, **47** Liver & Biliary System, **48** Kidneys & Urinary Tract, **49** Urine Production & Elimination, **50** Female Sexual Organs, **51** Menstrual Cycle, **52** Male Sexual Organs, **53** Male Sexual Function, **54** Endocrine Glands, **55** Hormones, **56** The Skin, **57** The Senses, **58** Eyes, **59** Vision, **60** Ears, **61** Hearing, **62** Smell, Taste & Touch

## Part 4 Complex Body Functions

**Unit 63** Posture & Position, **Unit 64** Body Movement, **Unit 65** Walking & Locomotion, **Unit 66** Human Sounds & Speech, **Unit 67** Gestures & Body Language, **Unit 68** Sexuality, **Unit 69** Fertility & Reproductive Medicine, **Unit 70** Pregnancy, **Unit 71** Childbirth, **Unit 72** Sleep, **Unit 73** Mental Activity, **Unit 74** Memory, **Unit 75** Personality & Behavior, **Unit 76** Mood & Attitude, **Unit 77** Mental Health, **Unit 78** Metabolism, **Unit 79** Nutrition, **Unit 80** Growing Up & Aging

## Part 5 Medical Science

**Unit 81** Biochemistry & Molecular Biology, **Unit 82** Biochemical Elements & Compounds, **Unit 83** Cytology & Cell Biology, **Unit 84** Clinical Genetics, **Unit 85** Medical Embryology, **Unit 86** Histology, **Unit 87** Anatomy, **Unit 88** General Physiology, **Unit 89** General Pathology, **Unit 90** Pathogens & Parasites, **Unit 91** Toxicology, **Unit 92** Pharmacologic Agents, **Unit 93** Anesthetics, **Unit 94** Infectious Diseases, **Unit 95** Childhood Diseases, **Unit 96** Sexually Transmitted Diseases, **Unit 97** General Oncology, **Unit 98** Tumor Types, **Unit 99** Radiology, **Unit 100** Medical Statistics, **Unit 101** Medical Studies & Clinical Trials

## Part 6 Clinical Terms

**Unit 102** History Taking, **103** Clinical Symptoms, **104** Pain, **105** Fever & Sweating, **106** Fractures, **107** Physical Examination, **108** Clinical Signs, **109** Gastrointestinal Symptoms, **110** Cardiovascular Symptoms, **111** Respiratory Symptoms, **112** Urologic Symptoms, **113** Neurologic Findings, **114** Skin Lesions, **115** Clinical Abbreviations, **116** Lab Studies, **117** Diagnosis, **118** Diagnostic Procedures, **119** Etiology, Course & Prognosis, **120** Therapeutic Intervention, **121** Pharmacologic Treatment, **122** Immunization, **123** Resuscitation, **124** Medical & Surgical Emergencies, **125** Critical Care, **126** Surgical Treatment, **127** Basic Operative Techniques, **128** Minimally Invasive Surgery, **129** Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery, **130** Grafts & Flaps, **131** The Surgical Suite, **132** Surgical Instruments, **133** Laparoscopic Equipment, **134** Perioperative Management, **135** Anesthesiology, **136** Blood Transfusion, **137** Sutures & Suture Materials, **138** Endoscopic Suturing, **139** Asepsis, **140** Wound Healing, **141** Fracture Management, **142** Physical Therapy & Rehabilitation



**KWiC-Web**

**Fachwortschatz  
Medizin**

Englisch

Sprachtrainer & Fachwörterbuch in einem  
KWiC – Key Words in Context

Ingrid & Michael Friedbichler

3., unveränderte Auflage

69 Abbildungen



Dipl. Übers. Mag. Ingrid Friedbichler  
Mag. Michael Friedbichler, M.A.  
Medizinische Universität Innsbruck und  
Institut für Translationswissenschaft  
Leopold-Franzens-Universität Innsbruck  
Herzog-Siegfried-Ufer 15  
Österreich, 6020 Innsbruck

*Bibliografische Information der Deutschen Nationalbibliothek*

Die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek verzeichnet diese  
Publikation in der Deutschen Nationalbibliografie;  
detaillierte bibliografische Daten sind im Internet  
über <http://dnb.d-nb.de> abrufbar.

Ihre Meinung ist uns wichtig! Bitte schreiben Sie uns unter

[www.thieme.de/service/feedback.html](http://www.thieme.de/service/feedback.html)



1. Auflage 2003
2. Auflage 2007

© 2003, 2016 Georg Thieme Verlag KG  
Rüdigerstr. 14  
D-70469 Stuttgart  
Telefon: +49/07 11/89 31-0  
Unsere Homepage: [www.thieme.de](http://www.thieme.de)

Printed in Germany

Cartoons: Dr. Stephan Schreieck, Innsbruck  
Umschlaggestaltung: Thieme Verlagsgruppe  
XML-Aufbereitung: Hübner EP, 65343 Eltville  
Satz: Druckhaus Götz GmbH, 71636 Ludwigsburg  
Satzsystem: 3B2 Version 6.05  
Druck: Westermann Druck, 08058 Zwickau

ISBN 978-3-13-240240-9

1 2 3 4 5 6

Auch erhältlich als eBook  
eISBN (PDF) 978-3-13-240241-6  
eISBN (epub) 978-3-13-240242-3

**Wichtiger Hinweis:** Wie jede Wissenschaft ist die Medizin ständigen Entwicklungen unterworfen. Forschung und klinische Erfahrung erweitern unsere Kenntnisse, insbesondere was Behandlung und medikamentöse Therapie anbelangt. Soweit in diesem Werk eine Dosierung oder eine Applikation erwähnt wird, darf der Leser zwar darauf vertrauen, dass diese Angabe **dem Wissensstand bei Fertigstellung des Werkes** entspricht.

Für Angaben und Dosierungsanweisungen und Applikationsformen kann vom Verlag jedoch keine Gewähr übernommen werden. **Jeder Benutzer ist angehalten**, durch sorgfältige Prüfung der Beipackzettel der verwendeten Präparate und gegebenenfalls nach Konsultation eines Spezialisten festzustellen, ob die dort angegebene Empfehlung für Dosierung oder Beachtung von Kontraindikationen gegenüber der Angabe in diesem Buch abweicht. Eine solche Prüfung ist besonders wichtig bei selten verwendeten Präparaten oder solchen, die neu auf den Markt gebracht worden sind. **Jede Dosierung oder Applikation erfolgt auf eigene Gefahr des Benutzers.** Autoren und Verlag appellieren an jeden Benutzer, ihm etwa auffallende Ungenauigkeiten dem Verlag mitzuteilen.

Geschützte Warennamen (Warenzeichen ®) werden nicht immer besonders kenntlich gemacht. Aus dem Fehlen eines solchen Hinweises kann also nicht geschlossen werden, dass es sich um einen freien Warennamen handelt.

Das Werk, einschließlich aller seiner Teile, ist urheberrechtlich geschützt. Jede Verwendung außerhalb der engen Grenzen des Urheberrechtsgesetzes ist ohne Zustimmung des Verlages unzulässig und strafbar. Das gilt insbesondere für Vervielfältigungen, Übersetzungen, Mikroverfilmungen oder die Einspeicherung und Verarbeitung in elektronischen Systemen.



## Zum Geleit

Unsere gegenwärtige Kultur bevorzugt seit dem vergangenen Jahrhundert in der internationalen Verständigung die englische Sprache in ungeahntem Ausmaß. War im Mittelalter und auch noch zur Zeit der Aufklärung Latein die alleinige Wissenschaftssprache, konnten sich in der Vergangenheit Französisch, Deutsch, Spanisch und andere so genannte Weltsprachen nur begrenzt durchsetzen.

Erst im 20. Jahrhundert haben sich einige Technologien so durchgesetzt, dass z. B. in der Luftfahrt Englisch wirklich zur Weltsprache geworden ist. Auch in Ländern wie Russland und China, die sich nach dem Zweiten Weltkrieg als autonome Großmächte abschotten wollten, gilt sie heute im Luftverkehr als unentbehrliches Kommunikationsmittel.

Ein weiterer Bereich in der internationalen Kommunikation sind Medizin und Naturwissenschaften, die vom hohen Niveau der Wissenschaft im anglo-amerikanischen Raum beeinflusst werden. Zeitschriften und Bücher brauchen hohe Auflagen, um überleben zu können. Der englischsprachige Kulturbereich ist ein Vielfaches der europäischen und asiatischen Regionen. Kein Verlag kann sich der Expansion in diesen Raum entziehen. In vielen europäischen Ländern werden wichtige Kongresse und Symposien nur noch in englischer Sprache abgehalten. Wer aus falschem Patriotismus diese Entwicklung ablehnt, bleibt sicher auf der Strecke.

Die Autoren dieses Buches haben die Notwendigkeit von Fachenglischkenntnissen für Mediziner schon vor zwei Jahrzehnten wahrgenommen und seit 1978 am Aufbau des Lehrangebots und der Entwicklung einschlägiger Unterrichts- und Lernmaterialien zur Vermittlung der englischen Fachsprache an der medizinischen Fakultät der Universität Innsbruck mit großem Erfolg gearbeitet.

Zu dieser Pionierarbeit kann man ihnen gratulieren und wünschen, dass das nun vorliegende Werk, welches aus dieser jahrelangen Aufbauarbeit hervorgegangen ist, vielen Medizinstudenten und Ärzten den Zugang zur internationalen Fachkommunikation erleichtern möge.

Univ.-Prof. i. R. Dr. Franz Dienstl  
Ehrenpräsident der Österr. Gesellschaft für Internistische und Allgem. Intensivmedizin, ehem. Leiter der Kardiolog. Intensivstation, Universitätsklinik Innsbruck

## Foreword

It is a pleasure to write this foreword for *KWiC-Web: Fachwortschatz MEDIZIN Englisch*, a book intended to help German-speaking medical professionals to communicate with colleagues around the globe.

The world of medicine has rapidly become integrated on both clinical and basic scientific levels. A clear understanding of the English terminology and phraseology is essential to accurate interchange of ideas.

The organization and content of this book should prove very helpful to medical students and German physicians who acquire information in English textbooks and journals as well as those who seek some of their clinical training in the United States and other English-speaking countries. This project is the brainchild of Michael and Ingrid Friedbichler, both of whom have more than twenty years of experience in teaching English to medical students and young doctors at Innsbruck University. In addition, they have been involved in medical translation for many years, and as linguistic advisors have helped prepare countless papers for publication in American and British medical journals. Owing to their extensive experience in the field they are familiar with the challenges that German speakers encounter when studying international medical journals and textbooks, interviewing English-speaking patients, and writing or presenting papers in English.

KWiC-Web: MEDIZIN provides a combination of more than 140 integrated topic-related English glossaries covering all fields of medicine on the one hand and a bilingual medical dictionary on the other. The common use basic keywords are presented in a semantic network of easy-to-learn units (e.g. hormones, childhood diseases, urologic signs and symptoms, etc.) together with explanations and synonyms, related terms, sample sentences, illustrated English uses, and German translations.

This book is an extremely useful asset for those who are learning medical English, undergoing English-based clinical training, writing articles or communicating at medical meetings in English. The authors are to be congratulated for an outstanding contribution.

Anthony J. Schaeffer, MD  
Herman L. Kretschmer Professor of Urology,  
Chair, Department of Urology  
Northwestern University, Chicago, USA

## Vorwort

Als wir im Herbst 2003 dieses Fachwörterbuch unseren Mitarbeitern, den Studierenden und dem interessierten Fachpublikum an der Universität Innsbruck präsentierten, gab es zunächst manch verdutztes Gesicht, denn ein solches Wörterbuch hatten sie noch nicht gesehen. Es bedurfte einiger Zeit, aber schließlich erkannten alle, die sich mit dem Konzept näher befassten, dass dieses etwas andere Fachwörterbuch vieles kann, was sie bisher vergeblich gesucht hatten. Ähnlich waren auch die ersten Reaktionen, die uns von Benutzern und Rezensenten erreichten.

Es freut uns daher ganz besonders, dass das neuartige Konzept unseres Sprachtrainers inzwischen weithin Anerkennung gefunden hat und mittlerweile an mehreren Universitäten im deutschsprachigen Raum in Fachenglischkursen verwendet bzw. zum Selbststudium empfohlen wird. Dass mit *KWiC-Web* ein zukunftsweisendes Projekt entstanden ist, zeigt auch die Tatsache, dass sich mittlerweile Verlags-häuser in Japan, Brasilien und den Niederlanden dafür interessieren.

Wir bedanken uns für die wertvollen Rückmeldungen von Benutzern und Rezensenten im In- und Ausland. In der nun vorliegenden 2. Auflage konnten wir die Verbesserungsvorschläge in vielen Details berücksichtigen. So wurden z.B. die für Österreich spezifischen Ausdrücke in den Übersetzungen

durchgehend als solche gekennzeichnet und die Unterschiede zwischen einzelnen britischen und amerikanischen Benennungen noch exakter herausgearbeitet. Auch aktuelle Entwicklungen in den Gesundheitssystemen der englisch- und deutschsprachigen Länder seit 2002 wurden berücksichtigt. Als Ergänzung zum Buch können wir auch die inzwischen im Handel erhältliche elektronische Version auf CD-ROM empfehlen, die durch eine integrierte Volltextsuche eine effiziente Nutzung direkt auf dem PC ermöglicht.

Unser Dank gebührt dem gesamten Redaktionsteam im Georg Thieme Verlag, das uns wie schon bei der 1. Auflage bestens unterstützt hat, allen voran Herrn Dr. Urbanowicz für seine Bemühungen um eine reibungslose Kooperation, sowie Herrn Elm, der für die sorgfältige Einarbeitung der Änderungen gesorgt hat.

Wir freuen uns mit diesem Buch unsere Erfahrung beim Erwerb professioneller Englischkenntnisse anbieten zu können und wünschen allen Benutzern viel Erfolg damit. Rückmeldungen, ob Korrektur- oder Erweiterungsvorschläge, sind uns sehr willkommen und können an folgende e-Mail Adresse gerichtet werden: [med-english@i-med.ac.at](mailto:med-english@i-med.ac.at)

Innsbruck

Ingrid & Michael Friedbichler

## Vorwort zur 1. Auflage

Obwohl die englische Fachsprache heute in der Medizin zu einer wichtigen Zusatzqualifikation geworden ist, gab es bislang kaum Hilfsmittel, mit denen sich Mediziner gezielt die für ihr Fachgebiet relevante sprachliche Kompetenz aneignen konnten.

Nach mehr als 5-jähriger Entwicklungsarbeit ist es uns daher eine große Freude, nun nach dem Band zur Zahnmedizin mit *KWiC-Web: Fachwortschatz Medizin Englisch* auch Materialien zur Aktivierung der produktiven Sprachkompetenz für den gesamten medizinischen Bereich präsentieren zu können. Auf der Grundlage von computergestützten lexikographischen Methoden und den neuesten Erkenntnissen der Spracherwerbsforschung, wurde ein zukunftsweisendes Konzept entwickelt, welches Medizinern aller Fachrichtungen die Möglichkeit bietet, sich zwischendurch oder auf der Anreise zu einem Kongress mit den englischen Fachausdrücken und Wendungen bestimmter Fachbereiche rasch und effizient vertraut zu machen.

Neuland zu betreten bedeutet immer eine Potenzierung des Aufwandes. Wenngleich wir durch unsere Lehrtätigkeit an der Universität Innsbruck auf einen wertvollen Erfahrungsschatz in der Fachsprachenvermittlung zurückgreifen konnten, wäre dieses Buch ohne die Unterstützung eines ganzen Teams von Fachleuten und Beratern, denen wir an dieser Stelle unseren besonderen Dank aussprechen möchten, nicht realisierbar gewesen. An erster Stelle gebührt dieser Dank William B. Gallagher, M.D. (FACS), Tucson, AZ., USA, der für uns die englischen Termini und Texte auf deren fachliche und sprachliche Richtigkeit überprüft hat.

Des Weiteren bedanken wir uns bei einem Team von niedergelassenen und wissenschaftlich arbeitenden Fachärzten, die jeweils die deutschen Entsprechungen der übersetzten Termini in ihren Fachgebieten überprüft haben und uns darüber hinaus beratend zur Seite standen. Ganz besonders haben uns unser langjähriger Mentor Univ.-Prof. i.R. Dr. Franz Dienstl (Kardiologie, Innere Medizin), Dr. Hans Hausdorfer (Infektiologie, Pharmakologie) und Ass.-Prof. Dr. Alexander Alge (Gynäkologie, Embryologie, Onkolo-

gie, bildgebende Diagnostik) unterstützt. Unser Dank gilt auch folgenden Fachleuten von der Medizinischen Universität Innsbruck: MR Univ.-Prof. Dr. Gernot Helweg† (Radiologie), ao. Univ.-Prof. Dr. Reinhard Höpfl (Dermatologie, Venerologie), Dr. Christian Hoser (Unfallchirurgie), Univ.-Prof. Dr. Helmut Klocker (Biochemie, Genetik, Labormedizin), Univ.-Prof. Dr. Günther Putz (Anästhesie, Notfall- u. Intensivmedizin), und Dr. Hanno Ulmer (Biostatistik).

Im weiteren bedanken wir uns für die hilfreiche Fachberatung bei Dr. Peter Huemer, Wolfurt/Vlbg. (Zahnmedizin), Univ.-Prof. Dr. Günter Janetschek, Linz (minimal-invasive Chirurgie), Dr. Erich Köhler, Wien (Psychiatrie), Dr. Birgit Krecy, Telfs/Tirol (Neurologie), Dr. Wolfgang Oberthaler, Innsbruck (Orthopädie), Univ.-Prof. Dr. Arnulf Stenzl, Tübingen (Urologie, Chirurgie), Dr. Christa Them, Pflegedirektorin am AZW Innsbruck (Krankenpflege), und Mag. rer. nat. Katrin Friedbichler, Wien (Zellbiologie), sowie bei Dr. Stephan Schrieck für die humorvollen Zeichnungen, die zur Auflockerung der fachlichen Materie beitragen sollen.

Last but not least verdankt dieses Buch seine Veröffentlichung dem Pioniergeist von Dr. Thorsten Pilgrim und seinen Mitarbeitern vom Thieme Verlag, die sich nicht gescheut haben, mit *KWiC-Web* zu neuen Ufern aufzubrechen. Wir bedanken uns für das Vertrauen, das sie in uns und unsere Arbeit gesetzt haben und die weiten Wege, die sie bei der Konzeption einer benutzerfreundlichen graphischen Gestaltung und der Entwicklung einer speziellen Datenbank mit uns gegangen sind, um nur zwei der Punkte zu erwähnen, die für alle Pionierarbeit bedeutet haben.

Bleibt zu hoffen, dass dieses Buch all jenen, die sich mit der englischen Fachsprache der Medizin vertraut machen wollen, ein effizientes Hilfsmittel sein möge, das ihnen das Tor zur internationalen Fachwelt öffnet.

Innsbruck,  
im Juni 2003

Ingrid & Michael Friedbichler

## Table of Contents · Inhaltsübersicht

### Part 1 Basic Medical Terms

<b>Unit 1</b>	Health & Fitness · Gesundheit & Fitness .....	1
<b>Unit 2</b>	Diet & Dieting · Nahrung & Diät .....	6
<b>Unit 3</b>	Food & Drink · Essen & Trinken .....	10
<b>Unit 4</b>	Illness & Recovery · Krankheit & Genesung .....	14
<b>Unit 5</b>	Injuries · Verletzungen .....	18
<b>Unit 6</b>	Accidents & Emergencies · Unfälle & Notfälle .....	22
<b>Unit 7</b>	States of Consciousness · Bewusstseinslagen .....	30
<b>Unit 8</b>	First Aid · Erste Hilfe .....	33
<b>Unit 9</b>	Drugs & Remedies · Medikamente & Heilmittel .....	38
<b>Unit 10</b>	Alcohol & Smoking · Alkohol & Nikotin .....	42
<b>Unit 11</b>	Substance Abuse · Substanzmissbrauch .....	46
<b>Unit 12</b>	Death & Mortality · Tod & Mortalität .....	51

### Part 2 Health Care

<b>Unit 13</b>	Health Care Administration · Gesundheitswesen .....	56
<b>Unit 14</b>	Hospitals & Medical Facilities · Krankenhäuser & medizinische Einrichtungen .....	59
<b>Unit 15</b>	Medical Staff & Specialties · Fachärzte & ärztliches Personal .....	62
<b>Unit 16</b>	Nurses & Paramedical Staff · Pflegepersonal & medizinische Hilfsberufe .....	67
<b>Unit 17</b>	Basic Medical Equipment & Supplies · Medizinische Grundausstattung .....	71
<b>Unit 18</b>	At the Doctor's · Beim Arzt .....	75
<b>Unit 19</b>	On the Ward · Auf der Station .....	80
<b>Unit 20</b>	Hospital Routines · Von der Aufnahme bis zur Entlassung .....	84

### Part 3 Body Structures & Functions

<b>Unit 21</b>	Parts of the Body: Head & Neck · Körperteile: Kopf & Hals .....	89
<b>Unit 22</b>	The Trunk · Der Rumpf .....	92
<b>Unit 23</b>	Extremities · Extremitäten .....	95
<b>Unit 24</b>	Body Height & Weight · Körpergröße & Gewicht .....	98
<b>Unit 25</b>	Build & Appearance · Körperbau & Erscheinungsbild .....	101
<b>Unit 26</b>	Teeth · Zähne .....	104
<b>Unit 27</b>	Dentition & Mastication · Zahnen & Kauen .....	108
<b>Unit 28</b>	Bones · Knochen .....	111
<b>Unit 29</b>	Joints · Gelenke .....	117
<b>Unit 30</b>	Muscles & Tendons · Muskeln & Sehnen .....	120
<b>Unit 31</b>	Musculoskeletal Function · Funktion des Bewegungsapparats .....	125
<b>Unit 32</b>	The Heart · Das Herz .....	130
<b>Unit 33</b>	Cardiac Function · Herzfähigkeit .....	134
<b>Unit 34</b>	Blood Vessels · Blutgefäße .....	136
<b>Unit 35</b>	The Lymphatic System · Das lymphatische System .....	140
<b>Unit 36</b>	Blood & Lymph Circulation · Blut- & Lymphzirkulation .....	142
<b>Unit 37</b>	Components of the Blood · Blutbestandteile .....	146
<b>Unit 38</b>	Hematopoiesis & Coagulation · Blutbildung & Blutgerinnung .....	151
<b>Unit 39</b>	The Immune System · Das Immunsystem .....	155
<b>Unit 40</b>	The Nervous System · Das Nervensystem .....	162
<b>Unit 41</b>	Brain & Spinal Cord · Gehirn & Rückenmark .....	166
<b>Unit 42</b>	Nerve Function · Nervenfunktion .....	171
<b>Unit 43</b>	Lungs & Airways · Lunge & Atemwege .....	175
<b>Unit 44</b>	Respiration · Atmung .....	179
<b>Unit 45</b>	Digestive Tract · Der Verdauungstrakt .....	182
<b>Unit 46</b>	Digestion · Verdauung .....	186

<b>Unit 47</b>	Liver & Biliary System • Leber & Gallenwege .....	191
<b>Unit 48</b>	Kidneys & the Urinary Tract • Nieren & Harnwege .....	195
<b>Unit 49</b>	Urine Production & Elimination • Harnproduktion & -ausscheidung .....	198
<b>Unit 50</b>	Female Sexual Organs • Das weibliche Genitale .....	201
<b>Unit 51</b>	Menstrual Cycle • Menstruationszyklus .....	206
<b>Unit 52</b>	Male Sexual Organs • Das männliche Genitale .....	209
<b>Unit 53</b>	Male Sexual Function • Männliche Sexualfunktion .....	213
<b>Unit 54</b>	Endocrine Glands • Endokrine Drüsen .....	215
<b>Unit 55</b>	Hormones • Hormone .....	219
<b>Unit 56</b>	The Skin & its Appendages • Haut & Hautanhangsgebilde .....	225
<b>Unit 57</b>	The Senses • Sinnesorgane .....	231
<b>Unit 58</b>	Eyes • Augen .....	235
<b>Unit 59</b>	Vision • Gesichtssinn .....	239
<b>Unit 60</b>	Ears • Ohren .....	244
<b>Unit 61</b>	Hearing • Gehörsinn .....	248
<b>Unit 62</b>	Smell, Taste & Touch • Geruchs-, Geschmacks- & Tastsinn .....	250

## Part 4 Complex Body Functions

<b>Unit 63</b>	Posture & Position • Körperhaltung & -lage .....	253
<b>Unit 64</b>	Body Movement • Körperbewegung .....	255
<b>Unit 65</b>	Walking & Locomotion • Fortbewegung & Gang .....	260
<b>Unit 66</b>	Human Sounds & Speech • Sprache & menschliche Laute .....	264
<b>Unit 67</b>	Gestures & Body Language • Gestik & Körpersprache .....	268
<b>Unit 68</b>	Sexuality • Sexualität .....	271
<b>Unit 69</b>	Fertility & Reproductive Medicine • Fertilität & Reproduktionsmedizin .....	275
<b>Unit 70</b>	Pregnancy • Schwangerschaft .....	279
<b>Unit 71</b>	Childbirth • Geburt .....	282
<b>Unit 72</b>	Sleep • Schlaf .....	288
<b>Unit 73</b>	Mental Activity • Mentale Funktionen .....	292
<b>Unit 74</b>	Memory • Gedächtnis .....	295
<b>Unit 75</b>	Personality & Behavior • Persönlichkeit & Verhalten .....	300
<b>Unit 76</b>	Mood & Attitude • Stimmungslagen .....	306
<b>Unit 77</b>	Mental Health • Mentale Gesundheit .....	310
<b>Unit 78</b>	Metabolism • Stoffwechsel .....	319
<b>Unit 79</b>	Nutrition • Ernährung .....	324
<b>Unit 80</b>	Growing Up & Aging • Aufwachsen & Altern .....	328

## Part 5 Medical Science

<b>Unit 81</b>	Biochemistry & Molecular Biology • Biochemie & Molekularbiologie .....	332
<b>Unit 82</b>	Biochemical Elements & Compounds • Biochemische Elemente & Verbindungen .....	340
<b>Unit 83</b>	Cytology & Cell Biology • Zytologie & Zellbiologie .....	350
<b>Unit 84</b>	Clinical Genetics • Klinische Genetik .....	356
<b>Unit 85</b>	Medical Embryology • Medizinische Embryologie .....	367
<b>Unit 86</b>	Histology • Histologie .....	372
<b>Unit 87</b>	Anatomy • Anatomie .....	378
<b>Unit 88</b>	General Physiology • Allgemeine Physiologie .....	384
<b>Unit 89</b>	General Pathology • Allgemeine Pathologie .....	389
<b>Unit 90</b>	Microbes, Pathogens & Parasites • Krankheitserreger & Parasiten .....	396
<b>Unit 91</b>	Toxicology • Toxikologie .....	402
<b>Unit 92</b>	Pharmacologic Agents • Arzneimittel & pharmazeutische Wirkstoffe .....	408
<b>Unit 93</b>	Anesthetics • Betäubungsmittel .....	413
<b>Unit 94</b>	Infectious Diseases • Infektionskrankheiten .....	416
<b>Unit 95</b>	Childhood Diseases • Kinderkrankheiten .....	422
<b>Unit 96</b>	Sexually Transmitted Diseases • Sexuell übertragbare Krankheiten .....	425
<b>Unit 97</b>	General Oncology • Allgemeine Onkologie .....	428

<b>Unit 98</b>	Tumor Types • Tumorarten .....	433
<b>Unit 99</b>	Radiology • Radiologie .....	438
<b>Unit 100</b>	Medical Statistics • Biostatistik .....	442
<b>Unit 101</b>	Medical Studies & Clinical Trials • Medizinische Forschung & klinische Studien .....	448

**Part 6 Clinical Terms**

<b>Unit 102</b>	History Taking • Anamnese .....	453
<b>Unit 103</b>	Nonspecific Clinical Symptoms • Unspezifische klinische Symptome .....	456
<b>Unit 104</b>	Pain • Schmerz .....	461
<b>Unit 105</b>	Fever & Sweating • Fieber & Schweißproduktion .....	465
<b>Unit 106</b>	Fractures • Knochenbrüche .....	469
<b>Unit 107</b>	Physical Examination • Klinische Untersuchung .....	473
<b>Unit 108</b>	Common Clinical Signs • Allgemeine klinische Zeichen .....	478
<b>Unit 109</b>	Gastrointestinal Signs & Symptoms • Magen-Darm-Symptomatik .....	481
<b>Unit 110</b>	Cardiovascular Signs & Symptoms • Herz-Kreislauf-Symptomatik .....	485
<b>Unit 111</b>	Respiratory Signs & Symptoms • Atemwegssymptomatik .....	490
<b>Unit 112</b>	Urologic Signs & Symptoms • Urologische Symptomatik .....	495
<b>Unit 113</b>	Neurologic Findings • Neurologische Befunde .....	498
<b>Unit 114</b>	Skin Lesions • Hautläsionen .....	504
<b>Unit 115</b>	Clinical Abbreviations & Acronyms • Klinische Abkürzungen & Akronyme .....	508
<b>Unit 116</b>	Routine Lab Studies • Routinelaboruntersuchungen .....	513
<b>Unit 117</b>	Diagnosis • Diagnose .....	518
<b>Unit 118</b>	Diagnostic Procedures & Investigations • Diagnostische Verfahren .....	523
<b>Unit 119</b>	Etiology, Course & Prognosis • Ätiologie, Krankheitsverlauf & Prognose .....	529
<b>Unit 120</b>	Therapeutic Intervention • Therapeutische Maßnahmen .....	534
<b>Unit 121</b>	Pharmacologic Treatment • Medikamentöse Behandlung .....	537
<b>Unit 122</b>	Immunization • Immunisierung .....	540
<b>Unit 123</b>	Resuscitation • Reanimation .....	543
<b>Unit 124</b>	Medical & Surgical Emergencies • Medizinische & chirurgische Notfälle .....	548
<b>Unit 125</b>	Critical Care • Intensivmedizin .....	555
<b>Unit 126</b>	Surgical Treatment • Der operative Eingriff .....	562
<b>Unit 127</b>	Basic Operative Techniques • Chirurgische Basistechniken .....	565
<b>Unit 128</b>	Minimally Invasive Surgery • Minimal-invasive Chirurgie .....	568
<b>Unit 129</b>	Plastic & Reconstructive Surgery • Plastische & Wiederherstellungschirurgie .....	572
<b>Unit 130</b>	Grafts & Flaps • Transplantate .....	575
<b>Unit 131</b>	The Surgical Suite • Der Operationstrakt .....	578
<b>Unit 132</b>	Surgical Instruments • Chirurgische Instrumente .....	581
<b>Unit 133</b>	Laparoscopic Equipment • Laparoskopische Geräte & Instrumente .....	584
<b>Unit 134</b>	Perioperative Management • Perioperative Maßnahmen .....	587
<b>Unit 135</b>	Anesthesiology • Anästhesiologie .....	590
<b>Unit 136</b>	Blood Transfusion • Bluttransfusion .....	594
<b>Unit 137</b>	Sutures & Suture Materials • Chirurgische Nahttechniken & -materialien .....	599
<b>Unit 138</b>	Endoscopic Suturing • Endoskopische Nahttechniken .....	603
<b>Unit 139</b>	Medical & Surgical Asepsis • Medizinische & chirurgische Asepsis .....	606
<b>Unit 140</b>	Wound Healing • Wundheilung .....	608
<b>Unit 141</b>	Fracture Management • Frakturbehandlung .....	612
<b>Unit 142</b>	Physical Therapy & Rehabilitation • Physikalische Therapie & Rehabilitation .....	616

<b>Index – English Terms • Index der englischen Fachtermini .....</b>	625
---	-----

<b>Index – English Abbreviations • Index der englischen Abkürzungen .....</b>	694
---	-----

<b>Index – German Terms • Index der deutschen Fachtermini .....</b>	700
---	-----

<b>Quellenverzeichnis zu den Abbildungen .....</b>	848
--	-----

## Benutzeranleitungen

### Wozu wurde KWic-Web Fachwortschatz Medizin entwickelt?

In den letzten Jahren ist die englische Fachsprache zu einer wichtigen Zusatzqualifikation für Mediziner geworden. In diesem Bereich gibt es inzwischen eine Reihe von Materialien, größtenteils sind es jedoch medizinische Fachwörterbücher. Ob umfassend oder als Taschenbuch, gebunden oder auf CD-ROM, alle diese herkömmlichen Wörterbücher haben für den Sprachlernenden allerdings einen entscheidenden Nachteil. Durch die alphabetische Auflistung der Wörter sind sie zwar als Nachschlagewerke ideal, für den Erwerb eines einschlägigen Fachwortschatzes jedoch ungeeignet.

Was Sie hier in Händen halten ist eine völlig andere Art von Wörterbuch. Es ist nach dem Bausteinprinzip auf der Grundlage fachlicher Zusammenhänge aufgebaut und ermöglicht es sowohl Medizinstudenten, die sich mit den grundlegenden Termini auseinandersetzen, als auch Fachärzten, die sich mit den Begriffen ihres Fachbereichs vertraut machen wollen, und Pflegefachkräften ebenso wie Therapeuten und Übersetzern von medizinischen Texten, gezielt den jeweils relevanten Wortschatz aus den entsprechenden Bausteinen (Modulen) ihren speziellen Bedürfnissen entsprechend zu aktivieren. Da sich jedes Modul auf eine überschaubare Anzahl von Fachtermini beschränkt, lassen sich diese Baustein für Baustein in „schöpferischen Pausen“ zwischendurch oder auf Reisen leicht einprägen oder auffrischen.

### Wie ist der Wortschatz in KWic-Web strukturiert?

**KWic** steht für *Key Words In Context* und **Web** für die Vernetzung in semantischen Netzwerken. **KWic-Web** setzt in zweierlei Hinsicht neue Maßstäbe.

**1. Keywords.** Der medizinische Wortschatz in **KWic-Web** ist in 142 Kapitel (Module), die in semantische Netzwerke (sinnzusammenhängende Termini, Ausdrücke und Wendungen, die ähnlich wie im sog. mentalen Lexikon des menschlichen Gedächtnisses miteinander verbunden sind) gegliedert sind, aufbereitet. Diese Module umfassen die gängigen Begriffe der verschiedenen medizinischen Fachgebiete in baumdiagrammartigen Verknüpfungen – von medizinisch relevanten Wörtern aus der All-

gemeinsprache, wie z.B. *tooth decay* (*Zahnkaries*), bis hin zu spezifischen Fachtermini, wie z.B. *initial stab incision*, einem wichtigen Ausdruck in der minimal-invasiven Chirurgie.

Zusätzlich wurden die elektronisch herausgefilterten Schlüsselwörter auf ihren didaktischen Wert hin geprüft, d.h. typische englische Bezeichnungen und Wendungen werden gegenüber medizinischen Internationalismen und Termini, die dem Nicht-Native-Speaker weder in der Bedeutung noch in der Aussprache oder Verwendung Probleme bereiten, bevorzugt berücksichtigt.

Obwohl Vollständigkeit ein unerreichbares Ziel bleibt, findet man in **KWic-Web** alle wichtigen Fachtermini und darüber hinaus viele fachspezifische Wortverbindungen, die zwar gängig sind, bisher aber noch nirgends beschrieben wurden.

**2. Context.** **KWic-Web** geht weit über eine Liste von englisch-deutschen Wortgleichungen hinaus. Da die adäquate Einbettung der Fachtermini im Kontext für Fachleute wie auch Übersetzer meist die größte Hürde im aktiven Sprachgebrauch darstellt, ist die Kontextualisierung der Termini ein wesentliches Kriterium. Spracherwerb findet schließlich immer im Kontext statt, und Übersetzungen bieten meist nur in begrenztem Maß Hilfe.

Deshalb werden in **KWic-Web** die Schlüsselwörter nicht nur mit deutschen Entsprechungen, sondern jeweils samt ihrem typischen semantischen Umfeld in englischen Erklärungen, Beispielsätzen, und den gebräuchlichsten Wortverbindungen (Kollokationen) und Phrasen präsentiert, die alle einer riesigen Fachtextsammlung entnommen sind. Dies gibt dem Benutzer Einblick in die authentische Verwendung der Fachausdrücke in der medizinischen Literatur.

### Fachwörterbuch, Kollokationswörterbuch und Wissensdatenbank in einem

**KWic-Web** vereint die Vorzüge eines englischen Erklärungswörterbuches mit jenen einer einsprachigen Phraseologiesammlung und eines zweisprachigen Nachschlagewerkes.

Jedes Modul beinhaltet rund 200 morphologisch oder semantisch verwandte Ausdrücke, Phrasen,

und Kollokationen, die mit verwandten Modulen durch Verweise verbunden sind, sodass ein einprägsames semantisches Netzwerk (=Web) von miteinander in enger Beziehung stehenden Termini, Erläuterungen, Wortverbindungen, lexikalischen Clustern und Fakten entsteht, das einer Wissensdatenbank gleicht. Dadurch wird nicht nur die Verwendung der Schlüsselwörter veranschaulicht, sondern auch deren Verknüpfung und Beziehung mit anderen Fachtermini aufgezeigt. So wird jedes Modul zu einer Zusammenschau der wichtigsten Schlüsselwörter und Wendungen, denen man in einschlägigen Fachtexten und im Klinikalltag immer wieder begegnet. Vertraute Ausdrücke und solche, die man schon einmal gehört aber wieder vergessen hat, stehen dabei neben unbekanntem, und **KWiC-Web** zeigt, wie sie untereinander vernetzt sind. Es entstehen im Unterbewusstsein Assoziationen, die das Wiedererkennen und Behalten auf lange Sicht wesentlich verbessern. Dadurch kommt das Arbeiten mit **KWiC-Web** dem Studium bzw. „Querlesen“ tausender Seiten von Fachtexten gleich – allerdings in kürzester Zeit, da es sich um einen stark verdichteten Auszug handelt (deshalb auch KWIC-!).

### Korpusgestütztes Erfassen

Ohne die Verwendung von repräsentativen elektronischen Korpora von authentischen englischen Fachtexten wäre die Selektion der Schlüsselwörter, Kontextbeispiele, und Kollokationen nur mit Qualitätseinbußen und einem riesigen Zeitaufwand zu bewältigen. **KWiC-Web** basiert auf einem über 20 Mio. Wörter umfassenden medizinischen Textkorpus. Um die Verlässlichkeit hoch und die Fehlerhaftigkeit gering zu halten, wurden ausschließlich authentische Quellen (Standard-Handbücher, Fachartikel, und Fachtexte englischsprachiger Autoren herangezogen.

Die moderne Computerlinguistik ermöglicht es uns, spezifische Fragen des Sprachgebrauchs, v.a. die Verwendung und Verbreitung von Fachausdrücken und Wendungen, anhand von authentischen Fachtexten per Knopfdruck zu prüfen. Da **KWiC-Web** auf der Grundlage solcher Textanalysen erstellt wurde, sind die Sprachdaten nicht nur aktuell sondern geben auch die Sprache wieder, die in der Fachkommunikation tatsächlich verwendet wird.

### Welches Englisch?

Die Weltsprache Englisch hat viele Ausprägungen und Varianten. In **KWiC-Web** wird grundsätzlich

*Standard American* als Ausgangssprache verwendet, es wird aber auf regionale Varianten – besonders auf Unterschiede zwischen amerikanischem und britischem Englisch – verwiesen und diese fallweise auch erläutert (besonders bei unterschiedlicher Bedeutung oder Verwendung; s. auch Hinweise zur Aussprache und Schreibweise, letzte Seite).

### Wie sind die Module aufgebaut?

Die Aufbereitung des medizinischen Fachwortschatzes in übersichtliche Module erfolgte analog zur fachlichen Strukturierung in einzelne Fachbereiche. Auch innerhalb der Module sind die Wortfelder nach fachlich-semantischen Kriterien angeordnet. Ähnlich wie bei einem guten Lehrbuch gelangt man den Begriffssystemen folgend von den grundlegenden Schlüsselwörtern zu immer spezifischeren Termini. Das zweite Ordnungsprinzip folgt didaktischen Kriterien. Grundlegende und häufig verwendete Ausdrücke werden jeweils vor den komplexen und seltenen angeführt. Durch den ansteigenden Schwierigkeitsgrad kann jeder Benutzer die Eindringtiefe individuell bestimmen und einfach zum nächsten Modul weitergehen, wenn er den Eindruck hat, es wird zu spezifisch. Durch diese Anordnung der Schlüsselwörter (den Bedeutungszusammenhängen statt dem Alphabet folgend) ergeben sich zusätzliche Kopplungseffekte, wodurch die Effizienz von **KWiC-Web** weiter gesteigert wird, da die Behaltensquote vor allem für Benutzer, die mit dem betreffenden Fachgebiet in der Muttersprache bereits vertraut sind, noch höher wird. Die Einträge decken jedes Gebiet so ab, dass zwischen den Modulen keine wesentlichen Überschneidungen oder Lücken entstehen.

Die Module sind mit treffenden Überschriften versehen, die den jeweiligen Bereich klar umreißen. So findet man beispielsweise Termini wie *teeth grinding*, *exfoliated* und *gag reflex* im Modul **Dentition & Mastication**, und Einträge wie *ache*, *tender*, und *analgesic* im Modul **Pain**. Wenn sich auch in inhaltlich angrenzenden Modulen manche Ausdrücke wiederfinden, als Keywords sind sie jeweils nur einem Modul zugeordnet.

**Querverweise:** Am Beginn jedes Moduls wird auf Zusammenhänge mit verwandten Modulen verwiesen, in denen der Benutzer viele Termini samt ausführlichen Erklärungen und Übersetzungen wiederfinden kann. Auf zusätzliche Querverbindungen zwischen einzelnen Termini verschiedener Module wird jeweils beim betreffenden Wort verwiesen



(z.B. → **U23-14**). Damit wird das Modul (Unit 23) und die Eintragsnummer (14) bezeichnet.

### Wie sind die einzelnen Einträge strukturiert?

Die Einträge enthalten folgende Komponenten:

**Das Hauptstichwort (Schlüsselwort):** Jedes Modul wurde so angelegt, dass es 10 bis 35 Einträge (Hauptstichwörter und deren Wortfelder) umfasst. Nominalformen und Nominalverbindungen machen den Großteil der Schlüsselwörter aus; die dazugehörigen Adjektive, Präpositionen und Verben findet man in den Beschreibungen, Beispielsätzen, Wortverbindungen und Phrasen (z.B. *an elective operation, to undergo an operation for a tumor, to be operated on, operative approach, operating room*). Deshalb scheint z.B. das Verb *perform* zwar nirgends als Haupteintrag auf, im Kontext taucht es allerdings immer wieder in Verbphrasen wie *to perform a study/an operation/a biopsy* bei den betreffenden Nomen auf.

**Verwandte Ausdrücke:** Bei jedem Schlüsselwort sind Synonyme (*syn*), Fast-Synonyme (*sim*), Antonyme (*opposite*) und verwandte Ausdrücke (*rel*) wie z.B. Unter- und Nebenbegriffe des Haupteintrags angeführt. Bei Vorliegen mehrerer synonyme Ausdrücke werden die häufiger verwendeten zuerst genannt, selten gebrauchte Benennungen werden gekennzeichnet (*rare*). Zusammen mit den Angaben zur Sprachebene und den Kontextbeispielen wird dadurch für den Benutzer ersichtlich, welcher Terminus in welchem Zusammenhang verwendet wird.

**Deutsche Übersetzungen (Marginalspalte):** Für jedes Schlüsselwort und die verwandten Ausdrücke werden in der Marginalspalte die deutschen Entsprechungen angeführt. Zusätzlich werden Wörter oder Passagen im Kontext, die für den Benutzer schwer aus dem Zusammenhang erschließbar bzw. besonders wichtig oder nützlich sind, übersetzt. Die übersetzten Passagen sind im englischen Text blau markiert und über Hochzahlen den Übersetzungen in der Marginalspalte zugeordnet. Dadurch bekommt der Benutzer auch Einblick in spezielle Bedeutungen der Termini im authentischen Kontext.

**Worterkklärungen:** Hier handelt es sich weniger um Definitionen als um beschreibende Erklärungen bzw. Paraphrasen in einfachem Englisch. Diese sind für Fachleute als Formulierungshilfe ebenso nützlich wie für Translatoren, die die Bedeutung des Fachausdrucks weder im Englischen noch in der Muttersprache kennen. Außerdem enthalten diese

Umschreibungen weitere Neben-, Über- und Unterbegriffe zu den Haupteinträgen.

**Authentische Beispielsätze (>>-Symbol):** Diese sind dem medizinischen Korpus entnommen und geben dem Benutzer Einblick in die authentische Verwendung der Fachtermini in der medizinischen Literatur. Bei der Auswahl der Beispiele wurde sowohl auf die sprachliche als auch die fachliche Relevanz geachtet.

**Wortfamilie:** Bei jedem Schlüsselwort und dessen verwandten Ausdrücken werden auch die dazugehörigen Wortfamilien (Verben, Adjektive, etc.) angeführt. Man findet also beim Eintrag *diagnosis* auch *to (over)diagnose, misdiagnosis, (non)diagnostic*, etc.

**Hinweise zur Grammatik und Stilebene:** Neben Angaben zu Wortart und grammatikalischen Besonderheiten (Plural, unregelmäßiges Verb, etc.) wird auch auf die Sprachebene, in der die Ausdrücke vorwiegend verwendet werden, verwiesen (z.B. Fachterminus, Fachjargon, klinischer oder umgangssprachlicher Ausdruck). Bei Wörtern, die in mehr als zwei Stilebenen verwendet werden, wurde auf eine Angabe verzichtet. Aus Platzgründen konnte die Stilebene bei den verwandten Termini und den Wortfamilien nur dann angegeben werden, wenn diese von jener der Wörter davor bzw. danach abweicht. Die Kennzeichnung der Sprachebenen und deren Bedeutung ist auf der Umschlagklappe erläutert.

**Phrasen und Kollokationen (Use):** Diese werden ähnlich wie in Kollokationswörterbüchern jeweils in Blöcken von linken bzw. rechten Kollokationen dargestellt. Aus Platzgründen wurde auf die Tilde verzichtet; das zu ergänzende „Tildewort“ ist kursiv/fett hervorgehoben. Der Eintrag *saline / IV / bolus infusion • infusion rate / bottle / tubing* ist also wie folgt zu lesen: *saline infusion, IV infusion, bolus infusion* <neuer Block> *infusion rate, infusion bottle, infusion tubing*. Bei Aneinanderreihungen von Verbphrasen, z.B. *to relieve/blunt/alleviate pain* (to ist jeweils zu ergänzen) und bei zusammengesetzten Wörtern, wie z.B. *hypo/ hyperesthesia* oder *pathogenesis /physiology* steht der Schrägstrich direkt beim betreffenden Wort(teil).

**Klinische Phrasen:** In vielen Fachbereichen gibt es wiederkehrende klinische Situationen, in denen bestimmte Wendungen und Aussagen ständig vorkommen. Solche Standardphrasen sind jeweils am Ende des Moduls unter **Clinical Phrases** in ganzen Sätzen mit der deutschen Entsprechung angeführt (in 21 Modulen).

**Aussprache:** Bei englischen Wörtern, deren Aussprache bzw. Betonung Probleme bereiten kann, ist die internationale Lautschrift bzw. die Betonung angegeben. Eine Erklärung der Lautschriftsymbole anhand von Beispielen findet sich in der Umschlagklappe.

**Tipps und Hinweise auf Besonderheiten (Note):** Bei Stichwörtern, die in Bezug auf Verwendung, Bedeutung oder Grammatik besondere Schwierigkeiten bereiten, werden diese in leicht verständlichem Englisch erläutert (Hinweise auf „falsche Freunde“, Verwechslungsgefahren, Nebenbedeutungen, etc.).

### **Kann ich KWic Web auch zum Nachschlagen bestimmter Suchwörter verwenden?**

Alle englischen Schlüsselwörter und Übersetzungsäquivalente sind auch über einen deutschen und englischen Index auffindbar, wodurch **KWic-Web** auch wie ein zweisprachiges Fachwörterbuch zum Nachschlagen geeignet ist. Zudem bietet ein Index der englischen Abkürzungen direkten Zugang zu den medizinischen Akronymen im Text.

### **Wie kann ich mit KWic-Web arbeiten?**

Es gibt grundsätzlich drei Zugangswege zu den in **KWic-Web** aufbereiteten Materialien.

**1. Über das Inhaltsverzeichnis und das Modulregister.** Im Inhaltsverzeichnis finden Sie eine Übersicht der einzelnen Module (Units), Abschnitte und Fachbereiche in englischer und deutscher Sprache. Hier können Sie die für Sie relevanten Bereiche auswählen und dann die betreffenden Module in der gewünschten Tiefe durchgehen. Mit Hilfe des Griffregisters finden Sie schnell zu den gesuchten Modulen.

**2. Über die Querverweise.** Jedes Modul sowie viele Schlüsselwörter stehen mit anderen Modulen bzw. Einträgen in Verbindung. Auf Querverbindungen zu anderen Units wird jeweils am Beginn des Moduls verwiesen (**Related Units**). Wollen Sie also ein spezielles Fachgebiet umfassend erarbeiten, folgen Sie einfach diesen Verweisen, um zu jenen Fachbereichen zu gelangen, die damit in Verbindung stehen. Auch die Querverweise zwischen einzelnen Termini

sind nützliche Wegweiser zu weiteren fachlichen Zusammenhängen.

**3. Über die Indices.** Suchen Sie spezielle Termini oder wollen deren Bedeutung, Übersetzung, Verwendung, oder Wortverbindungen nachschlagen, können Sie dies mit Hilfe des deutschen bzw. englischen Index tun. Über den Index können Sie auch schnell zu allen Schlüsselwörtern und ihrem sprachlichen Umfeld gelangen.

### **Wer kann mit KWic-Web arbeiten?**

Grundsätzlich jeder, der über grundlegende Englischkenntnisse aus der Schulzeit verfügt (B1-B2 Niveau, gemeinsamer Referenzrahmen des Europarates). Durch die differenzierte Aufbereitung des reichhaltigen Sprachmaterials ist **KWic-Web** für verschiedene Benutzergruppen optimal verwendbar.

**Studenten und Ärzte in Ausbildung,** die mit englischen Lehrbüchern und internationalen Fachzeitschriften arbeiten, Ihre Dissertation in englischer Sprache verfassen, oder eine Famulatur in Edinburgh, Boston, Kapstadt, Singapur oder Sydney anstreben.

**Ärzte in Klinik und Forschung,** die sich mit Hilfe von englischen Fachartikeln weiterbilden, internationale Kongresse besuchen, sich auf ein Auslandsjahr vorbereiten, oder einen Artikel in einer internationalen Fachzeitschrift veröffentlichen wollen.

**Pflegefachkräfte, Therapeuten, MTA, Rettungshelfer,** etc., die sich mit den englischen Begriffen in ihrem Fachbereich vertraut machen wollen. Durch die didaktische Gliederung des Wortschatzes (Grundlegendes zuerst) müssen die relevanten Termini nicht erst mühsam aus einer Fülle von Texten herausgefiltert werden.

**Übersetzer und Dolmetscher,** die im medizinischen Bereich arbeiten. Ob Sie sich in ein neues Fachgebiet einarbeiten oder spezielle Wortverbindungen oder Phrasen suchen, in **KWic-Web** finden Sie auf kleinstem Raum eine Fülle von sprachlichen und fachlichen Informationen, die Sie sonst aus verschiedenen Nachschlagewerken erst mühsam zusammensuchen müssen oder überhaupt in keinem anderen Behelf finden können.

## Unit 1 Health & Fitness

Related Units: **2** Diet & Dieting, **4** Illness & Recovery, **64** Body Movement, **102** History Taking, **142** Physiotherapy

**health** [heɪlθ] *n* *opposite* **illness**<sup>1</sup>, **sickness**<sup>1</sup>, **ill health**<sup>2</sup> *n* → U4-1

condition of physical [fizik<sup>1</sup>], mental, and social well-being; being free from disease, complaints [eɪ] or abnormalities

**healthful**<sup>3</sup> [heɪlθfʊl] *adj* • **healthfulness** *n* • **healthcare**<sup>4</sup> [heɪlθkeə] *n*

» This may be important to your health. She was in good health until 4 days before she was **admitted to the hospital**<sup>5</sup>. **Antibiotics** [aɪnɪ] should be given for **wounds** [aɪ] in persons with general ill health. Is there a **pattern of overconcern**<sup>6</sup> [sɜː] about the child's health?

Use **to be in** good/the best of/excellent<sup>7</sup>/perfect<sup>7</sup>/poor **health** • **to have a** strong/sound **health** • **to be a** picture of / to be good/bad for one's<sup>8</sup> **health** • **to jeopardize**<sup>9</sup> [dʒəp-] /restore **sb.'s health** • general / mental / emotional [ou]/ public **health** • child / maternal [ɜː]/ family / adolescent [es] **health** • state / preservation of **health** • **health** problem / **education**<sup>10</sup> / **policy**<sup>11</sup> / care (costs) • **health insurance**<sup>12</sup> / risk or hazard [æ]/ threat [e]/ **status**<sup>13</sup> / **food**<sup>14</sup> • **health** history / habits / **behavior**<sup>15</sup> [eɪ] / assessment • **health screening** [iː] **tests**<sup>16</sup> / **certificate**<sup>17</sup> / professional / **check**<sup>18</sup> [tʃek] • **healthful diet**<sup>19</sup> [daɪət] / habits / living / body weight • to provide **health care** • **health care** services / **system**<sup>20</sup> / provider [aɪ] / worker • **health-compromising** behavior

**healthy** [heɪlθi] - healthier - healthiest *adj*

*opposite* **not healthy** or **unhealthy**<sup>1</sup> *adj*

(i) not ill, strong and well and/or showing good health (ii) good for your health

**healthy-looking** *adj* • **healthy-appearing** [ɪə] *adj* • **healthiness**<sup>2</sup> *n*

» A **chronic course** is more often seen in previously [ɪ] **healthy adults**. I'm much healthier now. **Adolescence** is one of the **physically healthiest periods** in an individual's life. All **unhealthy granulation tissue** must be removed.

Use to be/get/remain/appear/be considered **healthy** • **healthy tissue**<sup>3</sup> / body / skin and hair • **healthy appetite**<sup>4</sup> / eating • **healthy lifestyle**<sup>5</sup> / baby / child • **healthy** individuals or subjects [Δ] / patients • **healthy** climate [aɪ] / **attitude**<sup>6</sup> /-appearing organ • generally / **apparently**<sup>7</sup> [eə] / relatively **healthy** • **physically**<sup>8</sup> [ɪ] / otherwise **healthy** • **unhealthy** person / **attitude** /-looking<sup>9</sup>

**well** *adv* *syn* **sound** [saʊnd], **fine** [faɪn] *adj*, *opposite* **unwell**<sup>1</sup>, **sick**<sup>2</sup> *adj*

to be in good health and without injuries or any other health problems

**good** - better - best *adj* • **to do sb. good**<sup>3</sup> *phr* • **be bad/ good for**<sup>4</sup> *phr*

» The patient seemed to be doing well. I'm quite fine, thanks. I had a minor injury but it feels fine now and shouldn't cause me any problems. This is a common cause of **acute hemolysis** in a previously well adult patient. **Immobilization** must be continued until bone **healing** [iː] is **sound**<sup>5</sup>. Some sleep will do you good. **Garlic**<sup>6</sup> is said to be good for the **heart** [ɑː].

Use to be or feel/appear/recover [Δ] /get **well** • systemically / **seemingly**<sup>7</sup> / otherwise **well** • to be **fine** • **sound healing**<sup>8</sup> [iː] / **sleep**<sup>9</sup> • **well** baby care • **get well** card • **well-nourished**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] (abbr W/N) /-developed /-trained • **well-tolerated**<sup>11</sup> /-pre-served<sup>12</sup> [ɜː] /-balanced diet<sup>13</sup> • **well-adjusted** [dʒΔ] /-disposed<sup>14</sup>

**thriving** [θraɪvɪŋ] *adj* *sim* **flourishing**<sup>1</sup> [ɜː||BE Δ], **bouncing**<sup>2</sup> [baʊn'sɪŋ] *adj*

growing stronger, developing well, being healthy and successful

» This is a common cause of **loose stools**<sup>3</sup> [uː] in **thriving children**. Some **breast-fed** [e] **infants fail to thrive**. How can children who are **apparently not getting enough calories** in their diets be **flourishing**? He ran a **flourishing private practice** until 2003. Due to a **relative lack of WBCs**<sup>4</sup> in the **CSF**<sup>5</sup>, the **infection flourishes**. **Bouncing babies** make healthier grown-ups.

Use **thriving** child / **infant** • **flourishing practice**<sup>6</sup> / **business** [ɪ] • **bouncing baby**<sup>7</sup> / **with health**<sup>8</sup> / **gait**<sup>9</sup> [geɪt]

### Gesundheit

Krankheit<sup>1</sup> Krankheit, Kränklichkeit<sup>2</sup> gesund, bekömmlich<sup>3</sup> medizin. Versorgung<sup>4</sup> ins Krankenhaus eingeliefert<sup>5</sup> übertriebene Sorge<sup>6</sup> sich besser Gesundheit erfreuen<sup>7</sup> ungesund/ gesundheitsschädlich sein<sup>8</sup> die Gesundheit gefährden<sup>9</sup> Gesundheitserziehung<sup>10</sup> Gesundheitspolitik<sup>11</sup> Krankenversicherung<sup>12</sup> Gesundheitszustand<sup>13</sup> Reform-, Biokost<sup>14</sup> Gesundheitsverhalten<sup>15</sup> Reihenuntersuchungen<sup>16</sup> Gesundheitszeugnis, -attest<sup>17</sup> Vorsorgeuntersuchung<sup>18</sup> gesunde Nahrung<sup>19</sup> Gesundheitswesen<sup>20</sup>

1

### (i) gesund

(ii) **heilsam, bekömmlich** ungesund<sup>1</sup> Gesundheit<sup>2</sup> gesunde Gewebe<sup>3</sup> guter Appetit<sup>4</sup> gesunde Lebensweise<sup>5</sup> gesunde Einstellung<sup>6</sup> scheinbar gesund<sup>7</sup> körperlich gesund<sup>8</sup> ungesund aussehend<sup>9</sup>

2

### gesund/ wohlauf sein, sich wohl fühlen

unwohl, unpasslich<sup>1</sup> krank<sup>2</sup> jem. gut tun/ helfen<sup>3</sup> jem. gut tun, gesund sein<sup>4</sup> abgeschlossen<sup>5</sup> Knoblauch<sup>6</sup> scheinbar gesund<sup>7</sup> gute Heilung<sup>8</sup> tiefer Schlaf<sup>9</sup> in gutem Ernährungszustand<sup>10</sup> gut verträglich<sup>11</sup> gut erhalten<sup>12</sup> ausgewogene Kost<sup>13</sup> gewogen, freundlich gesinnt<sup>14</sup>

3

### gut gedeihend, kräftig, (auf)blühend

gut gedeihend, blühend, florierend<sup>1</sup> stramm, kräftig<sup>2</sup> Durchfall<sup>3</sup> Leukozyten<sup>4</sup> Zerebrospinalflüssigkeit, Liquor<sup>5</sup> gutgehende Praxis<sup>6</sup> strammer Säugling<sup>7</sup> vor Gesundheit strotzend<sup>8</sup> federnder Gang<sup>9</sup>

4

**hygienic** [haɪdʒiː||ɛnɪk] *adj* *syn* **sanitary** *adj*, *rel* **wholesome**<sup>1</sup>, **beneficial**<sup>2</sup> *adj* to **preserve**<sup>3</sup> [ɜ:] or promote a person's health, esp. by keeping the body and/or the environment [aɪ] free from agents [ɛɪdʒ] that are **deleterious**<sup>4</sup> [ɪə] to health  
**hygiene**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **hygienist** *n* • **sanitation**<sup>5</sup> [ɛɪ] *n* • **sanitize**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **unsanitary**<sup>7</sup> *adj* • **wholesomeness**<sup>8</sup> *n* → U2-13 • **unwholesome**<sup>9</sup> *adj* • **benefit**<sup>10</sup> *vt & vi & n*

» The **normal microbial flora** is **influenced** by **factors** such as the **diet**, **hygienic habits**<sup>11</sup>, **sanitary conditions**, or **air pollution** [uː]. **Wholesome natural food** contains plenty of **proteins** and **vitamins**. **Exercise programs** are also **beneficial**. **Some postmenopausal** [ɔ:] **women benefit from chemotherapy** [ki:m-]. **There may be a benefit in hospitalized patients**.

Use **hygienic practices**<sup>11</sup> / conditions / problem • **sanitary** measures [ɛɜ]/ precautions [ɔ:] / regulations • **sanitary facilities**<sup>12</sup> [sɪ] / **napkin** or **pad**<sup>13</sup> *or* (BE) **towel**<sup>13</sup> [taʊəl] • **personal**<sup>11</sup> / good foot / **genital hygiene** • **bronchial** [k] / oral or dental / **fecal** [ɪk] / **mental**<sup>14</sup> **hygiene** • level of / (in)adequate / poor **sanitation** • environmental / food / **fecal**<sup>15</sup> **sanitation** • **wholesome** diet / entertainment [ɛɪ] • **beneficial effect**<sup>16</sup> / results / response • **to benefit** from • **to be of** (great<sup>17</sup>) little / lasting / limited) **benefit for** • health / clinical / therapeutic / cosmetic **benefit** • considerable / **questionable**<sup>18</sup> / **survival**<sup>19</sup> [aɪ] **benefit**

**lively** [laɪvli] *adv* *sim* **vital**<sup>1</sup> [vaɪtəl], **vivacious**<sup>2</sup> [vɪvɛɪʃəs] *adj*  
*rel* **energetic**<sup>3</sup> [dʒɛ], **vigorous**<sup>4</sup> [ɪ], **exuberant**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] *adj*

very active and full of life, spirit, and energy

**liveliness** *n* • **vitality**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **energy** [ɛnərdʒi] *n* • **vigor**<sup>7</sup> [vɪɡə] *n*

» Her **lively manner** lends itself to **easily established relationships**, but she is rarely deeply involved **emotionally**. **Hyperthymic** [aɪ] **individuals**<sup>8</sup> tend to be **cheerful**, **exuberant**, **overconfident**, **energetic**, **vigorous**, and **full of plans**. **Pain-induced immobility** began to **compromise**<sup>9</sup> the patient's energy, **spirit**, **appetite**, and **vitality**. **The extent of lactic acidosis**<sup>10</sup> depends on the **duration** and **vigor** of **muscular** [Δ] **activity**.

Use **lively** character / **mind**<sup>11</sup> / **humor** / **interest**<sup>12</sup> / discussion • **vital** personality / signs<sup>13</sup> / organs • **vital capacity**<sup>14</sup> / statistics • **vivacious** girl / manner / personality • **energetic** patient / **walking**<sup>15</sup> • **vigorous infant**<sup>16</sup> / exercise • **vigorous coughing**<sup>17</sup> [kɔ:f-] / cry / **treatment**<sup>18</sup> • **exuberant** youth [ju:θ] / **mood**<sup>19</sup> [u:] • **exuberant** behavior / energy / life force • youth and / lost **vitality** • full of / to burst [ɜ:] with **energy** • **sexual**<sup>20</sup> **vigor**

**well-being** *n* *sim* **wellness**<sup>1</sup> *n*, *rel* **welfare**<sup>2</sup> [wɛlfəʊ] *n* → U13-6

achievement [tʃ] of a state of good health as defined [aɪ] by the individual

» A **regular exercise program** consistent with **life-style**, **age**, and **cardiac status** certainly enhances **general well-being**. Also **elderly people** participate [ɪs] in our **wellness program**.

Use **overall**<sup>3</sup> / **physical**<sup>4</sup> [ɪ] / emotional / mental **well-being** • fetal [i:] / long-term / personal **well-being** • feeling / **improved sense**<sup>5</sup> of **well-being** • emotional / dental **wellness** • **wellness** clinic / plan / walking / body treatment • **to be on**<sup>6</sup> / social / employee's / **child**<sup>7</sup> **welfare** • **welfare** benefits<sup>8</sup> / **worker**<sup>9</sup> / work • **welfare** officer / agency [ɛɪdʒ] / policy / state<sup>10</sup>

**constitution** [(j)u:] *n* *clin & term* *rel* **phenotype**<sup>1</sup> [fɪ:nətaɪp], **somatotype**<sup>2</sup> [sɒmətə-||mætətaɪp] *n* *term* → U25-3

inborn physical or psychological makeup of an individual modified by environmental factors

**constitutional**<sup>3</sup> *adj* *term* • **phenotypic** [fɪ:nətaɪpɪk] *adj* • **somatotyping**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» **Patients** who have a **stoic** [stɔɪk] **constitution** will **persevere**<sup>5</sup> with **tremendous pain**. In children with **constitutional short stature**<sup>6</sup> [stætʃə], **birth weight** [weɪt] and **length** are not affected, but typically the rate of growth is **decreased** during **infancy**.

Use **to have a strong**<sup>7</sup> / good **constitution** • male / **chromosomal**<sup>8</sup> / XXY / psychopathic [saɪkə-] / **constitution** • **constitutional** cause / weakness [ɪ:] / **symptoms**<sup>9</sup> • **constitutional disease**<sup>10</sup> / **delay** [ɛɪ] of **growth**<sup>6</sup> [grəʊθ] / psychology

**hygienisch, sauber, sanitär, gesund(heitlich)**

gesund, bekömmlich, gut<sup>1</sup> zuträglich, förderlich<sup>2</sup> erhalten<sup>3</sup> schädlich<sup>4</sup> Gesundheitspflege, Hygiene<sup>5</sup> keimfrei machen, sterilisieren<sup>6</sup> unhygienisch<sup>7</sup> Gesundheit, Bekömmlichkeit<sup>8</sup> ungesund, ungut<sup>9</sup> guttun, nützen; profitieren, Nutzen ziehen; Vorteil, Nutzen<sup>10</sup> Körperpflege<sup>11</sup> sanitäre Einrichtungen<sup>12</sup> Damenbinde<sup>13</sup> Psychohygiene<sup>14</sup> Abwasserreinigung<sup>15</sup> günstige Wirkung<sup>16</sup> von großem Nutzen/ sehr vorteilhaft sein für<sup>17</sup> zweifelhafter Nutzen<sup>18</sup> Überlebensvorteil<sup>19</sup>

5

**lebhaft, lebendig, vital**

vital; (Lebens)wichtig<sup>1</sup> lebhaft, munter<sup>2</sup> schwungvoll, aktiv, voller Energie<sup>3</sup> dynamisch, kraftvoll, energisch<sup>4</sup> ausgelassen, (über)sprudelnd<sup>5</sup> Vitalität<sup>6</sup> Kraft, Energie, Dynamik<sup>7</sup> Hyperthymiker/ hyperthyme Persönlichkeiten<sup>8</sup> beeinträchtigen<sup>9</sup> Lakt(at)azidose<sup>10</sup> wacher Geist<sup>11</sup> reges Interesse<sup>12</sup> Vitalfunktionen/ -zeichen<sup>13</sup> Vitalkapazität<sup>14</sup> flottes/ rasches Gehen<sup>15</sup> kräftiges Kind<sup>16</sup> starker Husten<sup>17</sup> intensive Behandlung<sup>18</sup> ausgelassene Stimmung<sup>19</sup> sexuelle Spannung<sup>20</sup>

6

**Wohl(befinden), Gesundheit**

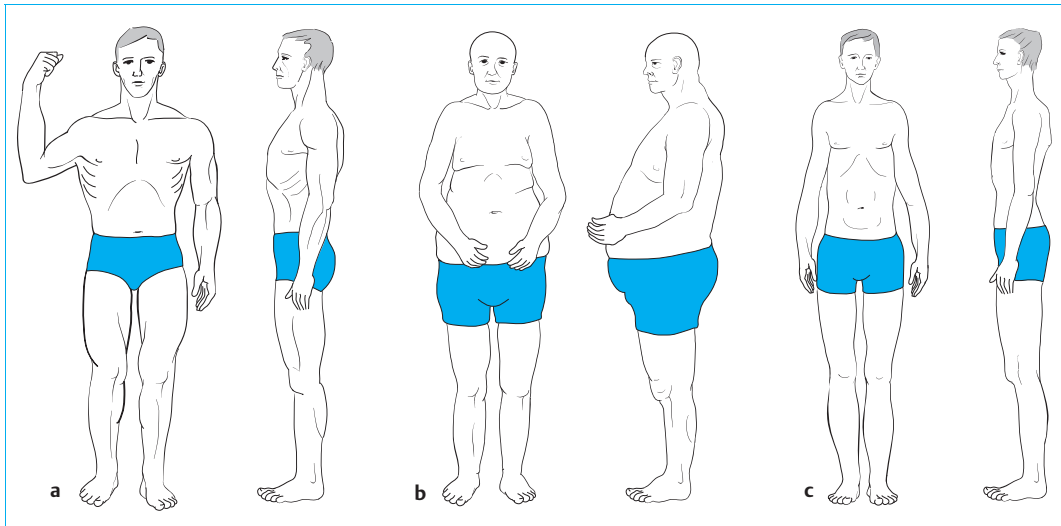
Wellness<sup>1</sup> Wohl(er)gehen; Wohlfahrt, Sozialhilfe, Fürsorge<sup>2</sup> allgemeines Wohlbefinden<sup>3</sup> körperl. Gesundheit/ Wohlbefinden<sup>4</sup> größeres Wohlbefinden<sup>5</sup> Sozialhilfe beziehen<sup>6</sup> Kinderfürsorge<sup>7</sup> Sozialhilfe<sup>8</sup> Sozialarbeiter(in)<sup>9</sup> Wohlfahrtsstaat<sup>10</sup>

7

**Konstitution, Verfassung**

Phänotyp, (äußeres) Erscheinungsbild<sup>1</sup> Körperbau-, Konstitutionstyp<sup>2</sup> konstitutionell, anlagebedingt, Konstitutions-<sup>3</sup> Einteilung in verschiedene Körperbautypen<sup>4</sup> durchhalten<sup>5</sup> konstitutionelle(r) Wachstumsverzögerung/ Minderwuchs<sup>6</sup> eine robuste Konstitution haben<sup>7</sup> Chromosomenkonfiguration<sup>8</sup> Allgemeinsymptome, konstitutionelle S.<sup>9</sup> konstitutionelle Krankheit<sup>10</sup>

8



Chief constitutional types according to Kretschmer

**(physical) fitness** [fɪzɪkəl fɪtnəs] *n* *sim* **condition**<sup>1</sup> [kəndɪʃən], **shape**<sup>2</sup> *n*

physically strong, and in good condition; esp. as a result of exercise

**fit**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **well-conditioned**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **conditioning**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» How much does she spend on fitness training and beauty [bjʊ:ti] treatments. Every week of rest usually requires at least two weeks of exercising to reach preinjury [pri:ɪndʒə:ɪ] fitness level. Supervised fitness walking was advised [aɪ] to patients with osteoarthritis [aɪ] of the knee. In fit patients, surgery was associated with a lower frequency of complications.

Use to build/test/prove/judge [Δ] **sb's fitness** • biologic / aerobic / cardiopulmonary [w|Δ] / psychologic **fitness** • **fitness** program / **exercise or routine**<sup>5</sup> [i:ɪ] / equipment / **freak**<sup>6</sup> [i:] • **fitness test**<sup>7</sup> / level / **gym**<sup>8</sup> [dʒɪm] / **problem** / **room**<sup>8</sup> / center / club • **fitness instructor**<sup>9</sup> [Δ] / guru / for work<sup>10</sup> / to travel<sup>11</sup> • to keep **fit** • to be in good/stable/out of<sup>12</sup> **condition** • exercise / abdominal / **poor**<sup>13</sup> **conditioning** • to be/get/keep/stay<sup>14</sup> **in shape**

**recreation** [rekri:ɪʃən] *n*

*sim* **relaxation**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ], **diversion**<sup>2</sup> [dɪvɜ:rʃən] *n*, **rest**<sup>3</sup> *n* & *v*  
*rel* **regeneration**<sup>4</sup> [rɪdʒənəreɪʃən] *n*

engaging in activities that divert, amuse or stimulate during one's **leisure** [li:ʒə||BE lɛʒə] **time**<sup>5</sup>  
**recreate** *v* • **relax** [rɪlæks] *v* • **divert** [ɜ:ɪ] *v* • **regenerate**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **recreational** *adj*

» Are you aware of the health risks associated with the ever-increasing demands made by the duty-rest-recreation schedules [sk||ʃedju:lz] in our round-the-clock society? He attributes his return to normality to deep relaxation therapy. I find a tremendous relaxation in fishing. The **sprained** [eɪ] **ankle**<sup>7</sup> should be **rested** sufficiently [ɪ] to allow complete **healing** [i:ɪ].

Use physical / healthy [eɪ] / **outdoor**<sup>8</sup> / **leisurely** [i:] **recreation** • **recreation** center / **ground**<sup>9</sup> • **pleasant** [eɪ] / **entertaining** [eɪ] / **welcome diversion** • teenage / occasional [eɪʒ] / summer-time **diversion** • to **promote**<sup>10</sup> / achieve **relaxation** • muscle / **pelvic floor**<sup>11</sup> **relaxation** • period / ritual / state / degree of **relaxation** • **relaxation** techniques<sup>12</sup> [tekni:kz] / activities • **recreational facilities**<sup>13</sup> / **activity**<sup>14</sup> / water sports / **skiing** • **recreational sun exposure** / interests / **drugs**<sup>15</sup> • to be at<sup>16</sup> / have or take a<sup>17</sup> / be relieved by/seek **rest** • (complete/strict/prolonged) bed / **joint**<sup>18</sup> / adequate **rest** • **rest** period / day / **home**<sup>19</sup>

**gute körperliche Verfassung/ Gesundheit, Fitness**

körperl. Verfassung, Kondition, Form<sup>1</sup> Verfassung, Form<sup>2</sup> fit, durchtrainiert, in Form<sup>3</sup> Kondition(staining)<sup>4</sup> Fitnesstraining<sup>5</sup> Fitnessfanatiker(in)<sup>6</sup> Fitnessstest<sup>7</sup> Fitnessraum<sup>8</sup> Fitnesstrainer(in)<sup>9</sup> Arbeitsfähigkeit<sup>10</sup> Reisefähigkeit<sup>11</sup> keine Kondition haben<sup>12</sup> schlechter konditioneller Zustand<sup>13</sup> in Form bleiben<sup>14</sup>

9

**Erholung, Entspannung**

Entspannung, Erschlaffung, Relaxation<sup>1</sup> Unterhaltung, Zerstreuung<sup>2</sup> Ruhe, Erholung; ruhen, s. ausruhen, schonen<sup>3</sup> Erneuerung, Neubildung, Regeneration<sup>4</sup> Freizeit<sup>5</sup> (sich) regenerieren, sich erholen<sup>6</sup> verstauchter Knöchel<sup>7</sup> Erholung im Freien<sup>8</sup> Spiel-, Sportplatz<sup>9</sup> Entspannung fördern<sup>10</sup> Beckenbodenentspannung<sup>11</sup> Entspannungstechniken<sup>12</sup> Freizeiteinrichtungen<sup>13</sup> Freizeitbeschäftigung<sup>14</sup> Freizeitdrogen<sup>15</sup> ruhig sein; s. in Ruhelage befinden<sup>16</sup> s. ausruhen<sup>17</sup> Gelenkschönung<sup>18</sup> Alters-, Pflegeheim<sup>19</sup>

10

**able-bodied** *adj* *rel* **robust**<sup>1</sup> [ˌ], **firm**<sup>1</sup> [ɜː] *adj*, *opposite* **disabled**<sup>2</sup> [eɪ] *adj* & *n*  
healthy, strong, physically fit, and without injuries [ɪndʒəːiːz] or **infirmary**<sup>3</sup> [ɜː]

**firmness** *n* • **robustness**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **disability**<sup>5</sup> [dɪsəˈbɪlətɪ] *n* → U142-3 • **able-bodied** *n*

» It's often difficult for the **able-bodied** to **understand** the **problems** the **disabled** experience in their lives. The **patient** **swiftly**<sup>6</sup> returned to **remarkably robust** health and **remained** free of illness. Join our health club to **maintain** a **youthful**, **radiant** [eɪ], and **firm** body year round.

Use **able-bodied** man • **robust** health<sup>7</sup> / child / **immune response**<sup>8</sup> • **firm** body / muscles / **belly**<sup>9</sup> / **handshake** • **tissue** / **abdominal** / **skin** / **breast** [e] / **stool** [uː] **firmness**

**workout** *n* *sim* **training**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] *n*, *rel* **physical exercise**<sup>2</sup>, **sport(s)**<sup>3</sup> *n* → U64-18

activity of **exerting**<sup>4</sup> [ɜː] one's muscles in various ways to keep fit, trim one's body or lose weight

**to work out**<sup>4</sup> *v phr* • **exercise**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **train**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **sportsman**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **sporting**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

» If an **athlete** [iː] **trains** twice a day, each **hard workout**<sup>7</sup> should be followed by at least 3 easy ones. **Dyspnea** [ɪ] in this situation is similar to that **brought on**<sup>8</sup> by **exercise**. You should **exercise** every morning and get plenty of fresh air. He is **allowed** several hours a day of **relaxation** or recreation and can occasionally **exercise** by **playing** ball. **Cooling** [uː] down (**gradually slowing** down before **stopping** the **exercise**) can help prevent **dizziness**<sup>9</sup>.

Use **intense** or **vigorous**<sup>7</sup> / light / frequent **workout** • weight-lifting / a 30-minute aerobic **workout** • **to do**<sup>10</sup>/try/prescribe/advise **exercises** • (regular) physical / stretching / **respiratory**<sup>11</sup> **exercises** • (an)aerobic / leg / back / neck **exercises** • stomach / light / **strenuous**<sup>12</sup> **exercises** • **exercise** program / **bicycle**<sup>13</sup> [baɪsɪkl]/**test**<sup>14</sup> / (in)**tolerance**<sup>15</sup> • **contact** / **competitive**<sup>16</sup> **sports** • **alternate**<sup>17</sup> **sport** • **sport physical**<sup>18</sup> • **sports medicine**<sup>19</sup> / activities / shoes /-related fracture • **sporting event**<sup>20</sup> / **accident** • **interval**<sup>21</sup> / **weight** / **strength**<sup>22</sup> **training** • **altitude**<sup>23</sup> [æ] / **autogenic**<sup>24</sup> [dʒeɪ] / **biofeedback** **training** • **training session** / **schedule**<sup>25</sup>

**warm** or **tune** or **tone up** *v phr* *sim* **limber** or **loosen** [uː] **up**<sup>1</sup> *v phr*,  
*rel* **stretching**<sup>2</sup> *n*

to do preliminary exercises (**skipping**<sup>3</sup>, stretching) to optimize muscle performance and prevent injury

**warm-up** *n* • **tone**<sup>4</sup> [toun] *v* & *n* • **toning** *n* • **stretch** [stretʃ] *v* • **limber**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] *adj*

» **Stretching** should be done after a **warm-up** and after **exercise**. **Active warm-up** by **exercise**, preferably by performing a sport at a relaxed **pace**<sup>6</sup> [peɪs], prepares muscles for competition more effectively than **passive heating** [iː] with a **heating pad**<sup>7</sup>, **ultrasound** [ʌ], or **infrared lamp**. **Limber up** with a good stretching routine led by a **qualified instructor** [ʌ]. To avoid direct injury, **athletes** should never stretch further than they can hold for a count of 10. **Stretching** helps **eliminate** stress and **tension** [ʃ] and **increase** flexibility.

Use **to warm up** the muscles • thorough **warm-up** • **to feel**<sup>8</sup> **toned up** • **to limber up** one's legs / before the match • **limber** body • to do a lot of / regular **stretching** • **stretching exercises**<sup>2</sup> / out / **and straining**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] • **to tone** one's body / oneself / **selected muscles**<sup>10</sup> • body / muscle / **tissue** **toning** • **toning** effect • muscle / **resting**<sup>11</sup> **tone**

**jogging** *n* *sim* **running**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ] *n*, *rel* **circuit** [sɜːrktɪ] **training**<sup>2</sup>, **spinning**<sup>3</sup> [ɪ] *n*

running at a moderately swift pace as a form of exercise

**jog** [dʒɔːg] *v* & *n* • **jogger** *n* • **run**<sup>4</sup> - **ran** - **run** *v irr* & *n* • **runner**<sup>5</sup> [rʌnə] *n*

» **Brisk walking**<sup>6</sup>, **jogging**, **fast cycling** [sʌɪklɪŋ] and doing **heavy chores**<sup>7</sup> [tʃ] are more effective than playing golf. I had a little jog this morning and the pain has gone. I was well able to **pedal out**<sup>8</sup> a 100-mile day and **follow** that up with the **ritual evening jog** or **yoga work-out**.

Use **to go/do** a bit of/**take up**<sup>9</sup> **jogging** • daily / **steady** [e] **jogging** • **jogging** injury / in **place**<sup>10</sup> / shoes • **to jog** along • morning / 5-mile / **gentle**<sup>11</sup> [dʒ] / 12-minute **jog**

**gesund, körperlich leistungsfähig, kräftig**

robust, widerstandsfähig<sup>1</sup> behindert; Behinderte<sup>2</sup> Gebrechlichkeit<sup>3</sup> Robustheit, Widerstandsfähigkeit<sup>4</sup> Behinderung<sup>5</sup> rasch<sup>6</sup> robuste Gesundheit<sup>7</sup> starke Immunantwort /-reaktion<sup>8</sup> Waschbrettbauch, straffer Bauch<sup>9</sup>

11

**(Körper)training, Trainings-einheit**

Übung, Training<sup>1</sup> körperl. Ertüchtigung, Turnübungen<sup>2</sup> Sport<sup>3</sup> trainieren<sup>4</sup> Sportler<sup>5</sup> sportlich<sup>6</sup> hartes Training<sup>7</sup> verursacht<sup>8</sup> Schwindel<sup>9</sup> Gymnastik machen<sup>10</sup> Atemübungen<sup>11</sup> anstrengende Übungen<sup>12</sup> Standrad, Heimtrainer<sup>13</sup> Belastungstest<sup>14</sup> physische Belastbarkeit<sup>15</sup> Leistungssport<sup>16</sup> Ausgleichssport, Ersatzsportart<sup>17</sup> sportmedizin. Untersuchung<sup>18</sup> Sportmedizin<sup>19</sup> Wettkampf<sup>20</sup> Intervalltraining<sup>21</sup> Krafttraining<sup>22</sup> Höhentaining<sup>23</sup> autogenes Training<sup>24</sup> Trainingsplan<sup>25</sup>

12

**aufwärmen**

aufwärmen, Lockerungsübungen machen<sup>1</sup> Dehnen, Dehnungsübungen<sup>2</sup> Hüpfen, Hopsen, Traben, Seilspringen<sup>3</sup> stärken, kräftigen; Tonus, Spannungszustand<sup>4</sup> gelenkig, beweglich<sup>5</sup> Tempo<sup>6</sup> Heizkissen<sup>7</sup> sich gut in Form fühlen<sup>8</sup> Dehnen und Belasten<sup>9</sup> einzelne Muskeln kräftigen<sup>10</sup> Ruhetonus<sup>11</sup>

13

**Lauftraining, Jogging**

Lauf(en)<sup>1</sup> Zirkeltraining<sup>2</sup> Ergometertraining, Spinning<sup>3</sup> laufen, Lauf<sup>4</sup> Läufer(in)<sup>5</sup> rasches Gehen, Walken<sup>6</sup> schwere körperl. Arbeit<sup>7</sup> mit d. Fahrrad zurücklegen<sup>8</sup> zu joggen anfangen<sup>9</sup> Joggen an Ort und Stelle<sup>10</sup> lockerer Lauf<sup>11</sup>

14

**aerobics** [eəʊːbɪks] *n* *rel* **gymnastics**<sup>1</sup> [dʒɪmnæstiks],  
**calisthenics**<sup>1</sup>, **isometrics**<sup>2</sup> [aɪsə-] *n* → U142-17

series of rhythmic [ɹ] exercises performed to music that stimulate the aerobic capacity of the body

**gymnasium**<sup>3</sup> [ɛɪ] *n* • **gymnast**<sup>4</sup> *n* • (**an**)**aerobic**<sup>5</sup> *adj* *term* • **isometric** *adj*

- » My doctor recommends 20-30 minutes of vigorous, continuous aerobic exercise 3-5 times a week. Calisthenics is a combination of controlled exercises, gymnastics, and simplified ballet [bæleɪ], which combines fitness, flexibility, **poise**<sup>6</sup> [pɔɪz], and graceful [eɪs] movement. Many women use calisthenics as a **physique** [fɪzɪk] **builder**<sup>7</sup>. Isometrics is an exercise that involves muscle contraction through pressing and pulling [ʊ] against an immovable object. Are there **isometric exercises**<sup>2</sup> I can do while using cruise control on long trips?

Use step / low intensity / water or aqua<sup>8</sup> **aerobics** • **anaerobic threshold** (abbr AT) **exercise**<sup>9</sup> • **anaerobic respiration**<sup>10</sup> / **training** • **aerobic** exercises / **appliances**<sup>11</sup> [aɪ] • group / **eye**<sup>12</sup> / **bodyweight**<sup>13</sup> **calisthenics** • muscular [Δ] endurance / **road-side**<sup>14</sup> / **computer**<sup>15</sup> **calisthenics** • **calisthenic** exercises or drills • general / **therapeutic or remedial**<sup>16</sup> / water **gymnastics** • **competitive**<sup>17</sup> / **rhythmic** [ɹ] (**sportive**)<sup>18</sup> / vocal / mental **gymnastics**

**yoga** [jəʊgə] *n* *rel* **meditation**<sup>1</sup> [eɪt], **deep muscle relaxation**<sup>2</sup> *n*

system of physical exercises focused on muscle tone, holding of postures, **breathing** [ɪɪ] **exercises**<sup>3</sup>, and meditation to achieve physical and mental well-being and **tranquility**<sup>4</sup> [kwɪ]

**meditate**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **meditative**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **relaxing**<sup>7</sup> *adj*

- » Lessening response to stress by various techniques [k] such as yoga, hypnosis [hɪp-], transcendental meditation, or biofeedback is helpful for many patients. There has been an **upsurge** [-sɜːrdʒ] **in demand**<sup>8</sup> for yoga and Tai Chi which combine meditation with physical activity to help relieve [ɪɪ] stress and increase **self-awareness**<sup>9</sup> [eə].

Use **hatha**<sup>10</sup> / Tantric **yoga** • **yoga** position / **classes**<sup>11</sup> / healing center • **transcendental**<sup>12</sup> (abbr TM) / Mantra / Zen / **Christian**<sup>13</sup> **meditation**

**sauna (bath)** [səʊ|səɪnə bæθ] *n* *syn* **Finnish bath** *n*,  
*rel* **steam** [iː] **room** or **bath**<sup>1</sup> *n*

wooden room in which hot steam is used to open the pores [ɔː] and eliminate toxins through sweat [e] followed by rubbing [Δ] the body and a cold shower [ʃəʊə]

**bathe**<sup>2</sup> [beɪð] *v* • **bathing** [beɪðɪŋ] *n*

- » A one-day membership at our health club includes a swim, supervised gym session, **sauna**, steam bath, massage, manicure, wash, **blow dry**<sup>3</sup>, and make-up. Don't **plunge**<sup>4</sup> [plʌndʒ] into icy water after a steamy **sauna**. I enjoyed steam baths and saunas at the **leisure center**<sup>5</sup>.

Use to go for/have a **sauna** • **communal**<sup>6</sup> / private **sauna** • **vapor**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] / whirlpool [ɜː] or jacuzzi [dʒəʊkʊːzi] / **sitz**<sup>7</sup> **bath** • **bubble**<sup>8</sup> [Δ] / **Turkish**<sup>9</sup> [ɜː] / **hot**<sup>10</sup> / ice(-water) **bath** • to take a<sup>11</sup> **bath**

**health spa** *n* *rel* **health club**<sup>1</sup> *n*, **health farm**<sup>2</sup> *n* BE, **bodywork**<sup>3</sup> *n* → U142-20

health resort near a **spring**<sup>4</sup> or at the seaside where people go to become more healthy

- » Close by is a health spa with an indoor pool, steam room and **gymnasium**<sup>5</sup>. This is not a medical spa, but it does focus on total well-being. He looks trim after his month in a health farm. Based on the premise that physical illness is often emotionally based, healing centers have increasingly been **outgoing**<sup>6</sup> health farms. Bio-mechanical therapy is a gentle and relaxing type of bodywork used to integrate and **realign**<sup>7</sup> [aɪ] the body's structural framework.

Use **bathing** [eɪ] / **thalassotherapy**<sup>8</sup> / **hot springs**<sup>9</sup> **spa** • fitness / **hiking**<sup>10</sup> / elegant **spa** • **spa** water / bath / **hotel**<sup>11</sup> • **spa treatment**<sup>12</sup> / therapist / effect • **health ranch**<sup>2</sup> • women-only **health farm** • **therapeutic** / (w)holistic / deep tissue / aquatic [æ] **bodywork**

## Aerobic

Gymnastik<sup>1</sup> isometrische Übungen<sup>2</sup> Sport-, Turnhalle<sup>3</sup> Kunstturner(in)<sup>4</sup> (an)aerob<sup>5</sup> (Körper)haltung<sup>6</sup> zur Verbesserung d. Figur<sup>7</sup> Wasser-gymnastik, Wasser-Aerobic, Aqua-rhythmik<sup>8</sup> anaerobes Schwellen-training<sup>9</sup> anaerobe (Zell)atmung<sup>10</sup> Aerobicgeräte<sup>11</sup> Augengymnastik<sup>12</sup> Trimmübungen (z. Gewichtsreduktion)<sup>13</sup> Entspannungsübungen f. Autofahrer<sup>14</sup> Haltungsgymnastik f. Bildschirmarbeiter<sup>15</sup> Heilgymnastik<sup>16</sup> Kunstturnen<sup>17</sup> rhythmische Sportgymnastik<sup>18</sup>

15

## Yoga, Joga

Meditation<sup>1</sup> Tiefenmuskelentspannung<sup>2</sup> Atemübungen<sup>3</sup> Ruhe, Gelassenheit<sup>4</sup> meditieren<sup>5</sup> meditativ<sup>6</sup> entspannend, erholsam<sup>7</sup> verstärkte Nachfrage<sup>8</sup> Selbsterkenntnis<sup>9</sup> Hatha-Yoga<sup>10</sup> Yogakurse<sup>11</sup> transzendente Meditation<sup>12</sup> christl. Meditation<sup>13</sup>

16

## Sauna(bad)

Dampfbad<sup>1</sup> baden, waschen<sup>2</sup> Fö-nen<sup>3</sup> springen<sup>4</sup> Freizeitzentrum<sup>5</sup> öffentliche Sauna<sup>6</sup> Sitzbad<sup>7</sup> Schaumbad<sup>8</sup> türkisches Bad<sup>9</sup> heißes Bad<sup>10</sup> ein Bad nehmen, baden<sup>11</sup>

17

## Kurort, -anstalt, Heilquelle

Fitness-Zentrum<sup>1</sup> Gesundheitszentrum<sup>2</sup> Bodywork, Körperarbeit<sup>3</sup> Quelle<sup>4</sup> Sporthalle, Fitnessraum<sup>5</sup> übertreffen<sup>6</sup> (wieder) einrichten<sup>7</sup> Thalassotherapiezentrum<sup>8</sup> Thermalbad<sup>9</sup> Wanderkur<sup>10</sup> Kurhotel<sup>11</sup> Balneotherapie, Badekur<sup>12</sup>

18

**Kneipp cure** [kjuə] or **Kur** *n* **rel flo(a)tation**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ], **Swiss shower**<sup>2</sup> *n* *term*

system of treatments combining applications of cold water, **herbology**<sup>3</sup>, and diet of natural foods which was developed in Germany in the mid-1800s by Pastor Sebastian Kneipp

**kneippism**<sup>4</sup> *n* *term* • **float**<sup>5</sup> [flaʊt] *v* • **showering** [ʃaʊəɪŋ] *n* *clin*

» **Flotation therapy** can produce complex reactions in the body due to reduced gravity and the concentration of salts. A **Vichy shower** uses 5 or more shower **nozzles**<sup>6</sup> [nɔ:zls] in a horizontal pattern over the client to create a gentle or vigorous **rain shower**<sup>7</sup>.

Use **Kneipp herbal** [æ:] **baths**<sup>8</sup> / Kur baths / (**hydro**)**therapy**<sup>9</sup> / wellness • **Kneipp health resort**<sup>10</sup> / garden herbs<sup>11</sup> / wellness center • water / rest **cure** • **flotation** therapy / tank<sup>12</sup> • to take/have **a shower** • cold / hot / **Vichy**<sup>7</sup> **shower** • **jet**<sup>13</sup> [dʒet] / laser / evening **shower** • **shower** bath / **room**<sup>14</sup> / **cap**<sup>15</sup> / **curtain**<sup>16</sup> [ɜ:] / **head**<sup>17</sup>

**mud** [mʌd] **treatment** or **moorthrapy** [mu:-] *n* *term*

*rel* **gommage**<sup>1</sup> [-ɑ:ʒ], **scrub**<sup>2</sup>, **parafango**<sup>3</sup>, **paraffin wrap**<sup>4</sup> [ræp] *n* *term*

treatment with mineral-rich **moor mud**<sup>5</sup> containing over 800 plants many of which have known medicinal [s] properties

**scrub**<sup>6</sup> [skrʌb] *v* • **fango** [fæŋɡoʊ] *n*

» **Seaweed** [i:], **mud or clay** [kleɪ] **body masks**<sup>7</sup> are the domain [eɪ] of the health spa. The mud is applied to the body as **hot packs**<sup>8</sup> to detoxify the body, **loosen**<sup>9</sup> [lu:z] muscles and stimulate circulation. Mud treatments remineralize, hydrate [aɪ] and exfoliate the skin leaving [i:] it with a vital, healthy glow [oʊ].

Use **mud bath**<sup>10</sup> / bed • **moor bath**<sup>10</sup> /-mud facial [eɪf] mask /-drink therapy<sup>11</sup> • **moor mud**<sup>12</sup> / seaweed / aromatic **wrap** • **body**<sup>13</sup> / **compression**<sup>14</sup> **wrap** • (herbal) body / **Loofah**<sup>15</sup> / **lymphatic**<sup>16</sup> **scrub** • **abrasive**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] / lid / 2-minute **scrub** • **parafango** treatment / (body) wrap • **fango** bath / (mud) **treatment**<sup>17</sup> • **total body**<sup>18</sup> / foot exfoliating [oʊ] **gommage** • purifying / sea mineral<sup>19</sup> **gommage**

**Clinical Phrases**

**How has your health been?** Wie geht es Ihnen gesundheitlich? • **I'm as fit as a fiddle.** Ich bin kerngesund. • **Walking the dog is the only exercise I get.** Der Spaziergang mit dem Hund ist meine einzige körperliche Betätigung. • **Is she still enjoying good health?** Ist sie noch immer bei guter Gesundheit? • **My wife nursed me back to health.** Meine Frau hat mich gesund gepflegt. • **How do you feel today?** Wie geht es ihnen heute? • **Thanks, I'm fine.** Danke, gut. • **For a 70-year-old he is quite well-preserved.** Für einen Siebzigjährigen ist er gut erhalten. • **I'm working hard at getting back into shape.** Ich tue alles, um wieder in Form zu kommen. • **I haven't been too well lately.** Mir geht es in der letzten Zeit nicht gut.

**Unit 2 Diet & Dieting**

Related Units: **3** Food & Drink, **79** Nutrition, **27** Dentition & Mastication, **46** Digestion, **28** Metabolism

**ingest** [ɪndʒest] *v* *term* *syn* **take in** *v* *phr*,

*sim* **eat**<sup>1</sup> [i:t] - **ate** [et|et] - **eaten** *v* *irr*

to take in food, drink or medication via the mouth for **digestion**<sup>2</sup> [dɪdaɪdʒestʃən]

**ingestion**<sup>3</sup> *n* *term* • **ingestants**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **intake**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **overeate**<sup>6</sup> *v* *clin* • **eater** *n* • **eating** *n*

» **Ingested food** is mixed with **salivary amylase** [eɪ] before it reaches the **stomach** [k]. **Hospitalize patients** who have ingested **mushrooms**<sup>7</sup> [ʌ] known to cause **serious** [ɪə] **poisoning**<sup>8</sup>. **Adequate intake of fluids** should be encouraged [æ:] in **immobilized patients**. Many depressed patients eat little and are frequently **constipated**<sup>9</sup>. **Eat up**<sup>10</sup> before it gets cold. You should not eat a late meal before bedtime.

Use **to ingest** food / **foreign** [fɔ:rn] **bodies**<sup>11</sup> • **ingested** eggs / fluid / drugs / poison • milk / **accidental**<sup>12</sup> / toxin / **caustic**<sup>13</sup> [ɔ:] / **coingestion**<sup>7</sup> • **to eat** less / enough / well / **like a horse**<sup>14</sup> / without help / cooked foods / **a regular diet**<sup>15</sup> / **out**<sup>16</sup> • to have sth./be unable/to refuse **to eat** • **ready**<sup>17</sup>-**to-eat** • to be a big / small / **fussy** [ʌ] or **picky**<sup>18</sup> / compulsive [ʌ] **eater** • **eating habits**<sup>19</sup> / **disorder**<sup>20</sup> • **binge**<sup>21</sup> [bɪndʒ] **eating** • **obsessive, compulsive**<sup>22</sup> **overeating**

**Kneippkur**

Flotation<sup>1</sup> Massagedusche<sup>2</sup> Kräuterkunde<sup>3</sup> Kneipp-Kur, Kneippbewegung<sup>4</sup> floaten, im Wasser schweben<sup>5</sup> Düsen<sup>6</sup> Regendusche<sup>7</sup> Kneippsche Kräuterbäder<sup>8</sup> Kneippsche Hydrotherapie<sup>9</sup> Kneipp-Kurort<sup>10</sup> Kneippsche Gartenkräuter<sup>11</sup> Schwebetank<sup>12</sup> Strahldusche<sup>13</sup> Duschräum<sup>14</sup> Duschhaube<sup>15</sup> Duschvorhang<sup>16</sup> Duschkopf<sup>17</sup> 19

**Moorbehandlung**

Peeling<sup>1</sup> Abreibung<sup>2</sup> Parafango<sup>3</sup> Paraffinpackung<sup>4</sup> Moorerde<sup>5</sup> abreiben<sup>6</sup> Schlamm- oder Lehm-Ganz(körper)packungen<sup>7</sup> heiße Packungen<sup>8</sup> lockern<sup>9</sup> Moorbad<sup>10</sup> Moortrinkkur<sup>11</sup> Moorpackung<sup>12</sup> Ganzpackung<sup>13</sup> Kompresse, Wickel<sup>14</sup> Abreibung mit einem Luffaschwamm<sup>15</sup> manuelle Lymphdrainage<sup>16</sup> Fangobehandlung<sup>17</sup> Ganzkörperpeeling<sup>18</sup> Meersalz-peeling<sup>19</sup> 20

**einnehmen, zu sich nehmen**

essen<sup>1</sup> Verdauung<sup>2</sup> (Nahrungs)aufnahme, Einnahme (Medikament)<sup>3</sup> aufgenommene Nahrung, Ingesta<sup>4</sup> Ein-, Aufnahme, Zufuhr<sup>5</sup> s. überessen<sup>6</sup> Pilze<sup>7</sup> Vergiftung<sup>8</sup> verstopft, obstipiert<sup>9</sup> iss auf<sup>10</sup> Fremdkörper verschlucken<sup>11</sup> akzidentelle / versehentliche Einnahme<sup>12</sup> E. von Arzneimitteln<sup>13</sup> essen für vier<sup>14</sup> normale Kost zu s. nehmen<sup>15</sup> (ins Restaurant) essen gehen<sup>16</sup> fertig zubereitet<sup>17</sup> heikel b. Essen<sup>18</sup> Essgewohnheiten<sup>19</sup> Essstörung<sup>20</sup> E. mit Heißhungerattacken / Essanfällen<sup>21</sup> Freßsucht<sup>22</sup> 1



**consume** [u:] v *sim* **have**<sup>1</sup>, **dine**<sup>2</sup> [aɪ] v, **lunch**<sup>3</sup> [lʌntʃ] v & n

**consumption**<sup>4</sup> [ʌ] n • **dining** n • **dinner**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] n • **diner**<sup>6</sup> [aɪ] n

» *Nutritional* [ɪ] needs can be met quite easily by adults who consume *dairy* [ɛə] products<sup>7</sup>. Alcohol when consumed in excess for prolonged periods typically causes these symptoms. Why don't you have another toast? They lunched on fast food every day.

Use **to consume** a varied diet [daɪət]/ little dietary fiber<sup>8</sup> / large quantities of beer • **consumption of contaminated food**<sup>9</sup> / **heavy** [ɛ] meals<sup>10</sup> • coffee / alcohol / sea-food<sup>11</sup> / excessive **consumption** • **safe for consumption**<sup>12</sup> • **to dine** out with sb. • **dining hall**<sup>13</sup> / room / table / car<sup>14</sup> • to have/go out for **lunch** • buffet [eɪ]/ business **lunch** • **lunchtime** / **break or hour**<sup>15</sup> • candlelight **dinner**

**feed** [fi:d] - **fed** - **fed** [e] v *irr* *sim* **nourish**<sup>1</sup> [nʊrɪʃ] v → U79-1

(i) to give food to a baby, animals or persons who cannot eat without help

(ii) to supply with **nutriment**<sup>2</sup> [nu:]

**feed(ing)**<sup>3</sup> n • **underfeeding**<sup>4</sup> n • **underfed** adj

» Generally, *infants*<sup>5</sup> weighing [eɪ] less than 1200g require 2-hour feedings, whereas larger infants are fed at 3-hour intervals. How often does your baby feed<sup>6</sup>?

Use **to feed** sb. honey [ʌ]/ sb. with a spoon / **poorly**<sup>7</sup> • **feeding bottle**<sup>8</sup> / **cup**<sup>9</sup> / **method** / **pattern**<sup>10</sup> / **problem** / **tube** [u:] / **regimen**<sup>11</sup> [dʒ] • **breast**<sup>12</sup>- [e]/ **bottle**- / **adequately**<sup>13</sup> / **well** / **tube-fed** • **tube**<sup>14</sup> / **intravenous** [i:] / **forced**<sup>15</sup> / **breast feeding** • **to be a heavy**<sup>16</sup> [e]/ poor **feeder**

**wolf** [ʊ] **down** v *phr inf* *sim* **gulp** [ʌ] **down**<sup>1</sup>, **bolt down**<sup>2</sup>, **gobble (up)**<sup>2</sup> v *phr inf*

to take big **bites**<sup>3</sup> and **swallow**<sup>4</sup> hurriedly or **greedily**<sup>5</sup> [i:] without chewing [tʃʌwɪŋ] or drink in one **swallow**<sup>6</sup> [swɔ:ləʊ]

**nonedible** or **inedible** [e] adj *opposite* **edible**<sup>1</sup> adj, *rel* **palatable**<sup>2</sup> adj

unfit for human consumption, e.g. *past its sell-by date*<sup>3</sup>

**unpalatable**<sup>4</sup> adj • **palatability**<sup>5</sup> n

» Vitamin K1 is present in most edible vegetables, especially in green leaves. A diet with normal fat content is more palatable and just as effective as a low-fat diet.

Use **nonedible** plants

**food** [fu:d] n *sim* **foodstuffs**<sup>1</sup>, **groceries**<sup>2</sup> [oʊs], **vituals**<sup>3</sup> n BE, \***grub**<sup>4</sup> [ʌ] n *inf*

any substance [ʌ] that can be **metabolized**<sup>5</sup> by an organism to give energy and build up tissue

» Enjoy your food. Asking the patient to keep a *dairy*<sup>6</sup> [daɪəri] of foods eaten may prove helpful. **Fortification**<sup>7</sup> of foodstuffs with vitamins etc. has nearly eliminated once-common **deficiency states**<sup>8</sup> [ɪ].

Use **to refuse/prepare**<sup>9</sup>/(BE) **be off one's**<sup>10</sup> **food** • **food intake**<sup>11</sup> / **additives**<sup>12</sup> / **preservatives**<sup>13</sup> / **supplement** • **bolus**<sup>14</sup> of / **fatty** / **ingested** / **junk**<sup>15</sup> [dʒʌŋk] / **fast** / **health**<sup>16</sup> [e] **food** • (un)cooked / **solid**<sup>17</sup> / **spicy** [spaisi] / **spoiled**<sup>18</sup> **food** • **food craving**<sup>19</sup> [eɪ] / **intolerance**<sup>20</sup> / **particles** / **poisoning**<sup>21</sup> • **food aversion**<sup>22</sup> / **debris**<sup>23</sup> [i:] / **choices** / **sources** / **chain**<sup>24</sup> [tʃeɪn] • **undigested** / **baby**<sup>25</sup> / **regurgitated**<sup>26</sup> [gɜ:rɜ:dʒ] **food** • **food-borne infection**<sup>27</sup> • **fortified** / **contaminated**<sup>28</sup> / **aspiration of foodstuffs**

**Note:** Food is normally used in the singular. In the plural it is used synonymously with *foodstuffs* to refer to different types of food.

**konsumieren, verzehren, zu sich nehmen**

essen, trinken, zu sich nehmen<sup>1</sup> speisen, dinieren<sup>2</sup> (zu) Mittag essen, Mittagessen<sup>3</sup> Konsum, Verzehr<sup>4</sup> Hauptmahlzeit, Abendessen<sup>5</sup> Esslokal<sup>6</sup> Milchprodukte<sup>7</sup> wenig Ballaststoffe zu s. nehmen<sup>8</sup> Konsum verdorbener Lebensmittel<sup>9</sup> K. schwerverdaulicher Gerichte<sup>10</sup> Konsum v. Meeresfrüchten<sup>11</sup> für den Verzehr geeignet / mindestens haltbar bis<sup>12</sup> Speisesaal<sup>13</sup> Speisewagen<sup>14</sup> Mittagspause<sup>15</sup>

2

(i) **füttern, Nahrung zuführen**  
(ii) **(er)nähren, mit Nahrung versorgen**

(er)nähren<sup>1</sup> Nahrung<sup>2</sup> Stillen, Füttern, Ernährung<sup>3</sup> Unterernährung<sup>4</sup> Säuglinge<sup>5</sup> trinken, nach d. Brust / Flasche verlangen<sup>6</sup> wenig zu sich nehmen / trinken (Baby)<sup>7</sup> Saugflasche<sup>8</sup> Schnabeltasse<sup>9</sup> Stillzeiten<sup>10</sup> Ernährungsplan<sup>11</sup> gestillt<sup>12</sup> ausreichend ernährt<sup>13</sup> Sondenernährg.<sup>14</sup> Zwangsernährg.<sup>15</sup> e. starker Esser sein<sup>16</sup>

3

**(Speisen) hinunterschlingen**

hinunterstürzen (Getränk), -schling(en) (Essen)<sup>1</sup> gierig essen, verschlingen<sup>2</sup> Bissen<sup>3</sup> schlucken<sup>4</sup> gierig<sup>5</sup> Zug<sup>6</sup>

4

**nicht essbar, ungenießbar**

ess-, genießbar<sup>1</sup> wohlschmeckend, schmackhaft<sup>2</sup> nach dem Ablaufdatum<sup>3</sup> nicht schmackhaft; ungenießbar<sup>4</sup> Schmackhaftigkeit<sup>5</sup>

5

**Nahrung, Essen**

Nahrungsmittel<sup>1</sup> Lebensmittel<sup>2</sup> Lebensmittel, Proviant<sup>3</sup> Fressalien<sup>4</sup> abbauen, umwandeln<sup>5</sup> Tagebuch<sup>6</sup> Anreicherung<sup>7</sup> Mangelzustände<sup>8</sup> E. zubereiten<sup>9</sup> keinen Appetit haben<sup>10</sup> Nahrungsaufnahme<sup>11</sup> Lebensmittelzusatzstoffe<sup>12</sup> Konservierungsmittel<sup>13</sup> Bolus, Bissen<sup>14</sup> N. mit geringem Nährwert<sup>15</sup> Reformkost<sup>16</sup> feste N.<sup>17</sup> verdorbene N.<sup>18</sup> Essensgelüste<sup>19</sup> Nahrungsmittelunverträglichkeit<sup>20</sup> Nahrungsmittelvergiftung<sup>21</sup> Abneigung gegen Speisen<sup>22</sup> Speisereste<sup>23</sup> Nahrungskette<sup>24</sup> Säuglingsnahrung<sup>25</sup> erbrochenes Essen<sup>26</sup> Lebensmittelinfektion<sup>27</sup> kontaminierte Lebensmittel<sup>28</sup>

6

**meal** [mi:l] *n*

food served and eaten at one time (e.g. breakfast, **brunch**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ], lunch, **barbecue**<sup>2</sup>, afternoon tea, **supper**<sup>3</sup>, **dinner**<sup>4</sup>)

» **Cafeterias** [ɪə] and **buffet** [eɪ] meals should be avoided by anyone on a weight-reducing [weɪt] diet. Certain foods or meal patterns can change drug effectiveness.

Use to eat/**ingest**<sup>5</sup>/**miss**<sup>6</sup> a **meal** • the **major**<sup>7</sup> **meal** • before / after / in-between **meals** • at **mealtime** • **meals on wheels**<sup>8</sup> [i:] • large / light / **heavy**<sup>9</sup> / fatty / **solid**<sup>10</sup> / test / evening / bedtime **meal** • **meal** planning / **patterns**<sup>11</sup>

**dish** [dɪʃ] *n*

(i) food prepared in a particular way (ii) dishware for serving food (pl) (iii) a **shallow**<sup>1</sup> container, e.g. a Petri dish

**dish out**<sup>2</sup> / **up**<sup>3</sup> *v phr* • **dish towel** [aʊ]/ **cloth**<sup>4</sup> [ɔ:] *n* or **tea towel**<sup>4</sup> *BE*

» These **infections** are mostly due to raw [rɔ:] fish dishes. This dish is best when served cold. They **dished up** the finest of meals.

Use to do or wash<sup>5</sup> the **dishes** • **favorite**<sup>6</sup> [eɪ] **dish** • **dish washer**<sup>7</sup> / **water**<sup>8</sup> / **rack**<sup>9</sup>

**servicing** [ɜ:] *n* *syn* **helping** *n*, *sim* **course**<sup>1</sup> [kɔ:rs] *n*

a portion of food or drink

**serve**<sup>2</sup> *v* • **service**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **server**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» Do you want a second **helping**? **Frying**<sup>5</sup> [aɪ] the food before **servicing** may not destroy the **toxins**.

Use standardized **servicing** size [aɪ] • **servicing spoon** [u:] • **salad server**<sup>6</sup> • a **four-course meal**<sup>7</sup>

**snack** *n & v*

(*n*) a light informal meal, e.g. tea or **coffee break**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] where you have some **refreshments**<sup>2</sup>

» **Dietary strategies** to increase **appetite** or **intake** include providing **salty foods**, **nutrient-dense beverages**<sup>3</sup> [rɪdʒɪz] such as fruit juice, and **easy-to-eat snacks**. What are you **snacking on**?

Use to have a<sup>4</sup> **snack** • **snack** food / **bar**<sup>5</sup>

**appetite** [æpətaɪt] *n* *rel* **hungry**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ], **thirsty**<sup>2</sup> [ɜ:] *adj*, **hunger**<sup>3</sup>, **thirst**<sup>4</sup> *n & v*

(i) normal desire to eat (ii) to have a **craving**<sup>5</sup> [eɪ] for special foods

**appetizer**<sup>6</sup> *n* -iser *espBE* • **appetizing**<sup>7</sup> *adj* -ising *BE*

» The patient's **appetite** is poor. Are you **hungry for**<sup>8</sup> some meat? Some medications enhance the **sensation of thirst**<sup>9</sup> by causing a dry mouth.

Use to work up<sup>10</sup> / it gives me<sup>11</sup> **an appetite** • loss of<sup>12</sup> / **healthy**<sup>13</sup> / inability to control one's **appetite** • to spoil or ruin<sup>14</sup> / lose **your appetite** • to be/feel **hungry** • **wolfish**<sup>15</sup> [ʊ] / salt / air **hunger** • **hunger pain**<sup>16</sup> / strike / cry / behavior [eɪ] • **appetite suppressant**<sup>17</sup> • to experience **thirst** • **thirst** mechanism [k] / center / sensation<sup>9</sup>

**diet** [daɪət] *v & n*

*v* to eat **sparingly**<sup>1</sup> [ɛə]

*n* (i) prescribed selection of foods (ii) usual food and drink consumed by a person

**dietary**<sup>2</sup> *adj & n* • **dietician** or **-tician**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **dietetics**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **dietetic**<sup>2</sup> *adj*

» A healthy person consuming a **variety** [aɪə] of foods is unlikely to have a **dietary deficiency**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ]. I have been on this diet for weeks but to no effect. Regaining body weight after dieting is referred to as **weight cycling**.

Use to be on<sup>6</sup>/go on/observe<sup>6</sup>/follow<sup>6</sup>/adhere [ɪə] to<sup>6</sup> a **diet** • to put sb. on<sup>7</sup>/prescribe/tolerate<sup>8</sup> a **diet** • **strict**<sup>9</sup> / **well-balanced**<sup>10</sup> / a 1000-calorie / **high-fiber**<sup>11</sup> [aɪ] **diet** • low-fat / **diabetic** [eɪ] / **bland** [æ] or **ulcer**<sup>12</sup> [ʌlsə] **diet** • **full- or clear-liquid**<sup>13</sup> / **modified** / (**weight** [weɪt]) **reducing or slimming down**<sup>14</sup> / **soft**<sup>15</sup> **diet** • changes in / **staple**<sup>16</sup> [eɪ] **diet** • **dietary** assessment / history / **allowance**<sup>17</sup> [aʊ] / risk factors / **service** / **counselor**<sup>18</sup> [aʊ] • **dieting** with **exercise** / **patient** • **diet** free of / high in **proteins** / **of fruits**<sup>19</sup>

**Mahlzeit; Essen, Kost**

Brunch, Frühstück u. Mittagessen in einem<sup>1</sup> Grillen (im Freien)<sup>2</sup> Abendessen<sup>3</sup> Hauptmahlzeit, (Fest)essen<sup>4</sup> Mahlzeit einnehmen<sup>5</sup> M. auslassen<sup>6</sup> Hauptmahlzeit<sup>7</sup> Essen auf Rädern<sup>8</sup> schwerverdauliches Gericht<sup>9</sup> feste Kost<sup>10</sup> Essgewohnheiten<sup>11</sup>

7

**(i) Gericht, Speise (ii) Geschirr (iii) Schale, Schüssel**

flach<sup>1</sup> austeilen<sup>2</sup> anrichten, auftragen<sup>3</sup> Geschirrtuch<sup>4</sup> Geschirrspülen / abwaschen<sup>5</sup> Lieblingsspeise<sup>6</sup> Spülmaschine, Geschirrspüler<sup>7</sup> Abwasch-, Spülwasser<sup>8</sup> Geschirrkorb, -ständer<sup>9</sup>

8

**Portion**

Gang<sup>1</sup> servieren<sup>2</sup> Bedienung<sup>3</sup> Vorlegebesteck<sup>4</sup> (ab)braten<sup>5</sup> Salatbesteck<sup>6</sup> 4-gängiges Menü<sup>7</sup>

9

**Imbiss, Zwischenmahlzeit; Imbiss zu sich nehmen**

Kaffeepause<sup>1</sup> Erfrischungen<sup>2</sup> nährstoffreiche Getränke<sup>3</sup> eine Kleinigkeit essen<sup>4</sup> Imbissstube<sup>5</sup>

10

**Appetit**

hungrig<sup>1</sup> durstig<sup>2</sup> Hunger; hunger<sup>3</sup> Durst; dürsten<sup>4</sup> Verlangen, Lust<sup>5</sup> Appetitanreger, -happen, Vorspeise<sup>6</sup> appetitanregend, lecker<sup>7</sup> A./Lust haben auf<sup>8</sup> Durstgefühl<sup>9</sup> s. einen Appetit holen<sup>10</sup> A. anregen<sup>11</sup> Appetitlosigkeit<sup>12</sup> guter/gesunder A.<sup>13</sup> A. verderben<sup>14</sup> Wolfshunger<sup>15</sup> Nüchtern-, Hungerschmerz<sup>16</sup> Appetitzüger<sup>17</sup>

11

**Diät halten;****(i) Diät, Schon-, Krankenkost (ii) Nahrung, Kost**

in Maßen, wenig<sup>1</sup> diätetisch; Diätvorschrift<sup>2</sup> Diätetiker(in)<sup>3</sup> Diätetik, Ernährungslehre<sup>4</sup> Mangelernährung<sup>5</sup> D. halten<sup>6</sup> auf D. setzen<sup>7</sup> Kost vertragen<sup>8</sup> strenge D.<sup>9</sup> ausgewogene K.<sup>10</sup> ballaststoffreiche K.<sup>11</sup> reizarme / blande Diät<sup>12</sup> flüssige Nahrung<sup>13</sup> Schlankheitsdiät, Reduktionskost<sup>14</sup> leichte K., Breikost<sup>15</sup> Hauptnahrung<sup>16</sup> Diätempfehlung, empfohlene Nahrungszufuhr<sup>17</sup> Ernährungsberater(in)<sup>18</sup> Obstdiät<sup>19</sup> 12

**wholesome** [ˈhəʊlsəm] *adj* *syn* **healthy** [heɪθi], **healthful** *adj* → U1-2

food supposed to be good for your health because it is **rich in nutrients**<sup>1</sup> or low in artificial ingredients [i:]

**wholefood(s)**<sup>2</sup> *n* *esp* BE • **whole wheat**<sup>3</sup> [ˈwi:t] *n* • **whole bread**<sup>4</sup> [e] *n*

» The wholesome **ingredients**<sup>5</sup> of their breads are well **documented**.

**starve** [stɑ:v] *v*

(i) to die or—informally—suffer (extremely) from lack of food (ii) not to give someone any food

**(semi-)starvation**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] *n* • **starving**<sup>2</sup> *adj* & *n*

» She has been **starving** herself. They died of **starvation**. **Total starvation** causes a loss of approximately 0.4 kg of body weight per day.

Use **to be starving**<sup>3</sup> • **to starve to death**<sup>4</sup> • **starvation diet**<sup>5</sup> • to die of / **total** / **prolonged** / **oxygen**<sup>6</sup> [ˈɒksɪdʒən] **starvation**

**fast** [fæst] *v* & *n* *sim* **fasting**<sup>1</sup> [ˈfæstɪŋ] *adj* & *n*

to **abstain** [eɪ] **from**<sup>2</sup> (certain) food over a specific **period** of time for **therapeutic** [ju:] or **religious** [dʒ] reasons

» Patients are **fasted** under close **supervision** [ɪ] for up to 72 h. **Diarrhea** [daɪəri:ə] of any cause often **improves** or **resolves with fasting**<sup>3</sup>. They also **recommend obtaining a fasting lipid profile**.

Use **prolonged periods of** / **avoidance of** / **after fasting** • **fasting blood sugar or glucose levels**<sup>4</sup> • **in the fed and fasted states**<sup>5</sup> • under **fasting** conditions

**vegetarian** [vedʒɪteəriən] *n* & *adj* *sim* **vegan**<sup>1</sup> [ˈvi:gən] *adj* & *n*,  
*rel* **vegetarianism**<sup>2</sup> *n*

(n) person who does not eat meat or fish or (often) any animal products (*adj*) excluding meat

» A **vegan diet** can be **nutritionally adequate**, although more **thoughtful**<sup>3</sup> [θɒtɪfʊl] **food choices** and **supplementation**<sup>4</sup> with **fortified foods**<sup>5</sup> may be necessary.

Use **vegetarian** food • **ovo-** / **ovo-lacto** / **strictly vegetarian diet**<sup>6</sup>

**health freak** [i:] *n* *inf*

person very **enthusiastic** [u:] about a healthy life-style, *esp.* health food, often to the point of being **obsessed**<sup>1</sup> with it

» **Oat bran**<sup>2</sup> [aʊt bræn] has become the **favorite** [eɪ] of **health freaks**.



### Clinical Phrases

Try to **keep off salty food**. Salzhaltige Speisen sollten Sie nach Möglichkeit meiden. • **She has a sweet tooth**. Sie isst gern Süßigkeiten. • **I don't have a stomach for milk any more**. Mir schmeckt die Milch nicht mehr. • **I couldn't stomach it**. Ich habe es nicht vertragen. • **Thanks, I'm full**. Danke, ich bin satt. • **I made a real pig of myself stuffing myself with sweets**. Ich habe mir den Bauch mit Süßigkeiten vollgeschlagen. • **He just couldn't stay off the booze**. Er griff immer wieder zur Flasche. • **I've hardly touched any food for a week**. Ich habe schon eine Woche kaum etwas gegessen. • **Most infants will want to feed every two or three hours**. Die meisten Säuglinge wollen alle 2–3 Stunden gefüttert werden. • **The baby's refused the bottle ever since**. Seither hat das Baby die Flasche verweigert. • **It seems the boy's practically living on chips and sweets**. Der Bub ernährt sich anscheinend nur von Chips und Süßigkeiten. • **It makes my mouth water**. Mir läuft das Wasser im Mund zusammen. • **I've been off my food for the past few weeks**. (BE) Ich hatte in den letzten paar Wochen keinen Appetit. • **I am starved / starving**. Ich komme fast um vor Hunger. • **For them lunch is just a snack**. Sie essen mittags nicht viel.

**gesund, bekömmlich**

reich an Nährstoffen<sup>1</sup> Vollwertprodukte<sup>2</sup> Voll(korn)weizen<sup>3</sup> Vollkornbrot<sup>4</sup> Zutaten<sup>5</sup>

13

**(ver)hungern (lassen), fasten**

(Ver)hungern, Hungertod<sup>1</sup>  
(ver)hungern; (Aus)hungern<sup>2</sup> halb verhungert sein, vor Hunger umkommen<sup>3</sup> verhungern<sup>4</sup> Hungerkur<sup>5</sup> Sauerstoffhunger<sup>6</sup>

14

**fasten, hungern; Fasten(zeit)**

nüchtern, hungernd; Fasten<sup>1</sup> sich enthalten<sup>2</sup> sisiert bei Nahrungskarenz<sup>3</sup> Nüchternblutzucker<sup>4</sup> nüchtern und mit vollem Magen<sup>5</sup>

15

**Vegetarier(in); vegetarisch**

streng vegetarisch; streng(e)r V.<sup>1</sup> Vegetarismus, veget. Lebensweise<sup>2</sup> wohlüberlegt<sup>3</sup> Ergänzung<sup>4</sup> angereicherte Nahrungsmittel<sup>5</sup> streng vegetarische Kost<sup>6</sup>

16

**Gesundheitsapostel**

besseren sein<sup>1</sup> Haferkleie<sup>2</sup>

17

## Unit 3 Food & Drink

Related Units: 2 Diet & Dieting, 27 Dentition & Mastication, 46 Digestion, 78 Metabolism, 79 Nutrition

### meat [i:] n

flesh of animals that is cooked and eaten; types include pork (from pigs), **beef**<sup>1</sup> (cows), **veal**<sup>2</sup> [i:] (calf [kæf]), **mutton**<sup>3</sup> [ʌ] (sheep), lamb, **poultry**<sup>4</sup> [əʊ] (chicken, **turkey**<sup>5</sup>, etc.), and **venison** or **game**<sup>6</sup> (from wild animals, e.g. **deer**<sup>7</sup> [i]). Meat can be eaten as **bacon**<sup>8</sup>, **ham**<sup>9</sup>, steak, **cutlet**<sup>10</sup> [ʌ], **chop**<sup>11</sup>, hamburger, **sausage**<sup>12</sup> [sɔːsɪdʒ], **hot dog**<sup>13</sup>, etc.

meaty *adj* • **meatloaf**<sup>14</sup> [əʊ] n • **meatballs**<sup>15</sup> n

» Do you like your steak **medium-rare**<sup>16</sup> or **well-done**? Excessive intake of **purine** from meat, fish and poultry may favor stone formation. You should not pour any **gravy**<sup>17</sup> [ɛ] on your meat. Tofu is used as a meat substitute.

Use raw / (**under**)cooked<sup>18</sup> / fried / roast / **lean**<sup>19</sup> [i:] **meat** • fatty / red / white / **ground**<sup>20</sup> [aʊ] / **tough**<sup>21</sup> [tʌf] / **tender**<sup>22</sup> **meat** • **meat** tenderizer / **substitute**<sup>23</sup> • **corned**<sup>24</sup> **beef** • **chicken** soup

### fish v & n usu sing

types of fish commonly eaten include **trout**<sup>1</sup> [aʊ], **cod**<sup>2</sup>, herring, **sardine**, **salmon**<sup>3</sup> [sæmən], mackerel, and **tuna**<sup>4</sup>

» Shall we have fish for lunch? I'd like the cod **fillets**. Do you like tuna canned in oil?

Use **freshwater**<sup>5</sup> / **marine**<sup>6</sup> / fatty / **smoked**<sup>7</sup> / baked / **broiled**<sup>8</sup> / **canned**<sup>9</sup> / **breaded**<sup>10</sup> [ɛ] **fish** • **fish stick** or **finger**<sup>11</sup> • **filleted** sole<sup>12</sup> [səʊl]

### seafood n

edible marine fish and shellfish<sup>1</sup>, e.g. **octopus** or **squid**<sup>2</sup>, **shrimps**<sup>3</sup>, **roe**<sup>4</sup> [roʊ], **lobster**<sup>5</sup> [lɒ], crab, **mussel**<sup>6</sup> [ʌ], **oyster**<sup>7</sup>

» Most cases of **food poisoning**<sup>8</sup> were linked to **ingestion**<sup>9</sup> [dʒ] of undercooked seafood.

Use **seafood** restaurant / **consumption**<sup>9</sup> / ingestion • raw [ɒ:] **seafood**

### milk n & v

» The patient should not drink any cold milk. This milk has **turned** / **gone sour**<sup>1</sup> [sauə]. A glass of milk usually **relieves**<sup>2</sup> the pain.

Use **whole**<sup>3</sup> [hoʊl] / **skim**(med)<sup>4</sup> / raw / cow / **goat's**<sup>5</sup> / **breast**<sup>6</sup> [e] **milk** • (un)pasteurized [tʃə:] / **certified**<sup>7</sup> / **fortified vitamin D**<sup>8</sup> / butter **milk** • **scalded**<sup>9</sup> [ɔ:] / **low-fat**<sup>4</sup> / **condensed**<sup>10</sup> / **acidophilus**<sup>11</sup> / coconut / **dry** or **instant**<sup>12</sup> **milk** • **milkshake** / sugar / **powder** [aʊ]

### dairy [deəri] products or espBE produce n

foods made from milk such as cheese, **cream**<sup>1</sup> [i:], butter, **curd**<sup>2</sup> [ɜ:], yog(ho)urt [jəʊgət], and **whey**<sup>3</sup> [hwei]

» The **fruit custard**<sup>4</sup> [ʌ] may have been **mouldy**<sup>5</sup> and the **mildew**<sup>6</sup> [du:] has probably **precipitated**<sup>7</sup> his symptoms.

Use **peanut**<sup>8</sup> / **melted**<sup>9</sup> **butter** • (un)grated<sup>10</sup> [ɛ] / **cream**<sup>11</sup> / **soft**<sup>12</sup> / Swiss / cottage **cheese** • (un)whipped / **whipping**<sup>13</sup> **cream** • **dairy** farm / cow

### vegetable [vedʒətəbl] n usu sing rel legumes<sup>1</sup> [leɟju:mz] n

edible **seeds**<sup>2</sup>, **roots**<sup>3</sup>, **stems**<sup>4</sup> or leaves or nonsweet fruits of many plants such as potatoes, **beets**<sup>5</sup>, **asparagus**<sup>6</sup>, **cabbage**<sup>7</sup>, **cauliflower**<sup>8</sup> [ɔ:], **lettuce**<sup>9</sup> [letʃ], **cucumbers**<sup>10</sup>, **rhubarb**, **horseradish**<sup>11</sup>, **carrots**, **beans**<sup>12</sup>, **peppers**<sup>13</sup>, **sweet corn**<sup>14</sup>, **onions**<sup>15</sup> [ʌ], **green peas**<sup>16</sup>, **turnips**<sup>17</sup>, **egg plants**<sup>18</sup>, **pumpkins**<sup>19</sup>, **spinach** [tʃ], **broccoli**, **lentils**<sup>20</sup>, etc.

» Travelers can reduce their risk of **diarrhea** [daɪəri:ə] by avoiding uncooked vegetables, salads, and **unpeeled**<sup>21</sup> fruit. Vitamin K1 is present in most edible vegetables, particularly in green leaves.

Use fresh / (green) leafy / root / **starchy**<sup>22</sup> [tʃ] / raw / **grated**<sup>23</sup> **vegetables** • **vegetable** proteins / oils / soup • **salad dressing**<sup>24</sup> • dried **beans** • **mashed potatoes**<sup>25</sup>

### Fleisch

Rindfl.<sup>1</sup> Kalbfl.<sup>2</sup> Schaffl.<sup>3</sup> Geflügel<sup>4</sup> Truthahn<sup>5</sup> Wild<sup>6</sup> Rotwild<sup>7</sup> Speck<sup>8</sup> Schinken<sup>9</sup> Schnitzel<sup>10</sup> Kotelett<sup>11</sup> Wurst<sup>12</sup> Würstchen<sup>13</sup> Fleischkäse<sup>14</sup> Fleischklöße<sup>15</sup> halb durch<sup>16</sup> Soße<sup>17</sup> (nicht) durchgegartes Fl.<sup>18</sup> mageres Fl.<sup>19</sup> Hackfleisch<sup>20</sup> zähes Fl.<sup>21</sup> zartes Fl.<sup>22</sup> Fleischersatz<sup>23</sup> Dosenfleisch<sup>24</sup>

1

### fischen; Fisch

Forelle<sup>1</sup> Dorsch<sup>2</sup> Lachs<sup>3</sup> Thunfisch<sup>4</sup> Süßwasserfisch<sup>5</sup> Meeres-, Seefisch<sup>6</sup> Räucherfisch<sup>7</sup> gegrillter F.<sup>8</sup> Dosenfisch<sup>9</sup> paniertes F.<sup>10</sup> Fischstäbchen<sup>11</sup> Seezungenfilet<sup>12</sup>

2

### Meeresfrüchte

Schalentiere<sup>1</sup> Tintenfisch<sup>2</sup> Garnelen<sup>3</sup> Rogen<sup>4</sup> Hummer<sup>5</sup> Miesmuschel<sup>6</sup> Austern<sup>7</sup> Lebensmittelvergiftung<sup>8</sup> Konsum v. Meeres<sup>9</sup>

3

### Milch; melken

sauer werden<sup>1</sup> lindert<sup>2</sup> Vollmilch<sup>3</sup> Magermilch<sup>4</sup> Ziegenmilch<sup>5</sup> Muttermilch<sup>6</sup> Vorzugsmilch<sup>7</sup> mit Vitamin D angereicherte M.<sup>8</sup> abgekochte M.<sup>9</sup> Kondens-, Dosenmilch<sup>10</sup> Sauer- milch<sup>11</sup> Trockenmilch<sup>12</sup>

4

### Milch-, Molkereiprodukte

Obers, Sahne<sup>1</sup> Quark, Topfen<sup>2</sup> Molke<sup>3</sup> Fruchtcreme<sup>4</sup> schimmelig<sup>5</sup> Schimmel<sup>6</sup> auslösen<sup>7</sup> Erdnussbutter<sup>8</sup> zerlassene B.<sup>9</sup> geriebener Käse<sup>10</sup> (Doppelrahm-)frischkäse<sup>11</sup> Weichkäse<sup>12</sup> Schlagsahne, -rahm (öst.)<sup>13</sup>

5

### Gemüse

Hülsenfrüchte<sup>1</sup> Samen<sup>2</sup> Wurzeln<sup>3</sup> Stiele<sup>4</sup> Rüben, Bete<sup>5</sup> Spargel<sup>6</sup> Kohl<sup>7</sup> Blumenkohl<sup>8</sup> Kopfsalat<sup>9</sup> Gurken<sup>10</sup> Meerrettich<sup>11</sup> Bohnen<sup>12</sup> Paprika<sup>13</sup> Zuckermais<sup>14</sup> Zwiebel<sup>15</sup> grüne Erbsen<sup>16</sup> weiße Rüben<sup>17</sup> Auberginen<sup>18</sup> Kürbisse<sup>19</sup> Linsen<sup>20</sup> ungeschält<sup>21</sup> stärkehaltiges Gemüse<sup>22</sup> geraspelt-tes G.<sup>23</sup> Salatsoße<sup>24</sup> Kartoffel- püree<sup>25</sup>

6

**fruit** [fru:t] *n usu sing*

ripened<sup>1</sup> [aɪ], mostly edible reproductive parts of a plant containing the seeds, e.g. apples, **pears**<sup>2</sup> [eə], **peaches**<sup>3</sup> [i:tʃ], **tangerines**<sup>4</sup> [dʒ], **cherries**<sup>5</sup>, **pineapples**<sup>6</sup> [aɪ], **apricots**, **grapes**<sup>7</sup> [eɪ], **plums**<sup>8</sup> [ʌ], **prunes**<sup>9</sup> [u:], **dates**<sup>10</sup> [eɪ], **figs**<sup>11</sup>, melons, etc.

» **Fructose is a natural or added sweetener in fruit. Many fruits are a good source of vitamin C and dietary fiber**<sup>12</sup> [aɪ]. Consume at least 5–9 servings of fruits and vegetables per day.

Use fresh / **dried**<sup>13</sup> / **canned**<sup>14</sup> / (un)peeled<sup>15</sup> **fruit** • citrus [saɪ] / kiwi / tropical / raw / unripened / **fallen**<sup>16</sup> **fruit** • **fruit** sugar / juice / **pulp**<sup>17</sup> / **salad** / in heavy/light syrup • **fruitcake** • **apple pie**<sup>18</sup> [paɪ] / **sauce**<sup>19</sup> • **sliced** [aɪ] **peaches**<sup>20</sup>

**berries** *n pl*

**pulp**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ] and mostly edible small fruit from low bushes [ʌ], e.g. **strawberry**<sup>2</sup> [zɪ], **blueberry**<sup>3</sup>, **blackberry**<sup>4</sup>, black and red **currant**<sup>5</sup> [zɪ], **cranberry**<sup>6</sup>, **raspberry**<sup>7</sup> [ræzberi]

Use **raspberry tart**<sup>8</sup> / **pie**<sup>9</sup> / **jam**<sup>10</sup> / **jello**<sup>11</sup> [dʒelou] • **poisonous**<sup>12</sup> **berry**

**bread** [bred] *n sim breadstuff*<sup>1</sup> *n*

food made from **flour**<sup>2</sup> [flaʊə], water and **yeast**<sup>3</sup> [ji:st] mixed into a **dough**<sup>4</sup> [dou] and baked in the **oven**<sup>5</sup> [ʌ]; bread products include **rolls**<sup>6</sup>, **buns**<sup>7</sup> [ʌ], **doughnuts**<sup>8</sup>, **wafers**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ], **waffles**<sup>9</sup> [vɛ], toasts, etc.

**breeding**<sup>10</sup> *n* • **breaded**<sup>11</sup> *adj*

» **In patients with heart failure specially processed breads**<sup>12</sup> and salt substitutes are advisable.

Use white / dark / **rye**<sup>13</sup> [raɪ] / barley / **wheat**<sup>14</sup> [i:] / (un)enriched / **whole grain**<sup>15</sup> / **crispbread**<sup>16</sup> • **garlic**<sup>17</sup> / French / **raisin**<sup>18</sup> [eɪ] / **sourdough**<sup>19</sup> / **gluten(-free)** / **ginger-bread**<sup>20</sup> [dʒ] • a slice<sup>21</sup> of / **loaf**<sup>22</sup> [ou] of **bread** • **bread** products / **crumbs**<sup>23</sup> [krʌmz]

**pastry** [peɪstri] *n rel frosting<sup>1</sup> *n, BE icing* [aɪsɪŋ] *n**

dough of flour, water, **baking powder**<sup>2</sup>, and **shortening**<sup>3</sup> to make **pies**<sup>4</sup>, cakes, strudel, **pancakes**<sup>5</sup>, **soufflés** [suflɛz], etc.

» **Apple pie and custard**<sup>6</sup> [ʌ] was his **staple food**<sup>7</sup> [eɪ]. You should avoid **cookies**<sup>8</sup> and pastries.

Use French **pastry** • **pastry cook**<sup>9</sup> • apple / **pumpkin**<sup>10</sup> / meat / **rhubarb** / deep-dish **pie** • **chocolate**<sup>11</sup> [tʃɔ:klət] **frosting**

**pasta** *n*

types of pasta include spaghetti, **noodles** [nu:], macaroni, tortellini, etc.

» **The Food Guide Pyramid recommends 6–11 daily servings of bread, pasta, rice, and cereals.**

Use **spaghetti with meatballs**<sup>1</sup> / in tomato sauce<sup>2</sup> • **egg**<sup>3</sup> / tender-stage<sup>4</sup> **noodles**

**cereals** [sɪə:ɪəlz] *n pl syn cornflakes* *n esp BE*

(i) **starchy** [tʃ] **grains**<sup>1</sup> used as food, e.g. **rice**<sup>2</sup>, wheat, rye, **barley**<sup>3</sup>, **oats**<sup>4</sup> [ou], **corn**<sup>5</sup>, **buckwheat**<sup>6</sup> [ʌ], **millet**<sup>7</sup>, etc. (ii) breakfast food prepared from grain

» **Oatmeal**<sup>8</sup> is among the most **nourishing** [zɪ] **ingredients**<sup>9</sup> in cereals. How about **Graham crackers**<sup>10</sup>?

Use **whole-grain**<sup>11</sup> **cereals** • **cereal**-based formulation / grains

**egg** *n*

thin-shelled female reproductive body laid by e.g. hens containing the ovum or embryo together with **nutritive**<sup>1</sup> (**yolk**<sup>2</sup> [jɔ:k]) and protective envelopes (**egg white**<sup>3</sup> and **shell**<sup>4</sup>)

» **Some gastric infections are associated with ingestion of cracked**<sup>5</sup> eggs.

Use **hard-boiled**<sup>6</sup> / soft-boiled / raw / whole [hou] / **scrambled**<sup>7</sup> / **fried**<sup>8</sup> [aɪ] **egg** • hen's / half a dozen [ʌ] / ham and **free-range**<sup>9</sup> / **commercial henhouse**<sup>10</sup> **eggs** • **egg** protein / products / **nog**<sup>11</sup> / cup /-timer<sup>12</sup> / allergy

**Obst, Früchte; Frucht**

gereift<sup>1</sup> Birnen<sup>2</sup> Pfirsiche<sup>3</sup> Mandarinen<sup>4</sup> Kirschen<sup>5</sup> Ananas<sup>6</sup> Weintrauben<sup>7</sup> Zwetschgen, Pflaumen<sup>8</sup> gedörrte Zwetschgen, Dörrpflaumen<sup>9</sup> Datteln<sup>10</sup> Feigen<sup>11</sup> Ballaststoffe<sup>12</sup> Trockenfrüchte<sup>13</sup> Dosenfrüchte<sup>14</sup> (un)geschältes Obst<sup>15</sup> Fallobst<sup>16</sup> Fruchtfleisch<sup>17</sup> Apfelkuchen<sup>18</sup> Apfelmus<sup>19</sup> Pfirsichspalten<sup>20</sup>

7

**Beeren**

fleischig<sup>1</sup> Erdbeere<sup>2</sup> Heidel-, Blaubeere<sup>3</sup> Bromb.<sup>4</sup> Johannisb.<sup>5</sup> Preiselb.<sup>6</sup> Himb.<sup>7</sup> Himbeertörtchen<sup>8</sup> Himbeertorte<sup>9</sup> Himbeermarmelade<sup>10</sup> Himbeergelee<sup>11</sup> giftige B.<sup>12</sup>

8

**Brot**

Brot(getreide)<sup>1</sup> Mehl<sup>2</sup> Hefe, Germ<sup>3</sup> Teig<sup>4</sup> Backofen, -rohr<sup>5</sup> Brötchen, Semmeln<sup>6</sup> süße Brötchen<sup>7</sup> Krapfen, Berliner<sup>8</sup> Waffeln<sup>9</sup> Paniermehl<sup>10</sup> paniert<sup>11</sup> speziell hergestellte Brot-sorten<sup>12</sup> Roggenbrot<sup>13</sup> Weizenb.<sup>14</sup> Vollkornb.<sup>15</sup> Knäcke<sup>16</sup> Knoblauchb.<sup>17</sup> Rosinenb.<sup>18</sup> Sauerteigbrot<sup>19</sup> Lebkuchen<sup>20</sup> eine Scheibe Brot<sup>21</sup> Brotlaib<sup>22</sup> Brotkrümel, Brösel<sup>23</sup>

9

**(Fein)gebäck**

Zuckerguss, Glasur<sup>1</sup> Backpulver<sup>2</sup> Backfett<sup>3</sup> Törtchen, Obstkuchen, Pasteten<sup>4</sup> Pfannkuchen, Omelette<sup>5</sup> Vanillesoße, -pudding<sup>6</sup> Hauptnahrung<sup>7</sup> Kekse, Plätzchen<sup>8</sup> Konditor(in)<sup>9</sup> Kürbiskuchen<sup>10</sup> Schokoladeglasur<sup>11</sup>

10

**Teigwaren**

Spaghetti bolognese<sup>1</sup> Pasta asciuta<sup>2</sup> Eiernudeln<sup>3</sup> Nudeln al dente<sup>4</sup>

11

**(i) Getreideflocken (ii) Mü(e)сли**

stärkehaltige Getreidesorten<sup>1</sup> Reis<sup>2</sup> Gerste<sup>3</sup> Hafer<sup>4</sup> Mais<sup>5</sup> Buchweizen<sup>6</sup> Hirse<sup>7</sup> Haferflocken<sup>8</sup> nahrhafte Bestandteile<sup>9</sup> Graham-, Weizenschrotcrackers<sup>10</sup> Vollkornflocken<sup>11</sup>

12

**Ei**

nahrhaft<sup>1</sup> Eigelb, Dotter<sup>2</sup> Eiweiß<sup>3</sup> Schale<sup>4</sup> gesprungen<sup>5</sup> hart gekochtes E.<sup>6</sup> Rührei, Eierspeise<sup>7</sup> Spiegelei<sup>8</sup> Freilandei<sup>9</sup> Batterieei<sup>10</sup> Eierlikör<sup>11</sup> Eieruhr<sup>12</sup>

13

**nuts** [nʌts] *n usu pl*

large, hard-shelled seeds, e.g. **peanuts**<sup>1</sup>, **walnuts**<sup>2</sup> [wɔː], **almonds**<sup>3</sup> [ɑː], **pignolia**<sup>4</sup>, cashew nuts or coconuts

**nutcracker**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **nutshell**<sup>6</sup> *n*

» *Seeds and nuts are good sources of vitamin E.*

**oil** *n & v* *sim* (**cooking**) **fats**<sup>1</sup> *n*

(*n*) **greasy**<sup>2</sup> [iː], viscous [vɪskəs] liquid used for cooking, in **ointments**<sup>3</sup>, **lubricants**<sup>4</sup> [lʊː], etc.

**oily** *adj* • **oilcloth**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **fatty**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

» *Take margarine [dʒ] instead of lard<sup>7</sup> or butter as a cooking fat, but use it sparingly.*

Use animal / **vegetable**<sup>8</sup> / **dietary**<sup>1</sup> **fats** • soybean / **olive** / **corn**<sup>9</sup> / **wheat germ**<sup>10</sup> [dʒ] / **rapeseed**<sup>11</sup> **oil** • **fish**<sup>12</sup> / **cod** [ɒː] **liver**<sup>13</sup> / **greasy oil**

**sugar** *n & v* *sim* (**mono-/di-** [aɪ]) **saccharide**<sup>1</sup> [k] *n, rel* **molasses**<sup>2</sup> *n term*

sweet crystalline [ɪ] carbohydrate [aɪ] (fructose [uː], lactose, sucrose [uː], dextrose, and glucose) which works as a sweetener and a source of energy for the body

**sugared**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **sugary**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **sugar-coated**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» *High-fiber, sugar-free cereals should be encouraged. Aspartame (NutraSweet) is an artificial sweetener very popular with diabetics [aɪə].*

Use a **lump** [ʌ] of **sugar** • table / **brown**<sup>7</sup> / **refined**<sup>8</sup> / **granulated** / **powdered**<sup>9</sup> / **cane**<sup>10</sup> [eɪ] / **maple**<sup>11</sup> [eɪ] / **invert**<sup>12</sup> **sugar** • **sugar beet**<sup>13</sup> [iː] / **cube**<sup>6</sup> / **substitute**<sup>14</sup> / uptake /-containing foods • **sugared almonds**<sup>15</sup>

**candy** *n sing* *syn* **sweet(ie)** *n BE*

rich sweet made of **flavored**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] sugar often with chocolate, caramel, honey, **liquorice**<sup>2</sup> [lɪkəɪs], **nougat** [uː], fruit or nuts; merchandized [tʃ] as candy bars, **lollipops**<sup>3</sup> or **suckers**<sup>3</sup>, pralines, **crisps**<sup>4</sup>, marshmallows, chewing gum, etc.

**sweetener**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **sweet** *adj* • **sweeten**<sup>6</sup> *v*

» *Younger children may suck on hard candy<sup>7</sup>. A high intake of sucrose (table sugar) in such items [aɪ] as soft drinks, candy, syrup<sup>8</sup>, and sweetened cereals is a major risk factor for caries.*

Use artificial / **nonnutritive**<sup>9</sup> **sweetener** • **candy bar**<sup>10</sup> / store / **floss**<sup>11</sup> (BE) • hard / **cotton**<sup>11</sup> **candy** • **sweet** smelling<sup>12</sup> / **potatoes**<sup>13</sup> • **to have a sweet tooth**<sup>14</sup>

**Note:** In BE a **sweet**<sup>15</sup> can also be the last course of a meal (**dessert**<sup>15</sup> in AE).

**seasoning** [iː] *n* *syn* **seasoner** *n, rel* **salt**<sup>1</sup> *n*

substances added to food to give it more **flavor**<sup>2</sup>, including salt, pepper, herbs [ɜːrbz] and spices

**season**<sup>3</sup> *v* • (**un**)**salted**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **salt-rich**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **salt-restricted**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

» *Counseling should be offered about seasoning the food with spices (e.g. pepper).*

Use well **seasoned**<sup>7</sup> • table / **rock**<sup>8</sup> / a **pinch** [tʃ] of **salt** • **salt intake**<sup>10</sup> • **salted** butter / water • **salt-restricted diet**<sup>11</sup> / **depletion**<sup>12</sup> [iː]

**herbs** [ɜːrbz||hɜːbz] *n pl* *syn* **potherbs** *n*

(i) dried aromatic plants used in **cooking**<sup>1</sup> for its **savory**<sup>2</sup> [eɪ] qualities (**chives**<sup>3</sup> [tʃaɪvz], **parsely**<sup>4</sup>, **basil**<sup>5</sup>, **dill**, **fennel**<sup>6</sup>, **thyme**<sup>7</sup> [θaɪm], **sage**<sup>8</sup> [seɪdʒ], **rosemary**<sup>9</sup>, **mint**<sup>10</sup> etc. (ii) plants used for medicinal purposes, e.g. **camomile**<sup>11</sup>, **arnica**, etc.

**herbal**<sup>12</sup> *adj & n* • **herbaceous**<sup>12</sup> [hɜːbɪʃəs] *adj* • **herbarium**<sup>13</sup> *n* • **herbalist**<sup>14</sup> *n*

» *Clinical research showed that Chinese herbal medicine is effective in controlling eczema [eks]. Many herbal folk remedies<sup>15</sup> are prepared by immersing<sup>16</sup> dried leaves or flowers in hot water.*

Use **herbal tea**<sup>17</sup> / extract / remedies / medicines • garden / **official**<sup>18</sup> [fɪ] **herbs**

**Nüsse**

Erdnüsse<sup>1</sup> Walnüsse<sup>2</sup> Mandeln<sup>3</sup>  
Pinienerkerne<sup>4</sup> Nussknacker<sup>5</sup> Nuss-  
schale<sup>6</sup>

14

**Öl; (ein)ölen**

Speisefette<sup>1</sup> fett(ig), schmierig<sup>2</sup>  
Salben<sup>3</sup> Schmier-, Gleitmittel<sup>4</sup>  
Wachstuch<sup>5</sup> fett(haltig)<sup>6</sup> Schweine-  
schmalz<sup>7</sup> pflanzliche Fette<sup>8</sup> Mais-  
keimöl<sup>9</sup> Weizenkeimöl<sup>10</sup> Rapsöl<sup>11</sup>  
Tran<sup>12</sup> Lebertran<sup>13</sup>

15

**Zucker, Saccharose;****süßen, zuckern**

Saccharid<sup>1</sup> Melasse<sup>2</sup> gezuckert<sup>3</sup> zu-  
ckerhaltig, süß<sup>4</sup> m. Z. überzogen,  
dragiert<sup>5</sup> e. Stück Zucker<sup>6</sup> brauner  
Zucker<sup>7</sup> raffinierter Z.<sup>8</sup> Staub-  
zucker<sup>9</sup> Rohrzucker<sup>10</sup> Ahornsirup<sup>11</sup>  
Invertzucker<sup>12</sup> Zuckerrübe<sup>13</sup> Zu-  
ckerersatz<sup>14</sup> kandierte Mandeln<sup>15</sup>

16

**Süßigkeiten, Bonbons**

aromatisiert<sup>1</sup> Lakritze, Süßholz<sup>2</sup>  
Lutscher<sup>3</sup> Knabbergebäck<sup>4</sup> Süß-  
stoff<sup>5</sup> (ver)süßen<sup>6</sup> Bonbon<sup>7</sup> Sirup<sup>8</sup>  
kalorienarmer Süßstoff<sup>9</sup> Riegel<sup>10</sup>  
Zuckerwatte<sup>11</sup> wohlriechend<sup>12</sup> Süß-  
kartoffeln<sup>13</sup> e. Schwäche für Süßig-  
keiten haben<sup>14</sup> Nachspeise,  
Dessert<sup>15</sup>

17

**Würze, Würzen**

Salz<sup>1</sup> Geschmack<sup>2</sup> würzen<sup>3</sup> (un)ge-  
salzen<sup>4</sup> stark gesalzen<sup>5</sup> salzarm<sup>6</sup>  
gut gewürzt<sup>7</sup> Steinsalz<sup>8</sup> eine Prise  
Salz<sup>9</sup> Salzkonsum<sup>10</sup> salzarme Diät<sup>11</sup>  
Salzmangel, -verlust<sup>12</sup>

18

**(Küchen)kräuter**

Kochen<sup>1</sup> schmackhaft<sup>2</sup> Schnitt-  
lauch<sup>3</sup> Petersilie<sup>4</sup> Basilikum<sup>5</sup> Fen-  
chel<sup>6</sup> Thymian<sup>7</sup> Salbei<sup>8</sup> Rosmarin<sup>9</sup>  
Minze<sup>10</sup> Kamille<sup>11</sup> krautartig, Kräu-  
ter-; Kräuterbuch<sup>12</sup> Herbarium,  
Kräutersammlung<sup>13</sup> Kräutersamm-  
ler, -dokter<sup>14</sup> pflanzliche Hausmit-  
tel<sup>15</sup> ansetzen<sup>16</sup> Kräutertee<sup>17</sup>  
pflanzliche Drogen, Heilkräuter<sup>18</sup>

19

**spices** [spaisɪz] *n usu pl*

intensely aromatic vegetable substances used for seasoning food, e.g. **mustard**<sup>1</sup> [Δ], **garlic**<sup>2</sup>, **cinnamon**<sup>3</sup>, **ginger**<sup>4</sup> [dʒ], **cloves**<sup>5</sup> [ou], **nutmeg**<sup>6</sup>, cayenne pepper, **chili powder**<sup>7</sup>, curry, etc.

**spicy**<sup>8</sup> *adj* • **spice (up)**<sup>9</sup> *v*

» *The veal was spiced with black pepper. Rely on a mild and **bland diet**<sup>10</sup> and avoid **spicy food**.*

Use **hot and spicy**<sup>11</sup> • **to cut down on spicy dishes**<sup>12</sup>

**food substitute** or **replacer** *n* *rel* **food exchange list**<sup>1</sup> *n*

foods similar in nutritive value and/or taste that are used to replace foodstuffs a person must strictly **avoid**<sup>2</sup>

**substitute**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **substitution**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **replace**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **replacement**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» *Substitution with any food low in **saturated fat** such as **bran**<sup>5</sup> or nuts will have positive effects.*

Use fat / meat / coffee / **milk**<sup>6</sup> **substitute** • **substitution** of margarine for butter

**nutritional supplement** *n term* *rel* **food additives**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

enrichment of foods with **nutrients**<sup>2</sup> such as vitamins to improve dietary intake according to specific needs

**supplement**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **supplementary**, -al<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **additional**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» *The first dietary **measure** [εɜ] is a low-fat diet supplemented with medium-chain triglycerides [aɪ]. Claims that **dyes**<sup>6</sup> [daɪz], **emulsifiers**<sup>7</sup>, **stabilizers**<sup>8</sup>, and other food additives may contribute to hyperactivity in children are controversial.*

Use diet(ary) / (multi)vitamin / mineral / calcium / **iron**<sup>9</sup> / daily **high fiber**<sup>10</sup> / weight-loss **supplement** • iron-**supplemented** • **dietary bulk**<sup>10</sup> **additive** • **additive-free baby food**<sup>11</sup>

**cooked** *adj* *opposite* **raw**<sup>1</sup> [rɔː], **uncooked**<sup>1</sup> *adj*

food prepared for consumption by heating; it can be **baked**<sup>2</sup> (dry oven heat), **boiled**<sup>3</sup> (in hot water) **fried**<sup>4</sup> (in hot oil), **steamed**<sup>5</sup> [iː] (in water vapor [εɪ]), **stewed**<sup>6</sup> [stɜːd], **roasted**<sup>7</sup>, **broiled**<sup>8</sup> or barbecued (abbr BBQ)

(pre/ over/ pressure)-**cook**<sup>9</sup> *v* • **cooking** *n* • **cookery** *n* • **cookbook** *n*

» *Do you want your chicken roasted, fried or with **stuffing**<sup>10</sup>?*

**beverage** [bɛvɔːɪdʒ] *n* *syn* **drinks** *n usu pl*

any liquid suitable for drinking including mineral water, **fruit juice**<sup>1</sup>, tea, **carbonated**<sup>2</sup> and alcoholic drinks

**drink** - drank - drunk *v irr* • **drinkable**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **drinking**<sup>4</sup> *adj & n* • **drinker**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» *How much do you ordinarily drink? Did you have any artificially sweetened beverages? He is a **heavy drinker**<sup>6</sup>.*

Use carbonated / alcoholic **beverages** • **to have a drink**<sup>7</sup> • hard / long / soft<sup>8</sup> **drinks** • **drinking water**<sup>9</sup> / soda / age / **bout**<sup>10</sup> [au] • beer / wine / tea / **social**<sup>11</sup> **drinker**

**Note:** Both in colloquial and clinical situations *drink*, *drinking* and *drinker* are frequently used to refer to alcohol intake (esp when not further specified).

**juice** [dʒuːs] *n*

(i) liquid that can be extracted from fruit and vegetables (ii) body fluid, e.g. **gastric juice**<sup>1</sup>

**juicy**<sup>2</sup> *adj*

» ***Pour** [ɔː] some **lemon juice**<sup>3</sup> over the **cutlet**<sup>4</sup> [Δ]. Is your steak **juicy**?*

Use orange / grapefruit / apple / tomato [εɪ] **juice** • **juice bar**

**cafein(e)** [kæfiːn] *n*

bitter alkaloid contained in coffee, **cocoa**<sup>1</sup> [kɒkəʊ], and tea that is responsible for their stimulating effects

**caffeinism**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **caffea**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **café**<sup>4</sup> [kæfɛ] *n* • (**de**)**caffeinated**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» *A few cups of coffee can significantly disturb sleep in some patients.*

Use **caffeine withdrawal**<sup>6</sup> [dɪːl] • **ground**<sup>7</sup> [au] **coffee** • **coffee bean**<sup>8</sup> • black / green / iced **tea**

**Gewürze**

Senf<sup>1</sup> Knoblauch<sup>2</sup> Zimt<sup>3</sup> Ingwer<sup>4</sup>  
Gewürznelken<sup>5</sup> Muskat<sup>6</sup> Chilipulver<sup>7</sup>  
würzig<sup>8</sup> (pikant) würcen<sup>9</sup>  
blande/ reizarme Diät<sup>10</sup> scharf gewürzt<sup>11</sup>  
Konsum stark gewürzter Speisen reduzieren<sup>12</sup> 20

**Nahrungsmittlersatz(stoff)**

Nährwert-, Lebensmitteltabelle<sup>1</sup>  
meiden<sup>2</sup> ersetzen<sup>3</sup> Ersatz, Substitution<sup>4</sup>  
Kleie<sup>5</sup> Milchersatz<sup>6</sup> 21

**Nährstoffanreicherung**

Lebensmittelzusatzstoffe, Additive<sup>1</sup>  
Nährstoffe<sup>2</sup> ergänzen<sup>3</sup> ergänzend<sup>4</sup>  
zusätzlich<sup>5</sup> Lebensmittelfarbstoffe<sup>6</sup>  
Emulgatoren<sup>7</sup> Stabilisatoren<sup>8</sup> Eisenanreicherung<sup>9</sup>  
Ballaststoffanreicherung<sup>10</sup> Zusatzstofffreie  
Kinder-nahrung<sup>11</sup> 22

**gekocht**

roh, ungekocht<sup>1</sup> gebacken<sup>2</sup> gekocht,  
-sotten<sup>3</sup> gebraten<sup>4</sup> gedünstet<sup>5</sup>  
gedünstet, -schmort<sup>6</sup> geröstet<sup>7</sup>  
gegrillt<sup>8</sup> (vor-/ ver-/ mit Dampf)  
kochen<sup>9</sup> Füllung<sup>10</sup> 23

**Getränk**

Fruchtsaft<sup>1</sup> kohlenstoffhaltig<sup>2</sup>  
trinkbar<sup>3</sup> Trink-; (Be)trinken<sup>4</sup> Trinker(in)<sup>5</sup>  
Alkoholiker(in), Säufer(in)<sup>6</sup>  
etwas trinken<sup>7</sup> alkoholfreie G.<sup>8</sup>  
Trinkwasser<sup>9</sup> Trinkgelage, Zeche-  
rei<sup>10</sup> Gesellschaftstrinker(in)<sup>11</sup> 24

**(i, ii) Saft**

Magensaft<sup>1</sup> saftig<sup>2</sup> Zitronensaft<sup>3</sup>  
Schnitzel<sup>4</sup> 25

**Koffein**

Kakao<sup>1</sup> Koffeinvergiftung<sup>2</sup> Kaffee-  
strauch<sup>3</sup> Kaffeehaus<sup>4</sup> koffeinhaltig;  
-frei<sup>5</sup> Koffeinentzug<sup>6</sup> gemahlener  
Kaffee<sup>7</sup> Kaffeebohne<sup>8</sup> 26

**alcoholic drinks** *n* *sim* **brew(age)**<sup>1</sup> [brʊːɪdʒ] *n*, **booze**<sup>2</sup> [buːz] *n inf*

fermented brew or distilled alcohol-containing drinks, e.g. beer, wine, **cider**<sup>3</sup> [saɪdə], etc.

**alcohol** *n* • **alcoholic**<sup>4</sup> *adj* & *n* • **alcoholism**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» *Alcohol consumption also raises [eɪ] the blood pressure. He's been an alcoholic for years.*

Use **alcoholic excess**<sup>6</sup> / patient • **alcohol ingestion or consumption**<sup>7</sup> / **abuse**<sup>8</sup> / **-dependent**<sup>9</sup> • **Alcoholics Anonymous**<sup>10</sup>

**liquor** [lɪkə] *n* *syn* **spirits** *n pl BE*

**hard (alcoholic) drinks**<sup>1</sup> which are **distilled**<sup>2</sup> rather than **fermented**<sup>3</sup>, e.g. whiskey, brandy, gin

» *Heavy users of hard liquor and wine account for<sup>4</sup> 40% of cases of pancreatitis [aɪtɪs].*  
Use **liquor store**<sup>5</sup> • **to drown in**<sup>6</sup> [au] / **intoxicating**<sup>7</sup> / bottles of **liquor**

**Note:** In medical English **liquor** is practically never used to refer to body fluids, e.g. the amniotic or the **cerebrospinal** [aɪ] **fluid**<sup>8</sup>.

**alkoholische Getränke**

Gebräu<sup>1</sup> Alkohol, Schnaps<sup>2</sup> Apfelwein, Most<sup>3</sup> alkoholisch, -haltig; Alkoholiker(in)<sup>4</sup> Alkoholabhängigkeit, Alkoholismus<sup>5</sup> Alkoholexzess<sup>6</sup> Alkoholkonsum<sup>7</sup> Alkoholmissbrauch<sup>8</sup> alkoholabhängig<sup>9</sup> Anonyme Alkoholiker<sup>10</sup> 27

**Spirituosen**

harte Getränke<sup>1</sup> gebrannt<sup>2</sup> vergoren<sup>3</sup> ausmachen<sup>4</sup> Spirituosengeschäft<sup>5</sup> (Sorgen) im A. ertränken<sup>6</sup> berauschendes Getränk<sup>7</sup> Zerebrospinalflüssigkeit, Liquor (cerebrospinalis)<sup>8</sup> 28

## Unit 4 Illness & Recovery

Related Units: **1** Health & Fitness, **89** General Pathology, **102** History Taking, **119** Etiology, Course & Prognosis, **77** Mental Health, **94** Infectious Diseases, **104** Pain, **134** Perioperative Care, **142** Physical Therapy & Rehabilitation

**sick** *adj* → U103-11 *syn* **ill** *adj*, *sim* **unwell**<sup>1</sup>, **not well**<sup>2</sup>, **unhealthy**<sup>3</sup> [e] *adj*

(i) not feeling well or in poor physical or mental health

(ii) to feel nauseated [aɪ] and about to vomit (BE)

**illness**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **sickness**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **-sick comb** • **sickening**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **sickly**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

» *She is rather pale—is she sick? She's ill with measles [iː]. He is too sick to care for himself. I'm beginning to feel sick to my stomach<sup>7</sup> [k]. If you don't feel well, you should stay in bed. There's too little time being spent treating the ill. Have you had any major [eɪdʒ] illnesses<sup>8</sup>?*

Use **to fall or get**<sup>9</sup>/become or be taken<sup>9</sup>/be/feel **ill** • **air/ brain**<sup>10</sup>/ **carsick** • **morning/ x-ray sickness** • **sickness benefit**<sup>11</sup> / **leave**<sup>12</sup> • **sick-pay**<sup>11</sup> / **bed/ room/ leave**<sup>12</sup> /-list • **acutely/ seriously** [ɪə] / **mentally/ chronically/ critically/ terminally**<sup>13</sup> [aɪ] **ill** • **sudden/ mild/ severe/ life-threatening** [eɪ] / **pre-existing**<sup>14</sup> **illness** • **acquired**<sup>15</sup> [aɪ] / **physical** [ɪ] / **psychiatric** [saɪk-] **illness** • **systemic/ viral**<sup>16</sup> [aɪ] / **febrile illness** • **prolonged/ associated/ (in)curable/ fatal**<sup>17</sup> [eɪ] **illness** • **sickly child**<sup>18</sup> • **unhealthy** food

**Note:** In BE **to be/feel sick** refers to vomiting while **feel ill** means to be coming down with an illness; **ill** is rarely used before a noun—except **ill (=bad) effects** or **ill health**<sup>19</sup>.

**catch** - caught - caught *v irr inf* *syn* **get, pick up** *v inf*, **contract** *v* → U94-2f

to get a disease, esp. an **easily transmitted**<sup>1</sup> one such as an infection

» *Did you catch a cold<sup>2</sup>? Where did she pick up that bug<sup>3</sup>? He contracted an infection when swimming in the polluted<sup>4</sup> water. You can get all kinds of illnesses if you take a swim here.*

Use **to catch** measles / **the flu**<sup>5</sup> • **to contract** an illness / **gonorrhoea**<sup>6</sup> [rɪə] • **to contract** an upper respiratory infection / tuberculosis / HIV infection

**suffer (from)** [ʌ] *v* *sim* **sustain**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ], **endure**<sup>2</sup> [ɪndjʊə] *v clin*, **go through**<sup>3</sup> *v*

(i) to have a disease (ii) to be affected or afflicted by harmful events, influences, disease, etc.

**suffering**<sup>4</sup> *n clin* • **sufferer**<sup>5</sup> *n clin* & *jar* → U104-2

» *He is suffering from high blood pressure. I suffered a mild attack of epilepsy. She sustained a neck injury when diving into shallow water<sup>6</sup>. She's been going through a spell<sup>7</sup> of ill health.*

Use **to suffer from** an illness / late complications / **malnutrition**<sup>8</sup> [uː] • **to suffer from** dehydration [aɪ] / **heat stroke**<sup>9</sup> [oʊ] • **to sustain a** burn [ɜː] / fracture / **stroke**<sup>10</sup> / heart [ɑː] attack • **chronic tinnitus/ hay** [eɪ] **fever**<sup>11</sup> [iː] / **diabetes**<sup>12</sup> [iː] **sufferer** • **burden** [ɜː] of<sup>13</sup> / **unbearable**<sup>14</sup> [eə] **suffering** • **to endure** pain

(i) krank

(ii) **übel sein, erbrechen**

unwohl<sup>1</sup> nicht gesund<sup>2</sup> nicht gesund, schädlich, ungesund<sup>3</sup> Krankheit, Erkrankung<sup>4</sup> ekelerregend, abscheulich<sup>5</sup> kränklich<sup>6</sup> übel sein<sup>7</sup> schwere Krankheiten<sup>8</sup> krank werden<sup>9</sup> geisteskrank, verrückt<sup>10</sup> Krankengeld<sup>11</sup> Krankenurlaub, Krankenstand (öst.)<sup>12</sup> im Endstadium<sup>13</sup> Vorerkrankung<sup>14</sup> erworbene Krankheit<sup>15</sup> Viruserkrankung<sup>16</sup> tödlich. Krankheit<sup>17</sup> kränkliches Kind<sup>18</sup> schlechter Gesundheitszustand, Kränkeln<sup>19</sup>

1

**bekommen, sich zuziehen**

ansteckend<sup>1</sup> sich erkälten<sup>2</sup> Bazillus<sup>3</sup> verseucht<sup>4</sup> die Grippe bekommen<sup>5</sup> sich e. Gonorrhö/ Tripper zuziehen<sup>6</sup>

2

**erleiden, leiden an/ unter**

erleiden, davontragen<sup>1</sup> erleiden, ertragen, aushalten<sup>2</sup> durchmachen<sup>3</sup> Leid(en)<sup>4</sup> Leidende(r)<sup>5</sup> seichtes Wasser<sup>6</sup> Phase<sup>7</sup> an Unterernährung leiden<sup>8</sup> einen Hitzschlag erleiden<sup>9</sup> einen Schlaganfall erleiden<sup>10</sup> Heuschneppenpatient(in)<sup>11</sup> Diabetiker(in)<sup>12</sup> Leidensdruck<sup>13</sup> unerträgliches Leiden<sup>14</sup>

3



**disease** [dɪzɪːz] *n* *syn* **disorder** *n*, *sim* **condition**<sup>1</sup> *n*, **dysfunction**<sup>2</sup> [ɪ] *n term*

specific impairment [ɛə] of health or disturbance [ɜ:] of normal function [ʌ]

**diseased**<sup>3</sup> *adj term* • **disordered**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **disease-free**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **dysfunctional** *adj*

» *He suffers from a rare heart condition. Does he have a medical condition that could account [aʊ] for the fatigue*<sup>6</sup> [fəˈtɪːɡ]? *Patients with associated conditions*<sup>7</sup> may benefit from<sup>8</sup> this mode of therapy.

Use **to eradicate**<sup>9</sup> **a disease** • heart / lung / viral [aɪ] **disease** • **crippling**<sup>10</sup> / advanced / rare **disease** • progressive / no evidence of (abbr NED) **disease** • systemic / underlying<sup>11</sup> / predisposing **condition** • in a critical **condition** • **diseased** organ / area • mental / **behavior**<sup>12</sup> [eɪ] / **affective**<sup>13</sup> / attention deficit **disorder** • auto-nomic / (borderline/ **antisocial**) **personality**<sup>14</sup> / emotional **disorder** • organic / functional / psychosomatic [saɪkə-] **disorder** • congenital [dʒeɪ] / **anxiety**<sup>15</sup> [aɪ] **disorder** • panic / posttraumatic stress **disorder** • **eating**<sup>16</sup> / substance abuse **disorder** • multiorgan / motor / endocrine / **erectile**<sup>17</sup> **dysfunction** • **dysfunctional** uterine bleeding (abbr DUB) / **labor**<sup>18</sup> [eɪ] • **dysfunctional** state / sphincter / voiding<sup>19</sup>

**Note:** While **illness** is a broad term for any health problem, **disease** is used with distinct pathologic entities and **condition** preferably with chronic or multiple disorders.

**ailment** [eɪlmənt] *n clin usu pl* *syn* **malady** [mælədi] *n inf*

*rel* **malaise**<sup>1</sup> [məˈleɪz] *n term* → U103-7, **a touch of**<sup>2</sup> [tʌtʃ] *phr inf*

chronic complaints [eɪ] which are not very serious, esp. very common ones such as a cold

**ailing**<sup>3</sup> [aɪlɪŋ] *adj inf* • **ail**<sup>4</sup> *vt & vi*

» *She has a long history of vague medical ailments. What's been ailing you, Mrs Brown? He'd been ailing for months before he died. It is just a touch of indigestion*<sup>5</sup>—nothing serious.

Use **job-related**<sup>6</sup> / physical **ailments** • **ailing** father • **childhood**<sup>7</sup> / chronic **maladies**

**Note:** Clinical and informal expressions referring to being slightly ill include: **not being/feeling yourself**, **to feel run down**, **to be off colour** (BE), **to be or feel under the weather**<sup>8</sup>, **be out of sorts**<sup>8</sup>, **to be/feel indisposed**. **Malady** is mostly used figuratively for a social or structural problem, while **malaise** is a symptom.

**bedridden** *adj* *syn* **bedfast** *adj*, **laid** [eɪ] **up**, **be down with** *v phr inf*,

*rel* **prostration**<sup>1</sup> [prɒːstreɪʃən] *n term*

severely affected by an illness that you are **confined** [aɪ] **to bed**<sup>2</sup>, unable to get up and do anything

**prostrate**<sup>3</sup> [prɒːstreɪt] *v term* • **prostrating** *adj* • **bed rest**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» *Pressure sores*<sup>5</sup> generally occur [ɜ:] in patients who are bedridden and unable or unwilling to change position. She was acutely ill, appeared **exhausted** [ɪks-] and **prostrated**<sup>6</sup>. The skin reaction may be accompanied by fever, **malaise** and even **prostration**, but this is very rare. She's laid up with acute rheumatism [rɪ-]. **Bedfast**, **paralyzed** and **morbund**<sup>7</sup> [-bʌnd] patients who are candidates for **decubiti**<sup>5</sup> [aɪ] must be turned frequently.

Use **bedridden** elderly patients • **heat**<sup>8</sup> / extreme / severe **prostration** • **prostrating** headaches [k/] pain • **to order strict**<sup>9</sup>/require/institute/be at/place at/keep at **bed rest**

**infirmary** [ɪnfɜːrmətɪ] *n clin* *syn* **feebleness** [fiːblnəs] *n inf*

being weak, frail<sup>1</sup> [eɪ], or bedridden, esp. used for referring to elderly people

**infirm**<sup>1</sup> *adj term* • **feeble**<sup>1</sup> *adj* • **infirmity**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **feeble-minded**<sup>3</sup> *adj pej*

» *Elderly people tend to ignore their infirmities. Her aging infirm husband was moved to a retirement facility*<sup>4</sup>. *Heat stroke*<sup>5</sup> may occur in the elderly, infirm or susceptible<sup>6</sup> [sʌse-] individuals in the absence of unusual exposure [oʊz] to heat. Her hand moved feebly across the desk.

Use chronically **infirm** • **feeble** old man / **pulse**<sup>7</sup> [ʌ] / **urinary stream**<sup>8</sup> [i:]

## Krankheit, Erkrankung, Störung

Krankheit, Leiden; Zustand, Befinden<sup>1</sup> Funktionsstörung, Dysfunktion<sup>2</sup> krank, erkrankt, befallen<sup>3</sup> krank, gestört<sup>4</sup> rezidivfrei<sup>5</sup> Müdigkeit<sup>6</sup> Begleiterkrankungen, Komorbidität<sup>7</sup> profitieren von<sup>8</sup> eine Krankheit ausrotten<sup>9</sup> zur Invaliderkrankung, -leiden<sup>11</sup> Verhaltensstörung<sup>12</sup> Affektstörung<sup>13</sup> dissoziale Persönlichkeitsstörung<sup>14</sup> Angstneurose<sup>15</sup> Essstörung<sup>16</sup> Erektionsstörung, erektiler Impotenz<sup>17</sup> Dystokie<sup>18</sup> Miktionsstörung<sup>19</sup>

4

## Krankheit, Leiden

Unpässlichkeit<sup>1</sup> Anflug von, leicht<sup>2</sup> kränklich, leidend<sup>3</sup> plagen, laborieren an; kränkeln<sup>4</sup> leichte Verdauungsstörung<sup>5</sup> Berufskrankheiten<sup>6</sup> Kinderkrankheiten<sup>7</sup> nicht ganz auf der Höhe/ angeschlagen sein<sup>8</sup>

5

## bettläg(e)rig (sein)

Prostration, Erschöpfung, extreme Kraftlosigkeit<sup>1</sup> ans Bett gefesselt, bettläg(e)rig<sup>2</sup> zu Boden werfen<sup>3</sup> Bettruhe<sup>4</sup> Wundliegen, Dekubitus<sup>5</sup> erschöpft und kraftlos<sup>6</sup> im Sterben liegend<sup>7</sup> Hitzeerschöpfung<sup>8</sup> absolute Bettruhe verordnen<sup>9</sup>

6

## Schwäche, Gebrechlichkeit, Gebrechen

schwach, gebrechlich<sup>1</sup> Krankenzimmer; -haus<sup>2</sup> schwachsinnig<sup>3</sup> Altersheim<sup>4</sup> Hitzschlag<sup>5</sup> empfindlich<sup>6</sup> schwacher Puls<sup>7</sup> schwacher (Harn)strahl<sup>8</sup>

7

**disabled** [eɪ] *adj & n* *syn* **handicapped** *adj & n*, *sim* **invalid**<sup>1</sup> *adj & n* → U142-3

person in need of long-term care because (s)he is **incapacitated**<sup>2</sup> [æʃ] by a **chronic** illness

**disability**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **disabling**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **invalidism**<sup>5</sup> *n* *term* • **invalidity**<sup>5</sup> *n* *BE*

» Thousands of workers are disabled by back pain each year. Reintegration and social adjustment [dʒʌ] for the disabled and **disfigured**<sup>6</sup> may be slow. He has been an invalid all his life.

Use **disabled** from birth [ɜː] • **disabling** illness / pain • physically [ɪ] / developmentally **disabled** • partially [ʃ] / **completely or totally**<sup>7</sup> **disabled** • life-long / level of / **learning**<sup>8</sup> **disability** • mental / permanent [ɜː] / **severe**<sup>9</sup> **disability** • **disability benefit or pension**<sup>10</sup> • mentally / physically / severely / **multiply**<sup>11</sup> [Δ] **handicapped** • **invalid chair (BE) or wheelchair**<sup>12</sup> / **car**<sup>13</sup>

**Note:** In modern usage the terms **disabled** and **handicapped** are considered politically correct, while **invalid** is dated and considered offensive by many handicapped people.

**malingering** [mælɪŋdʒərɪŋ] *n clin* *rel* **hypochondriac**<sup>1</sup> [haɪpɒkəndrɪæk] *n*

person who tends to avoid responsibilities or duties, e.g. by pretending to be ill

**malingering**<sup>2</sup> *v* *term* • **malingering** *n & adj* • **hypochondriac(al)**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» Malingerers consciously seek a real or imagined gain [eɪ] from their illness<sup>4</sup>. Her family doctor<sup>5</sup> thought she was malingering. Hypochondriacs are **preoccupied with**<sup>6</sup> a fear of **serious** [ɪə] illness.

Use **hypochondriac** patient / beliefs / **delusion**<sup>7</sup> [uːʒ] / preoccupation

**affect** [əfekt] *v* *syn* **involve** [Dː], **afflict** *v*

to influence in a negative way or cause pain, suffering and/or disease

**affliction**<sup>1</sup> [əflɪkʃən] *n* • **(un)involved** *adj* • **involvement**<sup>2</sup> *n*

» The right kidney was not affected. In most patients the affliction is short-lived. Boys are afflicted twice as commonly as girls. Large areas of the **spinal** [aɪ] **cord**<sup>3</sup> were involved.

Use **affected** side / area / parts • **(un)involved** side / **nodes**<sup>4</sup> [oʊ] / joints [dʒ] / ear / **by tumor**<sup>5</sup> • local / extensive / systemic / **renal**<sup>6</sup> [ɪɪ] / liver **involvement** • vascular / lymph [ɪmf] **node or nodal**<sup>7</sup> **involvement** • **afflicted** joint • chronic / debilitating / life-long / hip **affliction** • **afflictions of old age**<sup>8</sup> / **aging**<sup>8</sup> [eɪdʒɪŋ]

**impaired** [ɪmpeəd] *adj* → U142-3 *syn* **compromised** [-aɪzd] *adj* *term & clin*

made worse, weaker or less effective, inefficient [ɪ] or reduced in function

**impairment**<sup>1</sup> *n* • **impair** *v* • **unimpaired**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **compromise**<sup>3</sup> *v & n*

» **Offtaction**<sup>4</sup> [æ] and taste are impaired in smokers. About 20% of patients with lung involvement suffer irreversible lung impairment. There was **transient impairment of consciousness and confusion**. Almost any **pathogen** can cause **pneumonia** [n(j)uː-] in a **compromised host** [oʊ].

Use **impaired** sensation / function / **ability to swallow**<sup>5</sup> [Dː] • mentally / mildly / severely **impaired** • visual [ɪʒ] / speech [tʃ] / **hearing**<sup>6</sup> / cognitive **impairment** • **impairment of consciousness**<sup>7</sup> [ʃ] / memory / liver function • **(non)immunocompromised**<sup>8</sup> • **(life-threatening) hemodynamic**<sup>9</sup> [aɪ] / cardiovascular **compromise** • respiratory / neurologic [uə] **compromise**

**deteriorate** *vi* *syn* **worsen** [ɜː] *vi/vt inf*, **decline** [dɪklaɪn] *vi*, *rel* **aggravate**<sup>1</sup> *vt*

to get progressively worse (symptoms, the patient's status/ condition)

**deterioration**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **aggravation**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **decline**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **worse**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **worsening**<sup>5</sup> *n & adj*

» His health is **steadily** [e] **deteriorating**. I'm afraid **he's worse**<sup>6</sup> today. Her condition **worsened overnight**. There was sudden **deterioration of vision** [ɪʒ]. Voluntary activity **declined due to weakness and fatigue**. The pain is **aggravated by shoulder motion** [oʊ]. **Dairy** [eə] **products**<sup>7</sup> may **aggravate diarrhea** [daɪərɪə].

Use sudden / **progressive**<sup>8</sup> / clinical / neurologic / cerebral / **mental**<sup>9</sup> **deterioration** • **to worsen** symptoms [ɪ] / **the condition**<sup>10</sup> / quickly / by day • steady / rapid / **gradual** / **intellectual**<sup>9</sup> / functional **decline** • **to aggravate** acne [æknɪ] / a disorder • **aggravating** factors • to make/be/become **worse** • to make things / **transiently**<sup>11</sup> / progressively **worse** • **clinical**<sup>12</sup> / radiographic / neurologic / **marked**<sup>13</sup> **worsening** • **worsening** asthma [æzmə] / **clinical status**<sup>12</sup> / of joint pain

**behindert; Behinderte**

erwerbsunfähig, invalide; Invalide(r)<sup>1</sup> behindert, arbeitsunfähig<sup>2</sup> Behinderung, Invalidität<sup>3</sup> funktionell beeinträchtigend, behindernd<sup>4</sup> Erwerbsunfähigkeit, Invalidität<sup>5</sup> entstellte Menschen<sup>6</sup> vollinvalide<sup>7</sup> Lernschwäche<sup>8</sup> schwere Behinderung<sup>9</sup> Invalidenrente<sup>10</sup> mehrfach behindert<sup>11</sup> Rollstuhl<sup>12</sup> Behindertenfahrzeug<sup>13</sup>

8

**Simulant(in)**

Hypochonder, eingebilddete(r) Kranke(r)<sup>1</sup> sich krank stellen, simulieren<sup>2</sup> hypochondrisch<sup>3</sup> Krankheitsgewinn<sup>4</sup> Hausarzt<sup>5</sup> besessen von<sup>6</sup> hypochondrischer Wahn<sup>7</sup>

9

**schädigen, betreffen, befallen**

Leiden, Beschwerden<sup>1</sup> Befall, Beteiligung<sup>2</sup> Rückenmark<sup>3</sup> befallene Lymphknoten<sup>4</sup> tumorbefallen<sup>5</sup> Mitbeteiligung d. Niere<sup>6</sup> Lymphknotenbeteiligung, -befall<sup>7</sup> Altersbeschwerden<sup>8</sup>

10

**beeinträchtigt, gestört**

Beeinträchtigung, Störung, Schädigung<sup>1</sup> ungestört, intakt<sup>2</sup> gefährden; Gesundheitsgefährdung, akute Komplikation / Krise<sup>3</sup> Geruchssinn<sup>4</sup> Schluckstörung<sup>5</sup> Schwerhörigkeit<sup>6</sup> Bewusstseinsstörung<sup>7</sup> immungeschwächt<sup>8</sup> hämodynamische Komplikation<sup>9</sup>

11

**sich verschlechtern – sich verschlimmern**

etw. verschlimmern<sup>1</sup> Verschlechterung, Verschlimmerung<sup>2</sup> Verschlechterung, Verfall; Abnahme<sup>3</sup> schlechter<sup>4</sup> Verschlechterung; fortschreitend, progredient<sup>5</sup> es geht ihm schlechter<sup>6</sup> Milchprodukte<sup>7</sup> zunehmende Verschlechterung<sup>8</sup> geistiger Verfall<sup>9</sup> den Gesundheitszustand verschlechtern<sup>10</sup> vorübergehend schlechter<sup>11</sup> Verschlechterung d. klin. Status<sup>12</sup> deutl. Verschlechterung<sup>13</sup>

12

**improve** [u:] v *syn* **ameliorate** [əmi:ljəreɪt] v, **sim** **alleviate**<sup>1</sup> [i:], **mitigate**<sup>1</sup> v

- (i) to get better after an illness  
(ii) to cause symptoms or a condition to get better (e.g. by therapy)

**improvement**<sup>2</sup> n *clin* • **amelioration**<sup>2</sup> n • **alleviation**<sup>3</sup> n • **mitigation**<sup>3</sup> n

» His condition has improved markedly. The drug did not seem to improve symptoms. Treatment is directed toward alleviating renal insufficiency [ɪʃ]. This will improve perfusion and ameliorate some of his rest pain<sup>4</sup>. Overall, improvement in symptoms was quite dramatic.

Use **to improve** skin function / blood flow / outcome • **to improve with age**<sup>5</sup> / over time / with exercise • **to ameliorate** behavior problems / pruritus [a:] signs • **to alleviate** symptoms / pain<sup>6</sup> / headache [hedeɪk] • **to alleviate anxiety**<sup>7</sup> [a:] / spasm / heartburn [hɑ:rtbɜ:rn] • **to show no**<sup>8</sup> **improvement** • gradual / little<sup>9</sup> / partial / marked or definite<sup>10</sup> **improvement** • clinical / subjective / signs of<sup>11</sup> **improvement** • symptomatic / dramatic **alleviation** • **alleviation of** symptoms / pain<sup>12</sup>

**subside** [a:] vi → U140-4 *syn* **abate** [e:], **fade** [e:] vi, *rel* **revert**<sup>1</sup>, **reverse**<sup>1</sup> [ɜ:] vt

to lessen, become less pronounced [a:] or return to normal<sup>2</sup> (e.g. signs of shock, fever [i:])

**subsidence**<sup>3</sup> n *clin* • **abatement**<sup>3</sup> n • **reversal**<sup>4</sup> n • (ir)**reversible** adj

» Her swelling has subsided completely without residual discomfort<sup>5</sup>. Nausea [ɜ:] and vomiting usually disappear as the cramps in the lower abdomen subside. Continue treatment until the resulting intense anxiety abates. Spontaneous [e:] reversal occurs slowly, over many weeks. Failure of the fever to subside indicates inadequate drainage [-ɪdʒ].

Use **to subside gradually**<sup>6</sup> [ædʒ] / promptly / rapidly / without sequelae<sup>7</sup> [sɪkwɛli:] / within 2 days • **to revert to(ward) normal**<sup>2</sup> / spontaneously • **to abate** with remission • **to reverse** a process / a deficit<sup>8</sup> / drug effects / a chemical injury / the catabolic state • **temporary**<sup>9</sup> **subsidence** • **reversible** disease / impairment / ischemia [ɪskɪ:mɪə]

**resolve** [rɪzɒl:v] vi *syn* **settle (down)** v,

*sim* **disappear**<sup>1</sup> [-ɪə], **go away**<sup>1</sup> v *phr* *clin*

to lessen and return to normal (e.g. a swelling, eruption [ɪ], etc.)

**resolution**<sup>2</sup> [u:] n *term* • **unresolved** adj • **disappearance**<sup>2</sup> n

» The abscess resolved with antibiotic therapy alone. Most cases resolve in 4-6 weeks with conservative management. This rash<sup>3</sup> has settled down nicely. Extrapyramidal syndromes increase with anxiety, wax and wane<sup>4</sup> [e:], and disappear with sleep. The fever went away for more than 24 hours and then returned. You can rest assured that this numbness<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] will settle spontaneously [e:].

Use **to resolve spontaneously**<sup>6</sup> / uneventfully / without sequelae / within hours • edema [i:] / palsy<sup>7</sup> [ɜ:] / hematuria / vasospasm<sup>8</sup> [e:] **resolves** • **to settle with rest**<sup>9</sup> / one's nerves / down at night<sup>10</sup> • **resolution of** signs / symptoms<sup>11</sup> / the infection / the edema • **to hasten**<sup>12</sup> [heɪsən] / promote **resolution** • clinical / histologic / partial / full<sup>13</sup> / (in)complete<sup>13</sup> **resolution** • rapid / prompt / spontaneous<sup>14</sup> / eventual<sup>13</sup> / pain **resolution** • **unresolved pneumonia**<sup>15</sup> [n(j)u:-] / **enigma**<sup>16</sup> / uremia [i:] / **conflict**<sup>17</sup> / **issue**<sup>18</sup>

**recover** [rɪkʌvə] v *clin* *syn* **recuperate** [u:], **convalesce** [kɒ:nvəles] v *clin*

*rel* **get over**<sup>1</sup> v *phr*, **overcome**<sup>1</sup> v *inf*

to get better or well again after an illness as the condition improves and symptoms resolve and disappear and the patient returns to normal activities

**recovery**<sup>2</sup> n • **recuperation**<sup>2</sup> n • **convalescence**<sup>2</sup> n • **convalescent**<sup>3</sup> adj & n

» Most children recover from hepatitis without sequelae<sup>4</sup>. The infant is still recovering from birth shock. You badly need some weeks of rest and recuperation. I was just getting over the flu when I caught another bug [ɪ]. Otherwise the patient's convalescence was smooth<sup>5</sup> [u:].

Use **to recover from** shock / frostbite<sup>6</sup> / arthritis [a:] / anesthesia [ɪʒ] / surgery [ɜ:] • **to make a full**<sup>7</sup> / achieve [ətʃi:v] **recovery** • to accelerate or hasten or speed up **recovery** • full or complete<sup>8</sup> / partial<sup>9</sup> **recovery** • early / prompt / good **recovery** • uneventful or uncomplicated / spontaneous<sup>10</sup> / time to<sup>11</sup> **recovery** • **recovery period**<sup>11</sup> / room<sup>12</sup> • **to be on the way to**<sup>13</sup> **recovery** • prolonged / surgical **convalescence** • **convalescent serum**<sup>14</sup> [ɪə] / **period**<sup>11</sup> / **carrier**<sup>15</sup> / care / home<sup>16</sup> • prolonged / surgical **recuperation**

(sich) bessern, besser werden, s. erholen, Fortschritte machen

lindern, (ver)mindern<sup>1</sup> Besserung<sup>2</sup> Linderung, Erleichterung<sup>3</sup> Ruheschmerz<sup>4</sup> sich auswachsen, mit zunehmendem Alter besser werden<sup>5</sup> Schmerz lindern<sup>6</sup> Ängste abbauen / Angst mindern<sup>7</sup> keine Besserung zeigen<sup>8</sup> leichte Besserung<sup>9</sup> deutliche B.<sup>10</sup> Anzeichen einer Besserung<sup>11</sup> Schmerzlinderung<sup>12</sup>

13

nachlassen, abklingen,

(ab)sinken, sich bessern

bessern, normalisieren<sup>1</sup> s. normalisieren<sup>2</sup> Rückgang, Abklingen, Remission<sup>3</sup> (Auf)lösung, Besserung<sup>4</sup> Restbeschwerden<sup>5</sup> allmählich abklingen<sup>6</sup> komplikationslos abklingen<sup>7</sup> einen Mangel beheben<sup>8</sup> vorübergehende Besserung<sup>9</sup>

14

abklingen, sich zurückbilden,

(sich) beruhigen

verschwinden, abklingen<sup>1</sup> Besserung, Rückbildung, Abklingen<sup>2</sup> Ausschlag<sup>3</sup> zu- u. abnehmen<sup>4</sup> Taubheitsgefühl<sup>5</sup> spontan abklingen<sup>6</sup> Lähmung bildet sich zurück<sup>7</sup> Gefäßkrampf löst sich<sup>8</sup> in Ruhe abklingen<sup>9</sup> über Nacht abklingen<sup>10</sup> Abklingen d. Symptome<sup>11</sup> Abheilen / Abklingen beschleunigen<sup>12</sup> vollkommene Rückbildung, Vollremission<sup>13</sup> Spontanremission<sup>14</sup> persistierende Pneumonie<sup>15</sup> ungelöstes Rätsel<sup>16</sup> nicht bewältigter Konflikt<sup>17</sup> ungelöstes Problem<sup>18</sup>

15

genesen, sich erholen

überwinden, überstehen<sup>1</sup> Genesung, Erholung, Rekonvaleszenz<sup>2</sup> genesend; Rekonvaleszent(in)<sup>3</sup> Folgen, Folgeerscheinungen<sup>4</sup> problemlos<sup>5</sup> von Erfrierungen genesen<sup>6</sup> völlig wiederhergestellt sein<sup>7</sup> vollständige Genesung, Restitutio ad integrum<sup>8</sup> Defektheilung<sup>9</sup> Spontanheilung<sup>10</sup> Rekonvaleszenz<sup>11</sup> Aufwachraum<sup>12</sup> auf d. Weg d. Besserung sein<sup>13</sup> Rekonvaleszenzenterium<sup>14</sup> rekonvaleszenter Ausscheider<sup>15</sup> Erholungsheim<sup>16</sup>

16


**Clinical Phrases**

Ever since that accident he's been in a pretty bad way. Seit seinem Unfall geht es ihm gesundheitlich ziemlich schlecht. • **I've not been feeling myself for a while.** Ich bin schon einige Zeit gesundheitlich nicht ganz auf der Höhe. • **I've been feeling under the weather for some days, doctor.** Herr Doktor, ich fühle mich schon ein paar Tage etwas angeschlagen. • **Are you feeling better today?** Geht es Ihnen heute besser? • **Do you feel up to going back to work?** Glauben Sie, dass Sie wieder zur Arbeit gehen können? • **She seems to be on the mend again.** Sie scheint auf dem Weg der Besserung zu sein. • **I've been up and about for two days now.** Seit zwei Tagen bin ich wieder auf den Beinen. • **I wish you a speedy recovery.** Baldige Besserung! • **I suppose the child is sickening for measles.** Das Kind brütet vermutlich die Masern aus. • **Her health has been declining.** Ihr Gesundheitszustand ist zusehends schlechter geworden. • **His progress has suffered a setback.** Er hatte einen Rückfall. • **In the last 48 hours Mrs. Miller has been pursuing a constant downhill course.** Mit Frau M. ging es in den letzten 48 Stunden ständig bergab. • **I hope she'll get well soon.** Ich hoffe, sie ist bald wieder auf den Beinen.

## Unit 5 Injuries

Related Units: 106 Fractures, 104 Pain, 89 General Pathology, 140 Wound Healing, 141 Fracture Management

**injure** [ɪndʒə] *v usu pass* *syn* hurt, wound [u:] *v* → U104-3

to hurt oneself or harm somebody else

**injury**<sup>1</sup> *n* • **(un)injured** / **(un)hurt** *adj* • **the injured**<sup>2</sup> *n*

» **Do not rub or massage** [-ɑ:(d)ʒ] **injured tissues** or **apply ice or heat.** *The injured area should be cleansed* [e] *with soap or antiseptic and sterile dressings*<sup>3</sup> *applied.*

Use **badly** / **seriously** [ɪə:] / **critically** / **fatally**<sup>4</sup> **injured** • **injured** *extremity* / *area* / *head* / *party*<sup>5</sup> / *tissue* / *epithelium* [ɪ] • **to hurt** oneself / one's back

**Note:** Do not confuse *to injure* and *injury* with **insure**<sup>6</sup> [ɪnʃʊə] and **insurance**<sup>7</sup>.

**injury** [ɪndʒəɪ] *n* *syn* trauma [trɔ:mə] *n term*

damage or wound **inflicted**<sup>1</sup> on the body by external forces

**injurious**<sup>2</sup> [ɪndʒʊəriəs] *adj* • **injury-free** *adj*

» **Many patients find even minor injuries** (such as **venipuncture**) **unbearable**<sup>3</sup> [eə]. *Tell me about the circumstances of your injury. Where is your injury? Excess carotene is not injurious.*

Use **to sustain**<sup>4</sup> / **receive** **an injury** • **injury to the breast**<sup>5</sup> [e] / **from exposure to cold**<sup>6</sup> • *site* / *type* / *degree* / *mechanism* [k] / *pattern* **of injury** • *head* / *brain* / **spinal** [aɪ] **cord**<sup>7</sup> / **blast**<sup>8</sup> / **whiplash**<sup>9</sup> / *facial* [feɪʃəl] **injury** • *work(-related)* / *sports* / *thermal* / **cold**<sup>6</sup> / *radiation* / *renal* [ɪ:] / **self-inflicted**<sup>10</sup> / **bodily**<sup>11</sup> **injury** • *superficial* / **blunt**<sup>12</sup> [ʌ] / *closed* / *penetrating* / **needle stick**<sup>13</sup> / **crush(ing)**<sup>14</sup> [ʌ] / **soft tissue**<sup>15</sup> / **impale**<sup>16</sup> [eɪ] **injury** • **injured** *extremity* / *area* / *head* • **injurious** *effect* / **agent**<sup>17</sup>

**wound** [wu:nd] *v & n* *syn* traumatize *v term*, **injure** *v*, *sim* **harm**<sup>1</sup> *v*

(*v*) to cause an injury, esp one that breaks the skin (*n*) injury to the skin or an internal organ caused by violence [aɪ] or a surgical incision

**wounded**<sup>2</sup> *n & adj* • **harm** *n* • **unharm**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» **The wound was dressed with a plain pad**<sup>4</sup> and **bandage.** *It was a simple through-and-through bullet* [u] **wound**<sup>5</sup>. *The wound exudate*<sup>6</sup> *was quite frothy*<sup>7</sup>. *Explore and debride* [ɪ:] *the wound carefully.*

Use **to inflict/cause/approximate**<sup>8</sup> / *clean/cover/dress*<sup>9</sup> / **swab**<sup>10</sup> [p:] / *close* **a wound** • **wound** *healing* / **care**<sup>11</sup> / **cleanser**<sup>12</sup> [e] / *closure* • *deep* / *burn* / *bite* / *flesh* / *open* / *penetrating* **wound** • *gunshot* / **puncture or stab**<sup>13</sup> / *clean* / *contaminated* / **gaping**<sup>14</sup> [eɪ] / *surgical* **wound** • **wound** *cavity* / *abscess* / **discharge**<sup>6</sup> / **margins**<sup>15</sup> [dʒ] / **edges**<sup>15</sup> / *surface* • **to do sb.**<sup>16</sup> / *to come to* / **bodily**<sup>17</sup> **harm**

**(sich) verletzen, verwunden**

Verletzung<sup>1</sup> Verletzte<sup>2</sup> Verband<sup>3</sup>  
tödlich verletzt<sup>4</sup> verletzte Person/  
Partei<sup>5</sup> versichern (lassen)<sup>6</sup> Ver-  
sicherung<sup>7</sup>

1

**Verletzung, Trauma**

zugefügt<sup>1</sup> schädlich<sup>2</sup> unerträglich<sup>3</sup>  
V. erleiden<sup>4</sup> Brustverletzung<sup>5</sup> Er-  
friering<sup>6</sup> Rückenmarkverletzung<sup>7</sup>  
Explosionstrauma<sup>8</sup> Schleudertrau-  
ma<sup>9</sup> Selbstverstümmelung<sup>10</sup> Kör-  
perverletzung<sup>11</sup> stumpfe V.<sup>12</sup> Nadel-  
stichverletzung<sup>13</sup> Quetschung<sup>14</sup>  
Weichteilverletzung<sup>15</sup> Pfählungs-  
verletzung<sup>16</sup> schädliche Sub-  
stanz<sup>17</sup>

2

**verletzen, verwunden;  
Wunde, Verwundung**

verletzen, Schaden zufügen<sup>1</sup> Ver-  
letzte; verwundet<sup>2</sup> unverletzt,  
-versehrt<sup>3</sup> Wundauflage<sup>4</sup> Durch-  
schuss<sup>5</sup> Wundsekret<sup>6</sup> trüb<sup>7</sup> Wund-  
ränder adaptieren<sup>8</sup> W. verbinden<sup>9</sup>  
W. abtupfen<sup>10</sup> Wundversorgung<sup>11</sup>  
Wundreinigungsmittel<sup>12</sup> Stichwun-  
de<sup>13</sup> klaffende W.<sup>14</sup> Wundränder<sup>15</sup>  
jem. Schaden/ e. Verletzung zufü-  
gen<sup>16</sup> Körperverletzung<sup>17</sup>

3

**trauma** [trɔːmə] *n term, pl -s or -ata* *syn* **injury, wound** *n*

physical or psychic [sajkik] injury caused by accidents, violent action, toxic substances, emotional shock, etc.

**traumatic** *adj term* • **traumatize** *v* • **-trauma, trauma(to)-** *comb*

» There was eyelid swelling from blunt trauma to the orbit. The CNS bleeding occurred without evidence of antecedent [si:] trauma or of a specific lesion.

Use **trauma** center / care / index • high risk for **trauma** • **acoustic**<sup>1</sup> [kɔ:] / birth / facial / arterial **trauma** • emotional / **major**<sup>2</sup> [eɪdʒ] / **multiple**<sup>3</sup> **trauma** • a / non / post-**traumatic** • **traumatic death**<sup>4</sup> [e] / in origin / pain / shock / **event**<sup>5</sup> / (brain) injury / sexual experience • **traumatized** zone [zoun] / **patient**<sup>6</sup> • **traumatology** /genic • baro / micro**trauma**

**lesion** [liːʒən] *n term* → U89-3 *sim* **sore**<sup>1</sup> [sɔ:r] *n clin* → U104-11

(i) wound or injury (ii) broad term for all kinds of tissue damage (skin sores<sup>2</sup>, ulcers [ʌls], tumors, etc.)

» If the carious lesion progresses, infection of the dental pulp may occur, causing acute pulpitis [-ajtɪs].

Use **gross**<sup>3</sup> [ou] / deep seated / occult / palpable / nodular / localized / **focal**<sup>4</sup> / irritative / polypoid / **pre-malignant**<sup>5</sup> / necrotic **lesion** • skin<sup>2</sup> / **scalp**<sup>6</sup> / vaginal [dʒ] wall / rib / **solitary**<sup>7</sup> / **recurrent**<sup>8</sup> [ɜ:|Δ] **lesions** • bed or pressure<sup>9</sup> / **running**<sup>10</sup> / oriental / cold<sup>11</sup> **sore**

**cut** *n & v* *sim* **slash**<sup>1</sup>, **slice**<sup>2</sup> [aɪ] *n & v clin*, **incision**<sup>3</sup> *n term* → U126-9

(n) wound made by cutting (v) incise the skin or tissue by accident<sup>4</sup> or intention with a knife [naɪf], scalpel, scissors [sɪzəz], etc.

**cutdown**<sup>5</sup> *n term* → U127-18 • **cut through/ away/ off**<sup>6</sup> *in v phr jar*

» He had a bad cut on his shin<sup>7</sup>. She cut her soles<sup>8</sup> on the broken glass. Cut the umbilical cord<sup>9</sup>.

Use slight / superficial / deep **cut** • **venous**<sup>5</sup> [i:] **cutdown** • **cut edge**<sup>10</sup> / **surface**<sup>11</sup> / section / ends / into slices [aɪ] • **vein** [eɪ] was **cut and ligated**<sup>12</sup> [aɪ] • **to slash one's wrists**<sup>13</sup> [rɪsts]

**laceration** [læsəreɪʃən] *n term* *sim* **tear**<sup>1</sup> [teə] *n clin* → U5-19

(i) a torn external or internal wound with rough [raʃ] margins<sup>2</sup>; not a cut or incision

(ii) the act of lacerating

**lacerated**<sup>3</sup> *adj term* • **lacerate** *v usu pass* • **lacerable** *adj* • **torn** *adj*

» Bleeding from the external ear is most commonly due to<sup>4</sup> local laceration or abrasion. A tear had developed in the intima of the aorta [eɪ].

Use **lacerated** wound / **tendon**<sup>5</sup> • scar from / skin / **pelvic floor**<sup>6</sup> / **puncture**<sup>7</sup> / flap-type **laceration** • **laceration of the** liver / **pleura** [ju] / cervix / **perineum**<sup>8</sup> • **torn** dura / **vessel**<sup>9</sup> • **retinal** / **esophageal** [dʒɪə] **tear**

**abrasion** [əbreɪʒən] *n term* *syn* **graze** [eɪ] *n & v clin*, *sim* **chafe**<sup>1</sup> [tʃeɪf] *v & n*, **excoriation**<sup>2</sup> *n term*

(i) wound caused by scraping [eɪ] the skin against a rough object (ii) pathologic or therapeutic grinding or wearing [eɪ] away<sup>3</sup> of superficial tissue layers, e.g. of tooth substance, skin layers, uterine mucosa, etc.

**abrasive**<sup>4</sup> *adj & n term* • **abrade**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **excoriated** *adj*

» Abrasions such as a skinned knee<sup>6</sup> [ni:] or a floor burn<sup>7</sup> should be washed, a mild antiseptic ointment<sup>8</sup> applied, and covered with sterile gauze<sup>9</sup> [vɜ:].

Use **superficial** [ɪʃ] / facial / scalp / **corneal**<sup>10</sup> / multiple **abrasion** • **abrasions and/or contusions** [ju:] / lacerations • **dermabrasion**

**Trauma, Wunde, seelische Erschütterung**

Schalltrauma<sup>1</sup> schweres T.<sup>2</sup> Polytrauma<sup>3</sup> Unfalltod<sup>4</sup> traumatisches Ereignis<sup>5</sup> Traumapatient(in)<sup>6</sup>

4

**(i) Verletzung****(ii) Läsion, Schädigung, Tumor**

wunde Stelle, Geschwür<sup>1</sup> Hautläsionen<sup>2</sup> makroskopische Läsion<sup>3</sup> Herdläsion<sup>4</sup> Präkanzerose<sup>5</sup> Kopfhautverletzungen<sup>6</sup> Solitirläsionen<sup>7</sup> Rezidive<sup>8</sup> Dekubital-, Druckgeschwür<sup>9</sup> eiternde Wunde<sup>10</sup> Herpes simplex, Fieberbläschen<sup>11</sup>

5

**Schnittwunde, -verletzung; (ein)ab/durch/zer)schneiden**

(langer/ tiefer) Schnitt; aufschlitzen<sup>1</sup> Scheibe; (Scheiben) schneiden<sup>2</sup> (Ein)schnitt, Inzision<sup>3</sup> versehentlich<sup>4</sup> Venae sectio, Venenschnitt<sup>5</sup> ab-, wegschneiden<sup>6</sup> Schienbein<sup>7</sup> Fußsohlen<sup>8</sup> Nabelschnur<sup>9</sup> Schnitttrand<sup>10</sup> Schnittfläche<sup>11</sup> V. wurde ligiert u. durchtrennt<sup>12</sup> s. die Pulsadern aufschneiden<sup>13</sup>

6

**Riss-, Platzwunde; Zerreißung**

(Ein)riss, Ruptur<sup>1</sup> ausgefranste Ränder<sup>2</sup> ein-, aufgerissen, zerfetzt<sup>3</sup> zurückzuführen auf<sup>4</sup> Sehnenriss, -ruptur<sup>5</sup> Beckenbodenriss<sup>6</sup> Stichwunde<sup>7</sup> Dammriss<sup>8</sup> Gefäßruptur<sup>9</sup>

7

**(i) Schürfwunde, Abschürfung, Schramme (ii) Abrieb, Abrasion, Abschabung**

aufscheuern, wundreiben; wundgeriebene Stelle<sup>1</sup> Exkoriation<sup>2</sup> Abtragung<sup>3</sup> abreibend; Schleifmittel<sup>4</sup> abschürfen, -reiben<sup>5</sup> aufgeschürftes Knie<sup>6</sup> Abschürfung durch mechan. Reibung<sup>7</sup> Salbe<sup>8</sup> (Verbands)mull<sup>9</sup> Hornhautabschabung, Abrasio corneae<sup>10</sup>

8

**scratch** [skrætʃ] v & n clin *syn* **scrape** [eɪ] v & n clin

(v) (i) to inflict small **shallow cuts**<sup>1</sup> with a sharp object (ii) scrape or rub oneself with one's fingernails to relieve itching [ɪtʃɪŋ] (n) a small abraded area where the skin is torn or worn off

» The lesions were found along **linear scratch marks**<sup>2</sup>. The **itch**<sup>3</sup> provokes a desire to scratch.

Use **scratch**-type incision / **test**<sup>4</sup> • vigorously [ɪɡ] **scraped** area • skin / tissue / corneal / **uterine**<sup>5</sup> **scrapings** • **iris** [aɪ] **scraped** free • **cat-scratch fever**<sup>6</sup> [ɪ]

**sting** [stɪŋ] - stung - stung v irr & n *sim* **bite**<sup>1</sup> - **bit** - **bitten** v irr & n, **prick**<sup>2</sup> v & n, **puncture**<sup>3</sup> [ʌ] v & n term

(n) wound caused by certain insects (e.g. **hornets**<sup>4</sup>, wasps [ɒː], **fire ants**<sup>5</sup>), plants (e.g. **nettles**<sup>6</sup>, **poison ivy**<sup>7</sup> [aɪvɪ]) and animals (esp marine animals like **jellyfish**<sup>8</sup> [dʒ], **stingrays**<sup>9</sup>, etc.) typically associated with exposure to irritating chemicals or **venoms**<sup>10</sup>

**stinging**<sup>11</sup> adj • **biting** adj • **stinger**<sup>12</sup> n → U91-16 • **punctured** adj term

» Usually the **barbed venomous stinger**<sup>13</sup> can be found in place after a bee sting. The girl was stung by several honeybees. Hospitalize all patients who have been bitten by **poisonous snakes**.

Use **insect** / scorpion **stings** • animal / dog / cat / mosquito / snake / **tick**<sup>14</sup> / **human** / **stork**<sup>15</sup> **bite** • **bite wound**<sup>16</sup> / injury • **flea**<sup>17</sup>- [iː] / **frost**<sup>18</sup>-**bitten** • **biting** sensation / **louse** [aʊ] • **puncture** wound / **site**<sup>19</sup> • needle / **lumbar**<sup>20</sup> [ʌ] / **acupuncture** • **to prick** one's finger • **prick** (skin) **test**<sup>21</sup>

**burn** [bɜːrn] n & v clin *sim* **scald**<sup>1</sup> [skɔːld] v & n clin

(n) injury to tissues resulting from fire, hot liquids, **steam**<sup>2</sup> [iː], acid chemicals, **lightning**<sup>3</sup>, electricity or radiation (v) to cause a lesion by heat exposure or suffer pain from heat

**scalding**<sup>4</sup> adj clin • **sunburn**<sup>5</sup> n • **postburn** adj term

» **Burn scars** are often **unsightly**<sup>6</sup> [saɪt] and total **resolution**<sup>7</sup> is not possible in many cases. The **mainstay** of treatment of any chemical burn is **copious**<sup>8</sup> irrigation with large amounts of **tap water**<sup>9</sup>. Be careful not to scald the anesthetized tissues.

Use minor / major / deep thermal / **1st degree**<sup>10</sup> / contact / **friction**<sup>11</sup> [kʃ] **burns** • **chemical or acid**<sup>12</sup> / electrical / depth of **burn** • **burn** victim / trauma / coma / care • **burned** body surface • **burning** pain / **sensation**<sup>13</sup> / feet / tongue [tʌŋ] / **on urination**<sup>14</sup> • **scald(ing)** burn<sup>1</sup> • **scalded** skin<sup>15</sup>

**frostbite** [frɔːstbaɪt] n clin *sim* **chilblain** [tʃɪlbleɪn] or **(erythema)** [ɪː] **pernio**<sup>1</sup> n term

**blanching**<sup>2</sup>, **paresthesias**<sup>3</sup> [ɪː], edema [ɪdiːmə] and local tissue destruction as a result of exposure to extreme cold

**frostbitten**<sup>4</sup> adj clin • **frostnip**<sup>5</sup> n

» After rewarming the **frostbitten** area becomes **purple** [ɜː], **painful** and **tender**. **Chilblains** are red, **itching**, **blistering**<sup>6</sup> skin lesions without actual freezing of the tissues.

Use deep / superficial / **severe**<sup>7</sup> **frostbite** • **frostbitten** toes / digits [dʒɪ]

**bruise** [bruːz] n & v clin *syn* **contusion** [ʌɪ] n, *sim* **hematoma**<sup>1</sup> [hiːmətəʊmə] n term → U89-26

(n) injury to soft tissues produced by blunt trauma (e.g. a **blow**<sup>2</sup>, kick, or fall) producing a subcutaneous hematoma from ruptured blood vessels

(v) to cause a contusion, e.g. by **bumping** [ʌ] **into**<sup>3</sup> sth.

**bruising**<sup>4</sup> n • **contuse** v • **black eye** or **shiner**<sup>5</sup> [aɪ] n clin

» How did you **bruise** your forearm? She was treated for cuts and bruises. The left kidney is mildly contused. How do you differentiate subdural hematomas from cerebral contusion without hematoma?

Use skin **bruises** • **to be easily**<sup>6</sup> **bruised** • **ecchymosis** [kɪ] and **bruising** • **cerebral**<sup>7</sup> **contusion** • **contusion** of the spinal [aɪ] cord • **contused** wound<sup>8</sup>

**(sich) kratzen, schaben;**

**Kratzer, Schramme**

oberflächliche Schnittverletzungen<sup>1</sup> Kratzspuren<sup>2</sup> Jucken, Juckreiz<sup>3</sup> Skarifikations-, Kratztest<sup>4</sup> Küretagematerial a. d. Uterus<sup>5</sup> Katzenkratzkrankheit<sup>6</sup> 9

**stechen, brennen; (Insekten)stich, Biss, Stachel (BE)**

beißen; Biss<sup>1</sup> (ein-, auf-, durch) stechen; (Ein)stich<sup>2</sup> punktieren, (durch)stechen; Punktion, Einstich<sup>3</sup> Hornissen<sup>4</sup> Feuerameisen<sup>5</sup> (Brenn)nessel<sup>6</sup> Giftefeu<sup>7</sup> Quallen<sup>8</sup> Stachelrochen<sup>9</sup> tierische Gifte<sup>10</sup> stehend, brennend<sup>11</sup> Stachel<sup>12</sup> Giftstachel m. Widerhaken<sup>13</sup> Zeckenbiss<sup>14</sup> Storchenbiss<sup>15</sup> Bisswunde<sup>16</sup> voller Flohbisse<sup>17</sup> erfroren<sup>18</sup> Punktionsstelle<sup>19</sup> Lumbalpunktion<sup>20</sup> Pricktest<sup>21</sup> 10

**Verbrennung, Brandwunde;**

**(sich) verbrennen**

(sich) verbrühen; Verbrühung<sup>1</sup> Dampf<sup>2</sup> Blitzschlag<sup>3</sup> siedend (heiß)<sup>4</sup> Sonnenbrand<sup>5</sup> hässlich, unansehnlich<sup>6</sup> Rückbildung<sup>7</sup> gründlich<sup>8</sup> Leitungswasser<sup>9</sup> V. 1. Grades<sup>10</sup> Verbrennungen durch mech. Reibung<sup>11</sup> Verätzung<sup>12</sup> Brennen, brennendes Gefühl<sup>13</sup> Brennen beim Urinieren<sup>14</sup> verbrühte Haut<sup>15</sup> 11

**Erfrierung, Congelatio**

Frostbeule, Pernio<sup>1</sup> Blässe, Blasswerden<sup>2</sup> Parästhesien, Sensibilitätsstörungen<sup>3</sup> erfroren<sup>4</sup> leichte Erfrierung<sup>5</sup> mit Blasenbildung<sup>6</sup> schwere/ hochgradige Erfrierung<sup>7</sup> 12

**Quetschung, Prellung, Kontusion, Bluterguss; quetschen, s. einen blauen Fleck holen**

Hämatom, Bluterguss<sup>1</sup> Schlag, Stoß<sup>2</sup> stoßen gegen<sup>3</sup> Prellungen, blaue Flecke(n)<sup>4</sup> blaues Auge, Veilchen<sup>5</sup> leicht blaue Flecke(n) bekommen<sup>6</sup> Hirnprellung, Contusio cerebri<sup>7</sup> Quetschwunde<sup>8</sup> 13

**concussion** [kənˈkʌʃ(ə)n] *n clin & term* *syn commotio* [kəˈmoʊʃiə] *n term rare*

- (i) generally, a collision [15] or violent shaking  
(ii) the resulting injury to soft tissues, esp. the brain or retina

**be concussed**<sup>1</sup> *phr term* • **concussive**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **postconcussion** *adj*

» *Concussion affects only mentation*<sup>3</sup>, with return of consciousness moments or minutes after *impact*<sup>4</sup>. *Amnesia*<sup>5</sup> [i:z] after concussion typically follows a few moments of *unresponsiveness*<sup>6</sup>.

Use **concussion of the brain**<sup>7</sup> / **spinal cord**<sup>8</sup> • **to suffer a**<sup>9</sup> / cerebral / cochlear [k] / grade 3 **concussion** • **concussive** effect / blow / (head) injury / state • **postconcussion** headache / **syndrome**<sup>10</sup>

**swelling** *n clin* *sim puffiness*<sup>1</sup> [ʌ] *n clin*, **tumescence**<sup>2</sup>, **edema**<sup>3</sup> [iˈdi:mə] *n term*

abnormal localized enlargement due to **accumulation of fluid**<sup>4</sup> in the tissue  
**swell**<sup>5</sup> - swelled - swollen *v irr* • **puffy**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **edematous**<sup>7</sup> [e] *adj*

» *Is the painful swelling in her breast* [e] *due to bruising? Venous stasis* [e] *may sometimes affect lymphatic vessels, producing a permanent swelling called solid edema*<sup>8</sup>.

Use **swelling subsides**<sup>9</sup> • **swollen** lymph nodes / joints / ankle / nasal mucosa • **acute** / local(ized) / diffuse / **inflammatory**<sup>10</sup> / **marked**<sup>11</sup> / painful or tender **swelling** • facial / soft tissue / ankle / **eyelid**<sup>12</sup> / **cloudy**<sup>13</sup> [au] **swelling** • **puffiness** about the eyes

**sprain** [eɪ] *n & v clin* *sim torsion*<sup>1</sup> [ʃ] *n term*

(n) injury to the **tendons**<sup>2</sup>, **ligaments**<sup>3</sup> and/or capsule around a joint (v) to **twist**<sup>4</sup> a joint  
**torsional**<sup>5</sup> *adj term* • **distort**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **distortion**<sup>7</sup> *n*

» *It was just a sprain, the ligament was not torn and there was no avulsion fracture*<sup>8</sup>. *How did you sprain your ankle?*

Use ankle / foot / knee / **collateral ligament**<sup>9</sup> / (un)stable **sprain** • **sprain fracture**<sup>8</sup> • **sprained ankle**<sup>10</sup> / wrist [rist] • (internal/external) tibial / **testicular**<sup>11</sup> **torsion** • **torsional** movement / **displacement**<sup>12</sup> / stress • outward / medial / radiographic / **mandibular**<sup>13</sup> **distortion** • **distorted face**<sup>14</sup> / anatomy / body image

**Note:** In English medical usage *distortion* and *sprain* are not synonymous.

**strain** [eɪ] *v & n clin* *sim pull*<sup>1</sup> *v*, **sprain**<sup>1</sup> *v & n clin*

(v) to **overstretch**<sup>2</sup> or overexercise a muscle [mʌsəl] or ligament  
(n) damage (usually muscular [kjuː]) resulting from **excessive physical effort**<sup>3</sup>

**straining**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **strenuous**<sup>5</sup> [e] *adj*

» *You must avoid flexing*<sup>6</sup>, *lifting and straining*. *Causes of chronic low back pain may also include back strain due to poor posture*<sup>7</sup> [pɔːstʃə] or *poor conditioning*<sup>8</sup> that is *aggravated*<sup>9</sup> by *mechanical factors* (e.g. *overuse*<sup>10</sup> or *obesity* [iː]).

Use **to strain or pull**<sup>1</sup> **a muscle** • (low) back<sup>11</sup> / muscle<sup>12</sup> / abduction / right heart<sup>13</sup> / emotional<sup>14</sup> **strain** • abdominal<sup>15</sup> **straining**

**hemorrhage** [hɛmərɪdʒ] *n term* *syn bleeding* *n clin*, **bleed** *n jar* → U89-26

internal or external bleeding usually from a ruptured vessel, e.g. prolonged minor **oozing** [uːzɪŋ] of blood<sup>1</sup> from **minute**<sup>2</sup> [maɪnɪt] vessels or acute and massive **extravasation**<sup>3</sup>

**hemorrhagic** *adj term* • **nosebleed**<sup>4</sup> *n clin* • **bleeder**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **bleed** - bled - bled *v irr*

» *In an arterial* [ɪə] *hemorrhage the blood is bright red in color and comes in spurts*<sup>6</sup>. *Use to arrest or stop a*<sup>7</sup> **hemorrhage** • acute / major<sup>8</sup> / brisk<sup>8</sup> / profuse<sup>8</sup> / intracranial / internal<sup>9</sup> **hemorrhage** • petechial [k] / capillary / postextraction / **postpartum**<sup>10</sup> / essential / **concealed**<sup>11</sup> [siː] / **secondary**<sup>12</sup> **hemorrhage** • **hemorrhagic** disease of the newborn<sup>13</sup> / fever

## (Gehirn)erschütterung,

### Commotio

(Gehirn)erschütterung haben<sup>1</sup> erschütternd<sup>2</sup> mentale Funktionen<sup>3</sup> Aufprall, Stoß<sup>4</sup> Amnesie, Erinnerungslücke<sup>5</sup> Nichtansprechbarkeit<sup>6</sup> Commotio cerebri<sup>7</sup> Commotio spinalis, Rückenmarkerschütterung<sup>8</sup> eine Gehirnerschütterung erleiden<sup>9</sup> postkommotionelles Syndrom<sup>10</sup> 14

## (An)Schwellung

Aufgedunsenheit<sup>1</sup> Tumescenz, (diffuse) Anschwellung<sup>2</sup> Ödem<sup>3</sup> Flüssigkeitsansammlung<sup>4</sup> (an)schwellen<sup>5</sup> verschwellen<sup>6</sup> ödematös<sup>7</sup> Myxödem<sup>8</sup> Schwellung klingt ab<sup>9</sup> entzündliche Schwellung<sup>10</sup> starke Schwellung<sup>11</sup> Lidschwellung<sup>12</sup> trübe Schwellung<sup>13</sup>

15

## Verstauchung, Zerrung, Distorsion; zerren, verstauchen, überdehnen

Torsion, (Ver)drehung<sup>1</sup> Sehnen<sup>2</sup> Bänder<sup>3</sup> verdrehen, -stauchen, umknicken<sup>4</sup> Dreh-, Torsions-<sup>5</sup> verdrehen, -zerren<sup>6</sup> Verzerrung<sup>7</sup> Abrissfraktur<sup>8</sup> Seitenbandzerrung<sup>9</sup> verstauchter Knöchel<sup>10</sup> Hodentorsion<sup>11</sup> Drehfehlstellung<sup>12</sup> Unterkieferasymmetrie<sup>13</sup> verzerrtes Gesicht<sup>14</sup>

16

## überdehnen, -lasten, zerrn; Überdehnung, -belastung, Zerrung

(Muskel) zerren<sup>1</sup> überdehnen<sup>2</sup> körperliche Überanstrengung<sup>3</sup> Anstrengung, Belastung<sup>4</sup> anstrenge<sup>5</sup> Beugen, Bücken<sup>6</sup> schlechte Haltung<sup>7</sup> schlechter Trainingszustand<sup>8</sup> verschlechtert<sup>9</sup> Überbelastung, -training<sup>10</sup> überanstrengter/s Rücken/ Kreuz<sup>11</sup> Muskelzerrung<sup>12</sup> Rechtsherzbelastung<sup>13</sup> seelische Belastung<sup>14</sup> Bauchpresse<sup>15</sup>

17

## Blutung, Hämorrhagie

Sickerblutung<sup>1</sup> kleinste<sup>2</sup> Blutaustritt, Blutung<sup>3</sup> Nasenbluten<sup>4</sup> Bluter(in), Hämophile(r)<sup>5</sup> pulssynchron spritzen<sup>6</sup> Blutung stillen<sup>7</sup> starke B.<sup>8</sup> innere B.<sup>9</sup> Nachgeburtshemorrhagie<sup>10</sup> okkulte B.<sup>11</sup> Nachblutung<sup>12</sup> hämorrhagische Diathese d. Neugeborenen<sup>13</sup>

18

**rupture** [ˈrʌptʃə] *n & v term* *syn* **tear** [teə] - **tore** - **torn** *n & v irr clin*,  
*sim* **disruption**<sup>1</sup> [ˈdɪsɹʌpʃən] *n term*

(*n*) a **break** [eɪ] or **tear** in **continuity**<sup>2</sup> of soft tissues (tendons, vessels)

(*un*)**ruptured** *adj* • **tearing** *n* • **disrupt**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **disruptive**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» On laparoscopy blunt diaphragmatic rupture was diagnosed. There was a tear of the middle meningeal artery.

*Use* traumatic / **spontaneous**<sup>5</sup> [eɪ] **rupture** • **tendon**<sup>6</sup> / **partial**<sup>7</sup> / **delayed** [eɪ] / **free** / **contained**<sup>8</sup> [eɪ] **rupture** • **splenic**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] / **bladder**<sup>10</sup> / **aortic** [eɪ] **rupture** • **rupture of the diaphragm** [æm] / an **aneurysm** [ænjəriˈzɪzəm] / **membranes**<sup>11</sup> / **longitudinal ligaments** • **ruptured eardrum**<sup>12</sup> / vessels / **scar**<sup>13</sup> • **ligamentous**<sup>14</sup> / **partial**<sup>15</sup> / **neural** / **family**<sup>16</sup> **disruption** • **disrupted** muscle / **sleep**<sup>17</sup> / speech • **disruptive behavior**<sup>18</sup> / child / patient • **tear** injury • **wear-and-**<sup>19</sup> [eə] / **hamstring**<sup>20</sup> / **meniscal tear**

**Note:** Mark the difference in pronunciation and meaning in **tear**<sup>21</sup> [ɪə] and **tearing**<sup>22</sup> [ɪə].

**dislocation** *n term* *rel* **displacement**<sup>1</sup> *n*, **fracture**<sup>2</sup> *n & v term* → U106-1ff

displacement of the articular surface of a bone from its joint; in displaced fractures the main bony fragments are widely separated

**dislocate**<sup>3</sup> *v term* • **displace**<sup>4</sup> *v* • (*un*)**displaced** *adj*

» Proper positioning of the x-ray tube<sup>5</sup> will improve identification of the radial head dislocation. Swelling may mask the bone displacement.

*Use* hip / elbow (joint) / carpal / traumatic / **fracture-**<sup>6j</sup> (*un*)**complicated** / **recurrent**<sup>7</sup> [ɹɛː||Δ] **dislocation** • **dislocation of the** shoulder / jaw [dʒɔː||] **thumb**<sup>8</sup> [θʌm] • downward / anterior / medial / lateral **displacement** • **degree**<sup>9</sup> / **direction of displacement** • double / (*non*)**displaced**<sup>10</sup> / old (healed) / (*un*)**stable**<sup>11</sup> **fracture** • **fracture site**<sup>12</sup> [aɪ] / fragments / **reduction**<sup>13</sup> / nail / healing • **fractured** rib / limb [lɪm] / jaw<sup>14</sup>

## Ruptur, Riss, (Durch)bruch, Hernie; reißen, platzen, rupturieren

Zerreißen, Spaltung<sup>1</sup> Kontinuität<sup>2</sup> (zer)stören, zerreißen, spalten<sup>3</sup> zerreißen, -störend<sup>4</sup> Spontanruptur<sup>5</sup> Sehnenriss, -ruptur<sup>6</sup> Einriss<sup>7</sup> gedeckte Ruptur<sup>8</sup> Milzruptur<sup>9</sup> Blasenruptur<sup>10</sup> Blasensprung<sup>11</sup> Trommelfellruptur<sup>12</sup> Narbenbruch<sup>13</sup> Bänderriss<sup>14</sup> Zerrung<sup>15</sup> zerrüttete Familienverhältnisse<sup>16</sup> gestörter Schlaf<sup>17</sup> störendes/ destruktives Verhalten<sup>18</sup> Abnutzung, Verschleiß<sup>19</sup> Zerrung/ Riss d. Ober-schenkelbeuger<sup>20</sup> Träne<sup>21</sup> Tränen(träufeln); tränend<sup>22</sup>

19

## Verrenkung, Luxation

Verschiebung, Fehlstellung, Dislokation<sup>1</sup> (Knochen)fraktur, -bruch; (Knochen) brechen / frakturieren<sup>2</sup> verrenken, luxieren<sup>3</sup> verschieben, dislozieren<sup>4</sup> Röntgenröhre<sup>5</sup> Luxationsfraktur<sup>6</sup> habituelle L.7 Daumenluxation<sup>8</sup> Grad der Fehlstellung<sup>9</sup> dislozierte Fraktur<sup>10</sup> (*in*)stabile F.<sup>11</sup> Bruchstelle<sup>12</sup> Reposition d. Fraktur<sup>13</sup> Kieferbruch<sup>14</sup>

20

## Unit 6 Accidents & Emergencies

Related Units: **5** Injuries, **7** States of Consciousness, **106** Fractures, **104** Pain, **8** First Aid, **123** Resuscitation, **124** Medical & Surgical Emergencies

**accident** [æksɪdɪnt] *n* *sim* **incident**<sup>1</sup> *n*

misfortune [-tʃən] or unexpected and unplanned event resulting in **property damage**<sup>2</sup>, injury, or loss of life (e.g. a car or **plane crash**<sup>3</sup>, a **shipwreck**<sup>4</sup>, **train derailment**<sup>5</sup> [eɪ] or **capsize**<sup>6</sup> [kæpsaɪz] of a boat)

**accidental**<sup>7</sup> *adj* • **by accident**<sup>8</sup> *phr* • **accident-prone**<sup>9</sup> [ˈprəʊn] *adj*

» **Burns** [ɜː] are the leading cause of accidental death in children. This will help decrease the risk of future accidents in your home. How many people are involved in the accident? An incident involving a hazardous material requires specialty management because a threat [e] to rescue workers exists that may create additional casualties [kæʒ-].

*Use* to have/cause/get killed in<sup>10</sup> **an accident** • **automobile or road or motor vehicle** [ɪ] or **traffic**<sup>11</sup> **accident** • railway / bicycle [aɪ] / motorcycle [saɪ] **accident** • skiing / riding<sup>12</sup> / shooting / **diving**<sup>13</sup> [aɪ] **accident** • **industrial**<sup>14</sup> [ˈɪndɪəl] / radiation [eɪ] / **bath-tub**<sup>15</sup> / aviation [eɪ] **accident** • **bad or nasty**<sup>16</sup> / major [ˈmeɪdʒə-] / **fatal**<sup>17</sup> **accident** • at the scene of the<sup>18</sup> **accident** • **accident prevention**<sup>19</sup> / and **emergency** (*abbr* A & E) **department**<sup>20</sup> (*BE*) • **accidental** injury / poisoning / overdose / **needle stick**<sup>21</sup> • **accidental** fire / **death**<sup>22</sup> / hypothermia [aɪ] / contamination • **biting**<sup>23</sup> / hazardous [aɪ] material / **submersion**<sup>24</sup> [aɪ] **incident** • **suicidal** [saɪ] / **mass casualty or multicasualty**<sup>25</sup> / life-threatening [e] **incident** • **incident commander**<sup>26</sup> • **accident-prone** patients

## Unfall, Unglück

Vorfall, Zwischenfall<sup>1</sup> Sachschaden<sup>2</sup> Flugegaststurz<sup>3</sup> Schiffbruch<sup>4</sup> Zugentgleisung<sup>5</sup> Kentern<sup>6</sup> Unfall-, akzidentell; zufällig, versehentlich<sup>7</sup> zufällig, durch Zufall; aus Versehen<sup>8</sup> unfallgefährdet<sup>9</sup> tödl. verunglücken<sup>10</sup> Auto-, Verkehrsunfall<sup>11</sup> Reitunfall<sup>12</sup> Tauchunfall<sup>13</sup> Arbeits-, Betriebsunfall<sup>14</sup> Unfall i. d. Badewanne<sup>15</sup> schwerer U.<sup>16</sup> tödl. Unfall<sup>17</sup> am Unfallort<sup>18</sup> Unfallverhütung<sup>19</sup> Unfallambulanz<sup>20</sup> akzidentelle Nadelstichverletzung<sup>21</sup> Unfalltod<sup>22</sup> Bissverletzung<sup>23</sup> Ertrinkungs-unfall<sup>24</sup> Massenunfall<sup>25</sup> Einsatz-leiter<sup>26</sup>

1



**collide (with)** [kə'laid] v *rel* **crash**<sup>1</sup>, **smash**<sup>2</sup>, **hit**<sup>3</sup> v,  
**knock** [nɒ:k] **down/ over**<sup>4</sup>, **run into**<sup>5</sup>/ **over**<sup>6</sup> v

to crash with a violent impact, esp. in accidents of automobiles, planes, or ships traveling at great speed

**collision**<sup>7</sup> [kə'lɪʒən] n • **crash**<sup>8</sup> [kræʃ] n • **smash-up**<sup>8</sup> n inf BE • **aircrash**<sup>9</sup> n

» They collided at the **intersection**<sup>10</sup>. The momentum of the collision caused the victim's head to hit the **dashboard**<sup>11</sup>. I crashed into the door. The car smashed into a tree. He was run over by a car. I was hit by pieces of the falling **cargo**<sup>12</sup> [kɑ:rgəu]. He was knocked to the **ground** [aʊ] by the blow [əʊ]. The surfer was run over by a motorboat. The car behind ran into me when I braked [eɪ].

Use **automobile** [ɒ:] / **head-on**<sup>13</sup> / **rear** [rɪə] **end (automobile)**<sup>14</sup> **collision** • high-speed **vehicular** / motor vehicle-pedestrian [eɪ] **collision** • to be in a/involved in a/come into<sup>15</sup> **collision** • to have a **crash** • train / (air)plane<sup>16</sup> [eɪ] **crash** • **crash helmet**<sup>17</sup> / **barrier**<sup>18</sup> /-landing<sup>19</sup> • **hit-and-run accident**<sup>20</sup> / driver • car<sup>8</sup> **smash** • **to be knocked** down by a car / **over on the zebra** [i:] **crossing**<sup>21</sup>

**heavy (goods) vehicle** [hevi ɡu:ds vi:kl] n, abbr **HGV**  
*syn* **truck** [træk] n, *rel* **automobile**<sup>1</sup> [ɒ:təməubi:l], **car**<sup>1</sup> n

large truck (BE lorry) with a separate part for the driver designed to transport heavy loads<sup>2</sup> [əʊ] **vehicular adj** • **trucker**<sup>3</sup> n • **trucking** n • **truckage**<sup>4</sup> n • **automobilist**<sup>5</sup> n

» Shear [ʃɪə] forces are common when the victim is run over by a heavy goods vehicle. When the child is the **pedestrian**<sup>6</sup> in a motor vehicle collision, the case-fatality rate increases threefold. The American Automobile Association in the US and the Royal Automobile Club in Britain are organizations which offer advice [aɪ] and **repair** [eə] services to motorists.

Use to drive a **vehicle** • **motor**<sup>1</sup> / **farm**<sup>7</sup> / **recreational**<sup>8</sup> [i:ɛɪ] (abbr RV) **vehicle** • **emergency**<sup>9</sup> [ɜ:] / military **vehicle** • **vehicle accident** / **headlights**<sup>10</sup> / mile / **exhaust**<sup>11</sup> [ɒ:] • **oncoming**<sup>12</sup> / incoming / **submerged**<sup>13</sup> [ɜ:] **vehicle** • **pickup**<sup>14</sup> / **trailer**<sup>15</sup> [eɪ] / overturned **truck** • **truck driver**<sup>3</sup> /-trailer<sup>15</sup> • **vehicular accident** or collision / **access**<sup>16</sup> / **emissions**<sup>17</sup> / traffic • **automobile ride** / driving / **occupants**<sup>18</sup> / **insurance** [ɪʊə] • **passenger**<sup>19</sup> / **patrol**<sup>20</sup> [əʊ] / tank **car** • refrigerator / **stock**<sup>21</sup> / sport(s) **car** • five-door / **hatchback**<sup>22</sup> / broken-down / damaged **car** • **street**<sup>23</sup> / railroad / **freight**<sup>24</sup> [freɪt] / **cable**<sup>25</sup> **car** • **car seat** / keys / phone • **car use** / **sickness**<sup>26</sup> / **park**<sup>27</sup> • safe / (rear-facing) [eɪs] infant / **lumbar**<sup>28</sup> [ʌ] **car seat** • front / **passenger**<sup>29</sup> / back **seat** • **seat belt** or **restraint**<sup>30</sup> [eɪ]

**blow** [bləʊ] n *rel* **strike**<sup>1</sup> [aɪ], **impact**<sup>2</sup>, **shock**<sup>3</sup>, **bang**<sup>4</sup>, **punch**<sup>5</sup> [ʌ], **kick**<sup>6</sup> n

(i) hard hit with the  **fist**<sup>7</sup> or a **weapon** [e] (ii) sudden **frustrating** [ʌ] or **disappointing event** **strike**<sup>8</sup> - struck - struck / stricken v *irr* • **bang**<sup>9</sup> v • **punch** [pʌntʃ] v • **kick** v

» There is a history of a blow to the nose. A **fatal** [eɪ] **diagnosis** in a child is a **severe blow** to the family. "Hangman's **fractures**" are typically produced by striking the **chin** [tʃ] on the **steering** [ɪə] **wheel** [i:] in a head-on collision. Most handgun projectiles [dʒeɪ] strike tissue at a speed below 274 m/sec. He banged his head against the windshield.

Use to deliver or strike<sup>10</sup> a **blow** • hammer / direct / sharp / **forceful**<sup>11</sup> / **neck**<sup>12</sup> **blow** • back / **crushing**<sup>13</sup> [ʌ] / concussive [ʌ] **blow** • **lightning**<sup>14</sup> **strike** • **panic**<sup>15</sup> / **drought**<sup>16</sup> [draʊt] / famine- [æ] / **poverty**<sup>17</sup> **-stricken** • **to bang** your knee against on sth. • **a bang on the head**<sup>18</sup> • **shock wave**<sup>19</sup> / **absorber**<sup>20</sup> • **punch ball**<sup>21</sup> (BE) • **punching bag**<sup>21</sup> • **punch-up**<sup>22</sup> (espBE)

## zusammenstoßen, kollidieren

verunglücken, e. Unfall haben; knallen/ krachen gegen/ in<sup>1</sup> prallen; zerschlagen<sup>2</sup> (zusammen)stoßen, anfahren<sup>3</sup> nieder-, umstoßen, an-, überfahren<sup>4</sup> rennen/ fahren gegen<sup>5</sup> überfahren<sup>6</sup> Zusammenstoß, Kollision<sup>7</sup> Zusammenstoß, Unfall, Karambolage<sup>8</sup> Flugzeugabsturz<sup>9</sup> Kreuzung<sup>10</sup> Armaturenbrett<sup>11</sup> Fracht, Ladung<sup>12</sup> Frontalzusammenstoß<sup>13</sup> Auffahrunfall<sup>14</sup> zusammenstoßen, kollidieren<sup>15</sup> Flugzeugabsturz<sup>16</sup> Sturzhelm<sup>17</sup> Leitplanke<sup>18</sup> Bruchlandung<sup>19</sup> Unfall m. Fahrerflucht<sup>20</sup> auf d. Zebrastreifen ange-/ überfahren werden<sup>21</sup>

2

## Lastkraftwagen, LKW

Auto, Wagen, (Kraft)fahzeug<sup>1</sup> Lasten<sup>2</sup> LKW-Fahrer(in)<sup>3</sup> LKW-Transport<sup>4</sup> Fahrzeuglenker(in), Autofahrer(in)<sup>5</sup> Fußgänger(in)<sup>6</sup> landwirtschaftl. Fahrzeug<sup>7</sup> Wohnmobil<sup>8</sup> Einsatzfahrzeug<sup>9</sup> Autoscheinwerfer<sup>10</sup> Auspuff<sup>11</sup> entgegenkommender Wagen<sup>12</sup> versunkenes Fahrzeug<sup>13</sup> Pritschenwagen, Kleintransporter<sup>14</sup> Sattelschlepper<sup>15</sup> Zufahrt<sup>16</sup> Abgase<sup>17</sup> Autosinsassen<sup>18</sup> Personenkraftwagen, PKW<sup>19</sup> Streifenwagen<sup>20</sup> Viehtransporter<sup>21</sup> Auto m. Hecktüre<sup>22</sup> Straßenbahn<sup>23</sup> Güterwagen<sup>24</sup> Seilbahn<sup>25</sup> Übelkeit b. Autofahren<sup>26</sup> Parkplatz<sup>27</sup> Autositz m. Lendenstütze<sup>28</sup> Beifahrersitz<sup>29</sup> Sicherheitsgurt<sup>30</sup>

3

## (i) Schlag, Stoß

### (ii) Unglück, Schicksalsschlag

Schlag, Treffer<sup>1</sup> Auf-, Zusammenprall; Auswirkung<sup>2</sup> Stoß, Schlag<sup>3</sup> Schlag; Knall<sup>4</sup> (Faust)schlag<sup>5</sup> Tritt, Stoß<sup>6</sup> Faust<sup>7</sup> schlagen, stoßen, treffen<sup>8</sup> s. anschlagen<sup>9</sup> e. Schlag versetzen<sup>10</sup> kräftiger S.<sup>11</sup> Genickschlag<sup>12</sup> zermalmender S.<sup>13</sup> Blitzschlag<sup>14</sup> in Panik<sup>15</sup> dürregeplagt<sup>16</sup> notleidend<sup>17</sup> Schlag auf d. Kopf<sup>18</sup> Stoßwelle<sup>19</sup> Stoßdämpfer<sup>20</sup> Sandsack<sup>21</sup> Schlägerei<sup>22</sup>

4

**fall** *n* *clin usu pl* *rel* **collapse**<sup>1</sup> [kə'læps], **breakdown**<sup>1</sup> [breɪkdaʊn] *n*

accidental drop to the ground or free descent [disent] from a higher position

**falling** *adj* & *n* • **fall**<sup>2</sup> - fell - fallen *v irr* • **collapse**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **break down**<sup>3</sup> *v*

» Most **calcaneal** [eɪ] **fractures**<sup>4</sup> are the result of a fall, with force borne primarily by the patient's heels [i:]. Falls constitute 40% of home accidents, more than those from burns, **scalds**<sup>5</sup> [ɔ:], cuts and scratches, or strangulation. The **wrist**<sup>6</sup> [r] is usually injured by falling on an outstretched hand. Your wife might suffer a nervous [ɜ:] **breakdown**. In severe burns, circulatory collapse may result.

Use **to have or take**<sup>2</sup> **a fall** • accidental / minor [aɪ] **fall** • **to stumble** [ʌ] and<sup>7</sup> **fall** • **to fall** over / forward / off the roof / **down the stairs**<sup>8</sup> • **to fall** down on your knees [ni:z] / **from a height**<sup>9</sup> [haɪt] • **to fall** out of a window / into the water / **flat on the face**<sup>10</sup> • **to fall head first**<sup>11</sup> / to one's death • **falling sickness**<sup>12</sup> / **debris** [i:] • **to collapse** from the heat<sup>13</sup> • circulatory<sup>14</sup> [sɜ:rk-] / **lung**<sup>15</sup> [ʌ] / **structural**<sup>16</sup> [ʌ] **collapse** • nervous<sup>17</sup> / emotional [əʊ] **breakdown**

**compression** *n* *rel* **contusion**<sup>1</sup> [-t(j)u:zʰn],

**crush** [krʌʃ] **injury**<sup>1</sup>, **constriction**<sup>2</sup> *n*

squeezing [i:] and pressing or otherwise applying [aɪ] pressure to body structures, organs or tissues

**compress**<sup>3</sup> *v* & *n* • **crushing**<sup>4</sup> *adj* & *n* • **constrict**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **constrictive**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

» Compression injuries (e.g. falling from a height and landing on a foot, crushing the distal tibial physis [i]) may substantially affect bone growth. The vertebral bodies are often sites of compression fractures. The crush injuries are due to structural collapse and falling debris. Cerebral contusion can be demonstrated by CT scan as small areas of hemorrhage [e] in the cerebral parenchyma.

Use nerve / **chest**<sup>7</sup> [tʃ] / (nerve) **root**<sup>8</sup> [u:] / (spinal) [aɪ] cord [kɔ:rd] **compression** • **brain**<sup>9</sup> / **tracheal** [k] **compression** • **compression injury** / **fracture**<sup>10</sup> • **compression neuropathy** / **paralysis**<sup>11</sup> / **atelectasis**<sup>12</sup> • **to crush tablets**<sup>13</sup> / sb. against an object / sth. between two objects • **crushed** bone / tissue [tʃ] / **BE** sju: / **ice**<sup>14</sup> • **crush fracture**<sup>10</sup> / injury [ɪndʒəi] / **wound**<sup>15</sup> [u:] • **crushing** blow / force • **cerebral** [s] or **brain**<sup>16</sup> / lung or pulmonary [u] **contusion** • myocardial / severe **contusion** • vessel / **pupillary** [pjʊ:-] / **bronchial** [k] **constriction** • **contused** wound<sup>15</sup>

**stab** [stæb] *v* *sim* **penetrate**<sup>1</sup>, **pierce**<sup>2</sup> [pɪə:s] *v*,

**sting**<sup>3</sup>, **puncture**<sup>4</sup> [pʌŋktʃə] *v* & *n*, *rel* **cut**<sup>5</sup> *v* & *n*

to injure a person by a thrusting [ʌ] blow with a sharp pointed object, e.g. a knife [naɪf]

**stabbing**<sup>6</sup> *adj* & *n* • **penetration**<sup>7</sup> *n* • **penetrating**<sup>8</sup> *adj* • **stinging**<sup>9</sup> *adj*

» Cat bites cause deep **puncture** wounds with little crush injury. The tympanic membrane may be punctured and the tympanum penetrated by objects placed in the ear canal. Air leaked [i:] from the lung which was punctured by a fractured rib. These insects sometimes bite before stinging. **Pneumothorax** [n(j)u:-] may result from blunt [ʌ] or penetrating chest trauma [ɔ:]. There is usually a palpable feeling of resistance when the needle [i:] pierces the parietal [aɪ] pericardium.

Use **to stab sb.** in the back / **to death**<sup>10</sup> • **stab wound**<sup>11</sup> [u:] / **incision**<sup>12</sup> [sɪʒ] • **stabbing pain**<sup>13</sup> • **puncture wound**<sup>11</sup> / **site**<sup>14</sup> [aɪ] • **penetrating injury**<sup>15</sup> / object / foreign [fɔ:rən] **body**<sup>16</sup> • **penetrating** (chest/ back) **trauma**<sup>15</sup> / head wound • **to penetrate** deeply (into tissue) / the skin / **the gut** [ʌ] **wall**<sup>17</sup> • **to pierce the skin**<sup>18</sup> / subcutaneous [eɪ] tissue / liver • **piercing pain**<sup>13</sup> • **ear**<sup>19</sup> **piercing** • **bee** [i:] / **wasp**<sup>20</sup> [ɔ:] / **scorpion** **sting** • **to cut oneself** with a knife / on the glass • **cut surface**<sup>21</sup>

## Sturz

Zusammenbruch, Kollaps<sup>1</sup> fallen, stürzen<sup>2</sup> zusammenbrechen, kollabieren<sup>3</sup> Fersenbeinfrakturen<sup>4</sup> Verbrühungen<sup>5</sup> Handgelenk<sup>6</sup> stolpern u. stürzen<sup>7</sup> d. Treppe hinunterstürzen<sup>8</sup> aus großer Höhe stürzen<sup>9</sup> auf d. Nase fallen<sup>10</sup> kopfüber stürzen<sup>11</sup> Fallsucht, Epilepsie<sup>12</sup> einen Hitze-kollaps haben<sup>13</sup> kardiovaskulärer Kollaps, Kreislaufkollaps<sup>14</sup> Lungenkollaps<sup>15</sup> Gebäudeeinsturz<sup>16</sup> Nervenzusammenbruch<sup>17</sup>

5

## Kompression, Quetschung, Druck

Quetschung, Prellung, Kontusion<sup>1</sup> Einengung, -schnürung, Konstriktion<sup>2</sup> zusammendrücken, komprimieren; Umschlag, Kompress<sup>3</sup> zerschmetternd, vernichtend; Quetschung<sup>4</sup> zusammenziehen, ein-, verengen<sup>5</sup> einengend<sup>6</sup> Brustkorb-, Thoraxkompression, Compressio thoracis<sup>7</sup> Wurzelkompression<sup>8</sup> Compressio cerebri<sup>9</sup> Kompressionsfraktur, Stauchungsbruch<sup>10</sup> Druck-, Kompressionslähmung<sup>11</sup> Kompressionsatelektase<sup>12</sup> Tabletten zerdrücken/-stoßen<sup>13</sup> zerstoßenes Eis<sup>14</sup> Quetschwunde<sup>15</sup> Contusio cerebri<sup>16</sup>

6

## (ein-, er)stechen

ein-, durchdringen<sup>1</sup> durchstechen, -bohren<sup>2</sup> stechen; brennen; Stechen, Stich, Brennen<sup>3</sup> durch-, einstechen, punktieren; Einstich, Punktion<sup>4</sup> schneiden; Schnitt<sup>5</sup> stechend; Messerstecherei<sup>6</sup> Eindringen; Penetration<sup>7</sup> durchdringend, penetrierend<sup>8</sup> stechend, brennend<sup>9</sup> jem. erstechen<sup>10</sup> Stichwunde<sup>11</sup> Stichinzision<sup>12</sup> stechender Schmerz<sup>13</sup> Punktionsstelle<sup>14</sup> penetrierende Verletzung<sup>15</sup> penetrierender Fremdkörper<sup>16</sup> d. Darmwand durchdringen<sup>17</sup> d. Haut durchstoßen/-bohren<sup>18</sup> Stechen v. Ohrlöchern<sup>19</sup> Wespenstich<sup>20</sup> Schnittfläche<sup>21</sup>

7

**gunshot** [ʌ] **wound** [u:] or **injury** *n*, *abbr* **GSW**rel **firearms**<sup>1</sup> *n pl*, **weapon**<sup>2</sup> [wɛpən] *n*lesion [i:ʒ] caused by a **missile**<sup>3</sup> [mɪsɪl] or **bullet**<sup>4</sup> [bʊlət] fired from a **weapon****handgun**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **shoot**<sup>6</sup> [u:] - shot - shot *v irr* • **shot**<sup>7</sup> [ʃɒt] *n* • **(un)armed**<sup>8</sup> *adj*

- » **Patients with gunshot wounds to the torso**<sup>9</sup> often present in hemorrhagic [ædʒ] shock with multiple organ injury. Deaths from firearms will soon surpass deaths from motor vehicle accidents in numbers. **Mangling injuries**<sup>10</sup> include gunshot and blast wounds, severe open crush wounds, and bites by large animals. The type of weapon must be **ascertained**<sup>11</sup> [eɪ].

Use small-caliber / **penetrating**<sup>12</sup> / civilian / **cardiac**<sup>13</sup> **gunshot wound** • **gunshot wound** complications / **to the head**<sup>14</sup> • **firearm** deaths / safety / violence [aɪə] / (-related) **injuries**<sup>15</sup> • **to check sb. for**<sup>16</sup> / low-velocity **weapons** • chemical / biological / nuclear [u:] **weapons** • **to hand in or relinquish**<sup>17</sup> **the weapon** • **to have/fire**<sup>6</sup> **a gun** • **shot**<sup>18</sup> / pump / **air**<sup>19</sup> / small-caliber / **paint**<sup>20</sup> **gun** • **gunfire** / **control** legislation<sup>21</sup> / **ownership**<sup>22</sup> • **shotgun** blast • **handgun** wound / projectile

**explosion** [ɪkspləʊʒən] *n* *syn* **blast** [æ] *n*, rel **burst**<sup>1</sup> [ɜ:] *n & v*, **detonation**<sup>2</sup> *n*

violent release of energy caused by a chemical or nuclear reaction

**explode**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **explosive**<sup>4</sup> *adj & n* • **blast**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **detonate**<sup>6</sup> [dɛtəneɪt] *v*

- » **Large explosions cause multiple** [Δ] **foreign body impregnations**<sup>7</sup> and lacerations [s]. **Blast injuries in civilians**<sup>8</sup> occur [ɜ:] as a result of fireworks, household explosions, or industrial [Δ] accidents. It only needs a **spark**<sup>9</sup> for the explosives in here to **blow up**<sup>3</sup>. Luckily the **TNT**<sup>10</sup> failed to **detonate**.

Use gas / **atomic (bomb)**<sup>11</sup> / reactor **explosion** • enclosed space / **deafening**<sup>12</sup> [e] **explosion** • **explosive device**<sup>13</sup> [dɪvʌɪs] / expert / **charge** [tʃ] • plastic / **home-made**<sup>14</sup> **explosive** • **blast** effect / **trauma or injury**<sup>15</sup> / wound • **to detonate** **a bomb** / mine [main] • **accidental** / (underground) **nuclear**<sup>11</sup> **detonation** • **detonation** size

**fire** [faɪə] *n* *sim* **blaze**<sup>1</sup> [bleɪz] *n & v*rel **flame**<sup>2</sup> [eɪ], **smoke**<sup>3</sup>, **arson**<sup>4</sup> [ɑ:rsən] *n*, **burn**<sup>5</sup> [ɜ:] *n & v* → U5-11(i) **combustion**<sup>6</sup> [Δ] of **inflammable**<sup>7</sup> [æ] materials producing heat, light and (often) smoke(ii) burning object **set afire**<sup>8</sup> by accident (destructive fire) or on purpose (e.g. for cooking or warmth)**firefighter**<sup>9</sup> *n* • **flammable**<sup>7</sup> *adj* • **ablaze**<sup>10</sup> *adj* • **arsonist**<sup>11</sup> *n* • **burning** *adj*

- » **Where's the fire? Smoke inhalation** [eɪ] kills more **fire victims**<sup>12</sup> than does **thermal** [ɜ:] injury. The fire was due to a **utility failure**<sup>13</sup>. Firefighters took two hours to **control the blaze**. Most fire deaths are due to burns and asphyxia [æsɪksɪə] from **carbon monoxide**. Smoke from a wood fire is extremely irritating because it contains **aldehyde** [-aɪd] gases. Flame burns from **ignited**<sup>14</sup> [aɪ] clothing are often the most serious part of the injury.

Use accidental / **major**<sup>15</sup> [eɪdʒ] / minor [aɪ] / **structural**<sup>16</sup> [Δ] **fire** • **forest**<sup>17</sup> / **bush** [ʊ] / camp / open **fire** • **to light a/catch**<sup>18</sup> / **be on**<sup>19</sup> / **be trapped in a fire** • **to set a/fight a/put out a fire** • **fire** trauma / **drill**<sup>20</sup> / **escape**<sup>21</sup> / **exit** • **fire alarm**<sup>22</sup> / wall / **extinguisher**<sup>23</sup> • **fireman**<sup>9</sup> / **department or (BE) brigade**<sup>24</sup> [eɪ] / **station**<sup>25</sup> • **fire crew**<sup>26</sup> [kru:] / engine / **plug**<sup>27</sup> [Λ] / proof / damage • **fireball**<sup>28</sup> / works / **bomb**<sup>29</sup> / storm / **disaster**<sup>30</sup> [æ] • **to be in**<sup>19</sup> / **extinguish flames** • **a cloud or pall of**<sup>31</sup> / kerosene **smoke** • **smoke** inhalation / **detector**<sup>32</sup> / **helmet** • **blazing** fire • **flammable** liquids [ɪkwɪdʒ] / materials

**Schussverletzung, -wunde**

Schusswaffen<sup>1</sup> Waffe<sup>2</sup> Geschöß<sup>3</sup>  
Kugel<sup>4</sup> Handfeuerwaffe<sup>5</sup> schießen<sup>6</sup>  
Schuss; Schütze<sup>7</sup> (un)bewaffnet<sup>8</sup>  
Rumpf<sup>9</sup> Verstümmelungen<sup>10</sup> fest-  
gestellt<sup>11</sup> Durchschuß<sup>12</sup> Herz-  
schuß<sup>13</sup> Kopfschuß<sup>14</sup> Schussver-  
letzungen<sup>15</sup> jem. auf Waffen unter-  
suchen<sup>16</sup> d. Waffe aushändigen/  
abgeben<sup>17</sup> Schrotflinte<sup>18</sup> Luft-  
gewehr<sup>19</sup> Spritzpistole<sup>20</sup> Waffenge-  
setze<sup>21</sup> Waffenbesitz<sup>22</sup>

8

**Explosion**

Explosion, Ausbruch; platzen,  
(zer)bersten; sprengen<sup>1</sup> Explosion,  
Knall, Detonation<sup>2</sup> explodieren, in  
d. Luft fliegen<sup>3</sup> explosiv, Spreng-;  
Explosiv-; Sprengstoff<sup>4</sup> sprengen<sup>5</sup>  
explodieren (lassen), detonieren<sup>6</sup>  
Einschläge<sup>7</sup> Zivilbevölkerung<sup>8</sup> Fun-  
ken<sup>9</sup> Trinitrotoluol<sup>10</sup> Atomexplosi-  
on<sup>11</sup> ohrenbetäubende E.<sup>12</sup> Spreng-  
körper, Bombe<sup>13</sup> selbstgebastelter  
S.<sup>14</sup> Knall-, Explosionstrauma<sup>15</sup> 9

**(i) Feuer (ii) Brand(stelle)**

Feuer(sbrunst), Brand; brennen, lodern<sup>1</sup> Flamme<sup>2</sup> Rauch, Qualm<sup>3</sup>  
Brandstiftung<sup>4</sup> Verbrennung;  
(ver)brennen<sup>5</sup> Verbrennung<sup>6</sup> leicht  
brennbar, feuergefährlich<sup>7</sup> ange-  
zündet, in Brand gesteckt<sup>8</sup> Feuer-  
wehrmann<sup>9</sup> in Flammen<sup>10</sup> Brand-  
stifter(in), Pyromane/-in<sup>11</sup> Brand-  
opfer, -verletzte<sup>12</sup> defekte Anlage<sup>13</sup>  
brennend<sup>14</sup> Großbrand<sup>15</sup> Gebäude-  
brand<sup>16</sup> Waldbrand<sup>17</sup> Feuer fan-  
gen<sup>18</sup> brennen<sup>19</sup> Brandschutz-, Feuer-  
wehrübung<sup>20</sup> Feuerleiter<sup>21</sup> Feuer-  
alarm, -melder<sup>22</sup> Feuerlöscher<sup>23</sup>  
Feuerwehr<sup>24</sup> Feuerwache<sup>25</sup> Lösch-  
mannschaft<sup>26</sup> Hydrant<sup>27</sup> Feuerball,  
Kugelblitz<sup>28</sup> Brandbombe<sup>29</sup> Brand-  
katastrophe<sup>30</sup> Rauchwolke<sup>31</sup>  
Rauchmelder<sup>32</sup> 10

**damaged** [dæmɪdʒd] *adj* *rel* **harmful**<sup>1</sup>, **detrimental**<sup>1</sup>, **pernicious**<sup>2</sup> [ɪ] *adj*

injured, harmed, broken, or **blemished**<sup>3</sup> → U91-1

**damage**<sup>4</sup> *n* & *v* • **harm**<sup>4</sup> *n* & *v* • **harmless**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **detriment** *n* • **damages**<sup>6</sup> *n* *pl*

» Such an **accident** may **damage** both the knee joint and the hip. **Damage** from **electrical injury**<sup>7</sup> may be extensive even though the outward signs of **injury** are minimal. Long-term cortico-steroid therapy often does more harm than good. **Tachycardia** [k] can be particularly detrimental, because it shortens diastolic filling and increases myocardial oxygen demand.

Use sun-/ brain / **radiation**<sup>8</sup> [ɛɪ] / severely **damaged** • **damaged equipment**<sup>9</sup> / **nerve**<sup>10</sup> / heart valves [æ] • **harmful substance** [Δ] or **agent**<sup>11</sup> [ɛɪdʒ] / stimuli [aɪ] / exposure [oʊʒ] • **harmful habits** / inhalation / (health) **effects**<sup>12</sup> • **harmless snake** / scorpion sting • **detrimental effects** / to wound **healing** [i:] / to **health**<sup>13</sup> • **pernicious anemia** [i:] / vomiting / **effect**<sup>14</sup> • **to damage target organs** • **to cause or inflict**<sup>15</sup>/repair [ɛə] **damage** • **tissue**<sup>16</sup> / cellular / skin / endothelial [i:] **damage** • skeletal / joint / (neuro)vascular / (irreversible) [ɜ:] **brain**<sup>17</sup> **damage** • eye / liver / spinal [aɪ] cord **damage** • massive / fetal [i:] / hypoxic-ischemic [ki:] / **radiation**<sup>18</sup> **damage** • **permanent**<sup>19</sup> [ɜ:] / functional / multiple / sublethal [i:] **damage** • **damage to nerve roots**<sup>20</sup> / to the spinal cord / **award**<sup>21</sup> [ə:] • **to cause or do (no) / suffer**<sup>22</sup> [Δ] / avoid **harm** • **harm to sth./sb.** / to others • **physical** [ɪ] or **bodily**<sup>23</sup> / personal / emotional / **self-inflicted**<sup>24</sup> **harm** • **to award** / **to pay**<sup>25</sup> / money / general **damages**

**casualty** [kæʒuəlti] *n* *rel* **victim**<sup>1</sup>, **injured party**<sup>2</sup> *n*

person injured or killed in an **accident** or missing or captured in military engagement [ɛɪdʒ]

**multicasualty**<sup>3</sup> [Λ] *adj* • **victimize**<sup>4</sup> [vɪktɪmaɪz] *v*

» Most casualties were related to trauma from structural collapse, flying debris, or being knocked to the ground. The victim was pinned<sup>5</sup> under a car for a long time. Victims are collected and treated in field hospitals that can stabilize them pending distant evacuation<sup>6</sup>. The simple act of moving a victim from one position to another, if done improperly, may convert [ɜ:] a simple injury into a major one.

Use to report/reduce or mitigate<sup>7</sup> [ɪ] **casualties** • **casualty** collection point / **department**<sup>8</sup> • **multicasualty** event/ incident • **to fall**<sup>9</sup> **victim** (to sth.) • **trauma**<sup>10</sup> / **burn**<sup>11</sup> / flood [Λ] / **accident**<sup>12</sup> **victim** • hurricane [Δ] / lightning [aɪ] / **rape**<sup>13</sup> [ɛɪ] / child **victim** • (un)conscious [ʃ] / **alleged**<sup>14</sup> [ɛdʒ] / moribund / **dazed**<sup>15</sup> [ɛɪ] **victim** • **victim of** (child) abuse / a **disaster**<sup>16</sup> • **victim of** a rabid [ɛɪ] wolf / a crime [aɪ]

**eyewitness** *n* *syn* **percipient** [sɪ] **witness** *n* *leg.*, *rel* **bystander**<sup>1</sup>, **onlooker**<sup>1</sup> *n*

a person at the scene [sɪn] of an accident or crime [aɪ] who can describe what happened

**witness**<sup>2</sup> [wɪtnəs] *n* & *v* • (un)**witnessed**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» The amount of ground movement felt by eyewitnesses of the quake<sup>4</sup> [kweɪk] was determined. **Testimonial** [oʊ] **evidence**<sup>5</sup> is presented by percipient witnesses, who relate their first-hand experience of relevant subjects within lay [leɪ] **comprehension**<sup>6</sup>. Obtain as much information as possible about the details of the injury from any witnesses. The site should be secure from bystanders and clear of loose debris<sup>7</sup>.

Use **eyewitness account**<sup>8</sup> [aʊ] • **to be a/bear** [beə] **witness to sth.**<sup>9</sup> • key / child **witness** • **prosecuting**<sup>10</sup> / **expert (medical)**<sup>11</sup> **witness** • **witness stand or box**<sup>12</sup> (BE) / **fee**<sup>13</sup> [fi:] • **to take the witness stand**<sup>14</sup> • innocent / lay / ill-informed **bystanders** • **bystander** intervention / **initiated**<sup>15</sup> CPR • **witnessed** trauma / **apneas** • **unwitnessed** death / **cardiac arrest**<sup>16</sup>

**geschädigt, lädiert, verletzt**

nachteilig, schädlich<sup>1</sup> schädlich, bösartig, perniziös<sup>2</sup> entstellt, verunstaltet<sup>3</sup> Schaden, (Be)schädigung, Verletzung; schaden, (be)schädigen<sup>4</sup> unschädlich, harmlos<sup>5</sup> Schadenersatz<sup>6</sup> Elektrotrauma<sup>7</sup> strahlengeschädigt<sup>8</sup> beschädigte/ schadhafte Geräte<sup>9</sup> geschädigter Nerv<sup>10</sup> Schadstoff<sup>11</sup> gesundheitsschädlich<sup>12</sup> gesundheits-schädlich<sup>13</sup> schädlich. Wirkung<sup>14</sup> Schaden zufügen<sup>15</sup> Gewebeschädigung<sup>16</sup> irreversibler Hirnschaden<sup>17</sup> Strahlenschaden<sup>18</sup> Dauerschaden, bleibender Sch.<sup>19</sup> Nervenwurzel-schädigung<sup>20</sup> Zuerkennung v. Schadenersatzansprüchen<sup>21</sup> Schaden erleiden<sup>22</sup> Körperverletzung<sup>23</sup> selbstzugefügte Verletzung<sup>24</sup> Schadenersatz leisten<sup>25</sup>

11

**Unfallopfer, Verletzte(r),**

**Tote(r)**

Opfer<sup>1</sup> Verletzte(r), Geschädigte(r)<sup>2</sup> m. vielen Verletzten/ Opfern<sup>3</sup> ungerecht behandeln, schikanieren<sup>4</sup> eingeklemmt<sup>5</sup> bis z. Abtransport<sup>6</sup> d. Verluste/ Opferzahl verringern<sup>7</sup> Unfallstation<sup>8</sup> zum Opfer fallen<sup>9</sup> Verletzte(r), Traumatpatient(in)<sup>10</sup> Verbrennungspatient(in), -opfer<sup>11</sup> Unfallopfer<sup>12</sup> Vergewaltigungsopfer<sup>13</sup> angebliches Opfer<sup>14</sup> benommenes Opfer<sup>15</sup> Katastrophenopfer<sup>16</sup>

12

**Augenzeuge/-in**

Anwesende(r), Zuschauer/-in<sup>1</sup> Zeuge/-in, Zeugnis; bezeugen, be-stätigen; (mit)erleben<sup>2</sup> (un)beobachtet<sup>3</sup> (Erd)beben<sup>4</sup> Zeugenaussage<sup>5</sup> Laienverständnis<sup>6</sup> lose Trümmer<sup>7</sup> Augenzeugenbericht<sup>8</sup> etw. bezeugen, Zeugnis ablegen über<sup>9</sup> Belastungszeuge/-in<sup>10</sup> med. Sachverständige(r)<sup>11</sup> Zeugenstand<sup>12</sup> Zeugengeld<sup>13</sup> i. d. Zeugenstand treten<sup>14</sup> von e. Zuschauer(in) eingeleitete Reanimation<sup>15</sup> unbemerkter Herzstillstand<sup>16</sup>

13

**accidental electric shock** *n* *syn* **electrical accident** *n*,

*rel* **electrocution**<sup>1</sup> [-kju:ʃən], **lightning (strike)**<sup>2</sup> [laɪtnɪŋ strɑ:k] *n* *clin*

sudden violent impact caused by the passage of an **electric current**<sup>3</sup> [ɜ: || BE Δ] through the body  
**electricity** *n* • **electrocute** *v* • **electroshock**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **countershock**<sup>5</sup> [aʊ] *n*

» **Electric shock** may produce loss of consciousness [ʃ]. The death rate from **high-voltage electrocution**<sup>6</sup> is high, but **resuscitation**<sup>7</sup> [AS] should always be initiated [i] as soon as the victim is safely removed from the energy source. Suspect **lightning injury** in a person found **dazed**<sup>8</sup>, unconscious, or injured in the vicinity [sɪ] of a **thunderstorm**<sup>9</sup> [Δ]. In **flashover**, the lightning travels on the outside of the body.

Use **low-voltage**<sup>10</sup> / **high-voltage**<sup>6</sup> **electric shock injury** • **electric(al) injury**<sup>11</sup> / burn / field • **electric(al) energy** / **charge**<sup>12</sup> [tʃɑ:rdʒ] / power • **electric(al) force** / **cord**<sup>13</sup> [k] / **blanket**<sup>14</sup> • **electrical current**<sup>3</sup> / **cardioversion**<sup>15</sup> [ɜ: ||] / stimulation / **cautery**<sup>16</sup> [ɔ:] • **to be struck by**<sup>17</sup> [Δ] / death by / **streak**<sup>18</sup> [i:] **lightning** • **a flash of**<sup>19</sup> / thunder and **lightning** • **lightning injury**<sup>20</sup> / victim / **current** / **rod**<sup>21</sup> • **electroshock therapy**<sup>22</sup> • **to deliver a / administer** **countershock** • electrical / **synchronized** [i] **direct current**<sup>23</sup> (abbr DC) **countershock**

**hypovolemic** [i:] **shock** *n* *term* *rel* **hemorrhage**<sup>1</sup> [e], **dehydration**<sup>2</sup> *n* *term*

shock caused by a reduction in circulating blood volume from massive blood loss or **fluid depletion**<sup>3</sup> [i:]

**hypovolemia**<sup>4</sup> [haɪpou-] *n* *term* • **hemorrhagic** [ædʒ] *adj* → U5-18 •

**dehydrated** [aɪ] *adj* → U78-22

» **Hypovolemic shock** may be the sole presenting sign of blunt [Δ] trauma to organs such as the **spleen** [i:], **liver**, or **kidneys**. Shock in the **traumatized patient** is usually due to hypovolemia from hemorrhage. **Heat exhaustion**<sup>5</sup> [ɔ:] consists of **fatigue**<sup>6</sup> [fəti:g], **tachycardia**, **nausea**<sup>7</sup> [ɔ:], and an urge to defecate [e] caused by **dehydration** and hypovolemia from heat stress.

Use (non)hemorrhagic / early / **suspected**<sup>8</sup> **hypovolemic shock** • **apparent**<sup>9</sup> [eə] / severe **hypovolemic shock** • rapidly progressive / mild **hypovolemic shock** • cellular / generalized / **hypertonic**<sup>10</sup> / **hypernatremic**<sup>11</sup> [i:] **dehydration** • rapid / chronic / **profound** [aʊ] or **severe**<sup>12</sup> **dehydration** • acute / intravascular **hypovolemia** • arterial [iə] / relative **hypovolemia** • **true or effective**<sup>13</sup> / prolonged **hypovolemia** • mild / **diuretic-induced**<sup>14</sup> [daijəreɪtɪk] **hypovolemia**

**near-drowning** [draʊnɪŋ] *n* *rel* **drowning**<sup>1</sup>, **submersion**<sup>2</sup> [-ɜ:rɜ:n] *n*

accident in which the victim survives [aɪ] **asphyxiation**<sup>3</sup> due to prolonged submersion in water  
**drown**<sup>4</sup> *vi* & *vt* *clin* • (near-)**drowned**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **submerge**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **submerged**<sup>7</sup> *adj*

» **Submersion incidents**<sup>8</sup> are classified according to outcome: **drownings** are those with death occurring within 24 hours, while survival for over 24 hours constitutes near-drowning. The pH in near-drowned victims is commonly significantly acidotic. **Drowning victims**<sup>9</sup> should be moved to land or to some other hard surface before chest compression is attempted.

Use child(hood) or pediatric / adult **drowning** • **freshwater**<sup>10</sup> / **sea water**<sup>11</sup> / **dry**<sup>12</sup> **drowning** • **drowning accidents**<sup>8</sup> / episode / **medium** [i:] / **deaths**<sup>9</sup> • prolonged / duration of **submersion** • ice-water / **depth** of<sup>13</sup> **submersion** • **submersion accidents**<sup>8</sup> / **hypoxemia** [i:] / **deaths**<sup>9</sup>

**Elektro-, Stromunfall, elektr. Schlag, Stromstoß**

Tod durch elektr. Strom; Hinrichtung durch d. elektr. Stuhl<sup>1</sup> Blitzschlag<sup>2</sup> elektr. Strom<sup>3</sup> Elektroschock, elektr. S.4 Defibrillation<sup>5</sup> Starkstromverletzung<sup>6</sup> Reanimation<sup>7</sup> benommen<sup>8</sup> Gewitter<sup>9</sup> Niederspannungsverletzung<sup>10</sup> Elektrotrauma<sup>11</sup> elektr. Ladung<sup>12</sup> Stromkabel<sup>13</sup> Heizdecke<sup>14</sup> elektr. Kardioversion<sup>15</sup> Elektrokoagulation, -kauterisation<sup>16</sup> vom Blitz getroffen werden<sup>17</sup> Liniensblitz<sup>18</sup> Blitz<sup>19</sup> Verletzung durch Blitzschlag<sup>20</sup> Blitzableiter<sup>21</sup> Elektroschock-, Elektrokonvulsionstherapie<sup>22</sup> synchrone Defibrillation<sup>23</sup>

14

**hypovolämischer Schock, Volumenmangelschock**

Blutung<sup>1</sup> Dehydratation<sup>2</sup> Flüssigkeitsverlust<sup>3</sup> Hypovolämie<sup>4</sup> Hitzeerschöpfung<sup>5</sup> Müdigkeit<sup>6</sup> Übelkeit<sup>7</sup> Verdacht auf hypovolämischen Schock<sup>8</sup> manifesten hypovolämischen Schock<sup>9</sup> hypertone Dehydratation<sup>10</sup> hypernatriämische D.<sup>11</sup> schwere D.<sup>12</sup> effektive Hypovolämie<sup>13</sup> diuretikabedingte Hypovolämie<sup>14</sup>

15

**Beinahe-Ertrinken**

Ertrinken<sup>1</sup> Unter-, Eintauchen<sup>2</sup> Erstickungszustand<sup>3</sup> ertrinken; ertränken<sup>4</sup> ertrunken<sup>5</sup> untertauchen<sup>6</sup> unter Wasser<sup>7</sup> Bade-, Ertrinkungsunfälle<sup>8</sup> Ertrunkene<sup>9</sup> Ertrinken im Süßwasser<sup>10</sup> Ertrinken im Salzwasser<sup>11</sup> trockenes Ertrinken<sup>12</sup> Tauchtiefe<sup>13</sup>

16

**decompression sickness** *n term, abbr DCS*

syn **the bends** *n pl clin*, **Caisson** [keɪsən] **disease** *n term*

rel **barotrauma**<sup>1</sup> [æ] *n*, **high-altitude** [æ] or **mountain sickness**<sup>2</sup> *n term*

life-threatening condition occurring in **divers**<sup>3</sup> or **aviators**<sup>4</sup> [eɪ] moving too quickly from higher to lower atmospheric pressures which causes nitrogen [aɪ] to accumulate in the tissue and impair oxygenation

**decompress** *v term* • **(re)compression**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» **Sensory hearing loss**, which develops during the **ascent** [əsent] **phase**<sup>6</sup> of a **saturation** [eɪ] **dive**<sup>7</sup> [daɪv], may be the first symptom of **decompression sickness**. The severity [e] of **acute mountain sickness** correlates with **altitude** and rate of ascent. Underwater diving represents even a greater barometric stress to the ear than flying.

Use **pulmonary or respiratory**<sup>8</sup> / inner-ear / cerebral [s] **decompression sickness** • musculoskeletal / serious **decompression sickness** • gradual / **surgical**<sup>9</sup> [zɪ] / **cerebral**<sup>10</sup> / **cardiac**<sup>11</sup> **decompression** • **decompression** symptoms / **chamber**<sup>12</sup> [tʃeɪ] • **air**<sup>13</sup> / **motion**<sup>14</sup> [oʊ] **sickness** • **otic or inner ear**<sup>15</sup> / pulmonary **barotrauma** • ventilator / extreme / **sinus**<sup>16</sup> [aɪ] **barotrauma** • (sub)acute<sup>17</sup> / chronic / progressive **mountain sickness** • **high-altitude pulmonary edema**<sup>18</sup> [i:] / encephalopathy

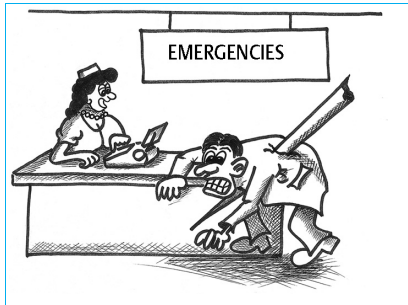
**emergency** [ɪmɜːrdʒənsi] *n* rel **urgency**<sup>1</sup> [zɪ] *n*, **exigency**<sup>2</sup> [ɛksɪdʒənsi] *n*

sudden unforeseen crisis [aɪ] that threatens [ɛ] the lives or welfare of those involved and requires immediate action

**urgent**<sup>3</sup> [zɜːrdʒənt] *adj* • **on an emergency basis**<sup>4</sup> *phr* • **semi-emergency** *adj*

» Obtain **emergency neurosurgical consultation** [ʌ]. **Percutaneous** [eɪ] **catheter drainage** [eɪ] may convert [zɪ] a potential **emergency operation**<sup>5</sup> to an **elective**<sup>6</sup> one. Assign [aɪ] victims for transport in order of relative priority based on the **urgency** of their condition.

Use **to be admitted as an**<sup>7</sup> **emergency** • **Emergency Medical Service**<sup>8</sup> (*abbr EMS*) • **medical**<sup>9</sup> / cardiac / **cardiovascular**<sup>10</sup> / acute abdominal **emergency** • eye / diabetic / acid-base / **surgical emergency** • **dire** [daɪə] or **grave**<sup>11</sup> [eɪ] / life-threatening [ɛ] **emergency** • **emergency room**<sup>12</sup> (*abbr E.R.*) or **department or ward**<sup>12</sup> [ɔː] / **care**<sup>13</sup> / **call**<sup>14</sup> • **emergency intubation** / **endoscopy**<sup>15</sup> • **emergency operation or surgery**<sup>5</sup> / **measures**<sup>16</sup> [ɛz] • **emergency hospitalization** / **treatment or management**<sup>13</sup> / **medicine**<sup>17</sup> • **in an emergency setting**<sup>18</sup> • clinical / **urinary** / **fecal**<sup>19</sup> [i:] **urgency** • **urgency** of treatment • clinical **exigency**



Stop messing around, Mr. Wiggly!  
The faster you let me fill in all these forms,  
the sooner we'll be able to fix you up.

**SOS call or message** [mesɪdʒ] *n* rel **Mayday! Mayday!**<sup>1</sup> [meɪdeɪ] *n*

internationally recognized **distress call**<sup>2</sup> (short for Save Our Souls) sent out **via radio**<sup>3</sup> or Morse code (3 short, 3 long followed by 3 short signals) by ships or aircraft in urgent need of help

» You should send out an **SOS call** for extra **blood supplies**<sup>4</sup> [aɪ]. **Mayday! Mayday!** is the radio signal used by ships in distress. Go get the **lifejackets**<sup>5</sup> while I make the **Mayday call**.

Use **to send out**<sup>6</sup>/make/transmit **an SOS call** • **Mayday call** / **message**

**Dekompressions-, Druckfall-, Caisson-Krankheit**

Barotrauma, Druckverletzung<sup>1</sup> Höhen-, Bergkrankheit<sup>2</sup> Taucher(in)<sup>3</sup> Flugzeugpilot(in)<sup>4</sup> (Re)kompression<sup>5</sup> Aufstieg, -tauchen<sup>6</sup> Gerätetauchen<sup>7</sup> Lungenbarotrauma<sup>8</sup> chir. Dekompression/ Entlastung<sup>9</sup> Hirndekompression<sup>10</sup> Herzkompression<sup>11</sup> Dekompressionskammer<sup>12</sup> Fliegerkrankheit<sup>13</sup> Reise-, Bewegungskrankheit, Kinetose<sup>14</sup> Aero-, Barootitis<sup>15</sup> Aero-, Barosinusitis<sup>16</sup> akute Höhenkrankheit<sup>17</sup> Höhenlungenödem<sup>18</sup>

17

**Notfall**

Dringlichkeit<sup>1</sup> Erfordernis, Notlage, Dringlichkeit<sup>2</sup> dringend<sup>3</sup> notfallmäßig<sup>4</sup> Notoperation, -eingriff<sup>5</sup> Elektivoperation<sup>6</sup> als Notfallpatient(in) eingeliefert werden<sup>7</sup> Notfalldienst<sup>8</sup> internistischer Notfall<sup>9</sup> kardiovaskulärer N.<sup>10</sup> ernster/schwer(wiegender)er N.<sup>11</sup> Notaufnahme<sup>12</sup> Notfallbehandlung<sup>13</sup> Notruf<sup>14</sup> Notfallendoskopie<sup>15</sup> Notmaßnahmen<sup>16</sup> Notfallmedizin<sup>17</sup> im Notfall<sup>18</sup> Stuhldrang<sup>19</sup>

18

**Hilferuf, SOS-Signal**

Mayday (int. Funknotruf abgeleitet von franz. m'aidez)<sup>1</sup> Notruf<sup>2</sup> über Funk<sup>3</sup> Blutkonserven<sup>4</sup> Schwimmwesten<sup>5</sup> einen SOS-Ruf senden<sup>6</sup>

19

**(natural) disaster** [æ] *n* *syn* **catastrophe** [kətæstrəfi] *n*, *rel* **devastation**<sup>1</sup> *n*

sudden extremely destructive events like (earth)quakes, **floods**<sup>2</sup> [ʌ], **landslides**<sup>3</sup>, **tidal waves**<sup>4</sup>, etc. which cause a **high toll of casualties**<sup>5</sup> and **damage** in the social and physical environment of a region

**disastrous**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **catastrophic**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **devastating**<sup>6</sup> [ɛ] *adj* • **devastate**<sup>7</sup> *v*

» How many rescue workers were **deployed**<sup>8</sup> [ɔɪ] to the disaster area? The earthquake has devastated the town. The city, 15 miles from the epicenter, was a scene of devastation.

Use to **avert** [ɜː] a<sup>9</sup> **disaster** • **disaster area**<sup>10</sup> / site [saɪt] / victim / **assistance**<sup>11</sup> • **disaster drills or exercises**<sup>12</sup> / **medicine**<sup>13</sup> • **disaster plan** / **training**<sup>12</sup> / severity [ɛ] scale • **disaster cache** [kæʃ] **medical supplies**<sup>14</sup> [aɪ] • **disastrous impact** / **sequelae**<sup>15</sup> [sɪkwɛlɪː] • to be **disastrous** for sb. • **devastating news** / effect / **injury** • a **trail** [eɪ] of<sup>16</sup> / widespread [aɪ] **devastation** • **catastrophic results** / **drought**<sup>17</sup> [draʊt] / birth defects • **civil** [sɪ] / **family** / **clinical catastrophe** • **ecological or environmental**<sup>18</sup> / **nuclear catastrophe**

**panic** [pænik] *n* & *v* *clin* & *term* *rel* **terror**<sup>1</sup>, **dread**<sup>2</sup> [dred], **fright**<sup>3</sup> [fraɪt] *n*

overwhelming feeling of fear<sup>2</sup> and **apprehension**<sup>4</sup> resulting in paralyzed apathy or hysteric behavior

**panicky**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **dread**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **dreadful**<sup>7</sup> *adj* • **frightening**<sup>8</sup> [fraɪtʰnɪŋ] *adj* → U77-5

» Don't panic, it's O.K. As the patient comes closer to the phobic [fəʊbɪk] stimulus, the anxiety [aɪ] mounts [aʊ] to an intensity reaching panic. Panic spread through the crowd as the shooting continued. Sleep terror is an abrupt [ʌ], terrifying arousal [aʊ] from sleep. The anxiety may be related to a dread of leaving home (i.e. separation anxiety). Primary [aɪ] shock is usually caused by **psychic** [saɪkɪk] or **nervous stimulus** such as **fright** or sudden pain.

Use to **get into**<sup>9</sup> **panic** • **mass**<sup>10</sup> **panic** • **panic reaction**<sup>11</sup> /-stricken / situation • **panic state** / **attack**<sup>12</sup> / **disorder** • **panicky feeling** / person / **decision**<sup>13</sup> [sɪ] • **to panic** over a problem • to live in/be filled with **dread** • **a dread of** leaving home / **dark alleys**<sup>14</sup> [ɪ] • to live in/flee [i:] in/feel/have a **terror** • **terror of spiders** / **drowning**<sup>15</sup> • **night or sleep**<sup>16</sup> **terror** • **stage**<sup>17</sup> / severe / feeling of **fright** • **frightening experience**<sup>18</sup>

**trauma** [ɔɪ] or **accident prevention** *n*

*rel* **precaution**<sup>1</sup> [ɔɪʃ], **prophylaxis**<sup>2</sup> *n* → U9-18; U120-6

programs designed to reduce the incidence of accidents, e.g. by **fencing off**<sup>3</sup> unsafe areas, warning signs, health teaching and instruction about danger zones and risk activities, **safety rules**<sup>4</sup>, etc.

**preventive**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **prevent**<sup>6</sup> *v* • **precautionary** *adj* • **caution**<sup>7</sup> [kɔɪʃən] *v* & *n* • **traumatic** *adj*

» Trauma prevention is still not receiving enough attention, although laws requiring the use of seatbelts and motorcycle helmets have demonstrated a **clear-cut survival benefit**<sup>8</sup>. **Spinal** [aɪ] precautions must be **maintained** [eɪ] where indicated. For contaminated wounds [u:] **antibiotic prophylaxis** is recommended.

Use **injury** / **workplace exposure**<sup>9</sup> [əʊz] / **poison prevention** • sudden death / **suicide**<sup>10</sup> / disease **prevention** • **cancer**<sup>11</sup> [s] / HIV / **pressure sore**<sup>12</sup> **prevention** • **prevention measures**<sup>13</sup> [ɛ] / **program**<sup>14</sup> / and control • **preventive medicine**<sup>15</sup> / (health) **care**<sup>16</sup> • **preventive therapy or treatment**<sup>16</sup> / **measures**<sup>13</sup> • **trauma center** / patient • **traumatic asphyxia** [ɪ] / **event**<sup>17</sup> • **primary**<sup>18</sup> / secondary / tertiary [tɜːrʃɪ] **prevention** • to take<sup>19</sup> **precautions** • **biohazard**<sup>20</sup> / **sanitary** / **isolation precautions** • **barrier**<sup>21</sup> / blood / universal **precautions**

**(Natur)katastrophe**

Verwüstung<sup>1</sup> Überschwemmungen, Flutkatastrophe<sup>2</sup> Erdrutsche<sup>3</sup> Flutwellen<sup>4</sup> große Opferzahl<sup>5</sup> verheerend, katastrophal<sup>6</sup> verwüsten, -richten<sup>7</sup> eingesetzt<sup>8</sup> e. Katastrophe abwenden<sup>9</sup> Katastrophengebiet<sup>10</sup> Katastrophenhilfe<sup>11</sup> Katastrophenübung<sup>12</sup> Katastrophenmedizin<sup>13</sup> bereitgehaltene medizinische Hilfsgüter<sup>14</sup> verheerende Folgen<sup>15</sup> Spuren d. Verwüstung<sup>16</sup> katastrophale Dürre<sup>17</sup> Umweltkatastrophe<sup>18</sup>

20

**Panik; in Panik geraten**

panische Angst, Schrecken<sup>1</sup> Angst, Furcht<sup>2</sup> Schreck(en)<sup>3</sup> Befürchtung, Sorge<sup>4</sup> überängstlich<sup>5</sup> s. fürchten, Angst haben<sup>6</sup> schrecklich, furchtbar<sup>7</sup> erschreckend, furchterregend<sup>8</sup> in Panik geraten<sup>9</sup> Massenpanik<sup>10</sup> Angst-, Kurzschlussreaktion<sup>11</sup> Panikattacke, -anfall<sup>12</sup> panikartiger Entschluss<sup>13</sup> Angst vor dunklen Gängen<sup>14</sup> panische Angst vor d. Ertrinken<sup>15</sup> Pavor nocturnus, Nachtangst<sup>16</sup> Lampenfieber<sup>17</sup> schreckliches Erlebnis<sup>18</sup>

21

**Unfallverhütung**

Sicherheitsvorkehrung, Vorsichtsmaßnahme<sup>1</sup> Vorbeugung, Prophylaxe<sup>2</sup> Absperrten<sup>3</sup> Sicherheitsbestimmungen<sup>4</sup> vorbeugend, Präventiv-<sup>5</sup> verhindern; vorbeugen<sup>6</sup> warnen; Vorsicht, Warnung<sup>7</sup> klarer Überlebensvorteil<sup>8</sup> Arbeitsplatzschutzmaßnahmen<sup>9</sup> Suizidprophylaxe<sup>10</sup> Krebsvorsorge<sup>11</sup> Dekubitusprophylaxe<sup>12</sup> Präventivmaßnahmen, vorbeugende M.<sup>13</sup> Präventionsprogramm<sup>14</sup> Vorsorge-, Präventivmedizin<sup>15</sup> Prophylaxe<sup>16</sup> Trauma, traumat. Ereignis<sup>17</sup> primäre Prophylaxe<sup>18</sup> (Sicherheits)vorkehrungen treffen<sup>19</sup> Schadstoffschutzmaßnahmen<sup>20</sup> Verwendung v. Schutzvorrichtungen<sup>21</sup>

22

## Unit 7 States of Consciousness

Related Units: 5 Injuries, 8 First Aid, 10 Alcohol, 107 Physical Examination, 113 Neurologic Findings, 123 Resuscitation, 126 Surgical Treatment, 134 Perioperative Management, 135 Anesthesiology

**conscious** [kɒːnʃəs] *adj.*, **-ly** *adv.* opposite **unconscious**<sup>1</sup> *adj.*

(i) associated with thought, will, or **perception**<sup>2</sup> (ii) related to consciousness  
(iii) awareness **undulled**<sup>3</sup> [ʌ] by sleep, faintness, or stupor

(**un**/ **sub**)**consciousness**<sup>4</sup> *n.* • **semiconsciousness**<sup>5</sup> *n.* • **self**/ **subconscious** *adj.*

» Some patients may consciously or unconsciously engage in forceful air swallowing. She became conscious<sup>6</sup> after the anesthesia wore off<sup>7</sup>. The clinical definition of consciousness ranges from alert wakefulness<sup>8</sup>, to mild lethargy, stupor, and deep coma.  
Use loss of / to lose / to regain or return to<sup>9</sup> / **clouding of**<sup>11</sup> [aʊ] **consciousness** • **alteration of**<sup>10</sup> [ɔː]/ **altered state of**<sup>10</sup> / to assess the level of **consciousness** • full / **impaired**<sup>11</sup> [eə]/ **compromised**<sup>11</sup> / **dull**<sup>11</sup> / **waxing-waning**<sup>12</sup> [eɪ] **consciousness** • to lapse or fall into<sup>13</sup>/verify **unconsciousness** • to become<sup>13</sup>/be **unconscious** • **unconscious** patient / **guilt**<sup>14</sup> [ɡɪlt]/ motivation [eɪ] • (**un**)**conscious** process / **control** • weight [weɪt]/ **health**<sup>15</sup> [helθ] **conscious**

**Note:** Do not confuse **self-conscious** (**inhibited**)<sup>16</sup> and **self-confident** (=self-reliant)<sup>17</sup> [aɪ] as well as **conscious** and **conscience**<sup>18</sup> [kɒːnʃəns] and **conscientious**<sup>19</sup> [-ʃɪnʃəs].

**alert** [əˈlɜːrt] *adj & v & n term & clin* sim **arousal**<sup>1</sup> [aʊ], **vigilance**<sup>2</sup> [dʒ] *n term*

(adj) be **wide awake**<sup>3</sup> [eɪ], watchful or mentally responsive, fully aware,  
(v) to alarm (n) warning signal

**alertness**<sup>2</sup> *n clin* • **arouse**<sup>4</sup> [aʊ] *v* • **vigilant**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» An alert, awake patient responds immediately and appropriately to all stimuli [aɪ]. A stuporous patient responds only when aroused by **vigorous**<sup>6</sup> [vɪgərəs] stimulation.  
Use quiet/active **alert** state • patient is awake, **alert** and oriented/cooperative • **med-ic-alert** tag<sup>7</sup> • be **alert** to • **be on the** **alert** • mental **alertness** and arousal

**lucid** [ˈluːsɪd] *adj clin*

mentally clear, not confused, and able to be understood, esp between periods of clouded consciousness

**lucidity**<sup>1</sup> *n clin* • **lucidity**<sup>1</sup> *n*

» The level of alertness fluctuated considerably<sup>2</sup> with the occurrence of episodic confusion and lucid intervals<sup>3</sup> suggesting delirium.

Use **lucid periods**<sup>3</sup> [ɪə] / **intervals**<sup>3</sup> / lethargy • **periods of** **lucidity**

**faint** [feɪnt] *v & n & adj term & clin* sim **blackout**<sup>1</sup>, **breakdown**<sup>2</sup> *n clin*, **syncope**<sup>3</sup> [sɪŋkəpi] *n term* → U110-11

(v) to collapse<sup>6</sup> or pass out<sup>4</sup>

(n) temporary loss of consciousness usually due to cerebral hypoxia

**faintness**<sup>5</sup> *n clin* • **break down**<sup>6</sup> *v phr* • **syncope** *adj term*

» Shouting and gentle shaking are usually enough to **revive**<sup>7</sup> [rɪvaɪv] a person who may have fainted or may be just sleeping. The pain may be so severe that the patient faints.

Use to precipitate/produce<sup>8</sup> a **faint** • **syncope** **attack**<sup>1</sup> • **fainting fit or spell**<sup>1</sup> • cardiac / vasovagal [eɪ]/ sudden **faint**

**Note:** As an adjective **faint** is also used in medicine to mean **weak** or **hard to hear**, see etc. (**faint pulse**<sup>9</sup>/heart sound/macules)

**light-headed** *adj clin* sim (**to feel**) **faint**<sup>1</sup>*phr*, **drowsy**<sup>2</sup> [draʊzi], **dizzy**<sup>3</sup> [dɪzi] *adj clin*

to feel weak or dizzy and likely to lose consciousness

**light-headedness**<sup>4</sup> *n clin* • **drowsiness**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» Both drowsiness and stupor are usually **attended by**<sup>6</sup> some degree of mental confusion. Faintness, dizziness, or light-headedness may indicate an **impending**<sup>7</sup> loss of consciousness.

**bewusst**

bewusstlos; unbewusst<sup>1</sup> Wahrnehmung<sup>2</sup> ungetrüb<sup>3</sup> (Unter)bewusstsein<sup>4</sup> Dämmerzustand<sup>5</sup> B. erlangen<sup>6</sup> nachlassen<sup>7</sup> Vigilanz, Wachheit<sup>8</sup> B. wiedererlangen<sup>9</sup> Bewusstseinsstörung, -veränderung<sup>10</sup> Bewusstseinstrübung<sup>11</sup> schwankende Bewusstseinslage<sup>12</sup> Bewusstsein verlieren, bewusstlos werden<sup>13</sup> nicht bewusste Schuld<sup>14</sup> gesundheitsbewusst<sup>15</sup> befangen, gehemmt<sup>16</sup> selbstbewusst<sup>17</sup> Gewissen<sup>18</sup> gewissenhaft<sup>19</sup>

1

**wach, rege; warnen, alarmieren; Alarm**

Erwachen, Erhöhung d. Wachheitsgrades, Arousal<sup>1</sup> Wachheit, Vigilanz<sup>2</sup> hellwach<sup>3</sup> (auf)wecken, erregen<sup>4</sup> wach, rege<sup>5</sup> stark<sup>6</sup> mediz. Informationsplakette<sup>7</sup> einsatzbereit/ auf der Hut sein<sup>8</sup>

2

**bei Bewusstsein, hell, klar (denkend)**

Klarheit, bei klarem Verstand<sup>1</sup> stark schwanken<sup>2</sup> helle Augenblicke/ Phasen<sup>3</sup>

3

**ohnmächtig werden; Ohnmacht; schwach**

(kurze) Ohnmacht, Blackout<sup>1</sup> Kollaps<sup>2</sup> Synkope<sup>3</sup> ohnmächtig werden<sup>4</sup> Schwäche(gefühl)<sup>5</sup> kollabieren<sup>6</sup> ins Bewusstsein zurückholen<sup>7</sup> Ohnmacht verursachen/ auslösen<sup>8</sup> schwacher Puls<sup>9</sup>

4

**benommen**

einer Ohnmacht nahe sein<sup>1</sup> schläfrig, benommen<sup>2</sup> schwindlig<sup>3</sup> Benommenheit<sup>4</sup> Schläfrigkeit<sup>5</sup> einhergehen mit<sup>6</sup> bevorstehend, drohend<sup>7</sup>

5



**pass out** *v phr inf* *sim* **be out**<sup>1</sup> *v jar*,  
opposite **come to**<sup>2</sup> *v clin*, BE **come round**<sup>2</sup> *phr*

to lose consciousness

» *When she heard [h3:rd] about her father's death she passed out.*

**unresponsive** *adj term & jar* opposite **responsive**<sup>1</sup> *adj term & jar*

(i) failing to respond to sensations or verbal stimuli (ii) failing to respond to treatment

(un)**responsiveness**<sup>2</sup> *n term* • **respond (to)**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **response**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» *Certain psychiatric [sa:ki:ɒ'tri:k] states can mimic<sup>5</sup> coma by producing an apparent [eə] unresponsiveness.*

Use **unresponsive pupils**<sup>6</sup> [pju:p'plz] / to stimuli / to light • not **responsive** to therapy

**disorientation** *n* *sim* **confusion**<sup>1</sup> [-fju:ʒ'n] *n*,

**lose one's bearings**<sup>2</sup> [eə] *phr inf*

be **bewildered**<sup>3</sup> [ɪ] or **perplexed**<sup>4</sup>; reactions to one's **surroundings**<sup>5</sup> (esp. time, place, person) are inappropriate

(dis)**oriented** *adj* • **confused**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **orientation** *n*

» *Patients with psychotic disorders may be fully oriented or exhibit a disorientation as to person that is at least as great as their disorientation as to time and place.*

Use patient is **disoriented** and confused • **well-oriented to time, place, and person**<sup>6</sup> • **disoriented** behavior • acute **disorientation** • **confusional state**<sup>7</sup>

**stunned** [stʌnd] *adj inf* *sim* **dazed**<sup>1</sup> [deɪzd] *adj inf*,

\***spaced out**<sup>2</sup> [eɪ] *adj* → U11-10

(i) knocked out by a heavy blow

(ii) **mental numbness**<sup>3</sup> [nʌmnəs] esp. due to a shock, great surprise or intense light

» *Suspect lightning injury<sup>4</sup> in persons found dazed or unconscious after a thunder-storm<sup>5</sup>.*

**obtunded** [ʌ] *adj term* *sim* **blunt**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ], **dull**<sup>2</sup> [ʌ] *adj & v clin*

reduced level of consciousness; insensitive to pain as a result of an **analgesic**<sup>3</sup> [-dʒi:sɪk] or **anesthetic**<sup>4</sup>

**obtundent**<sup>5</sup> *adj & n* • **obtundation** *n*

» *If lavage [lʌvʌ:ʒ] is done in an obtunded or comatose patient, prophylactic insertion of a cuffed [ʌ] endotracheal [eɪk] tube<sup>6</sup> is recommended to prevent aspiration. Brain function may range from alertness to obtundation.*

Use be/become **obtunded** • **deeply<sup>7</sup> obtunded** • state of **mental** / prolonged **obtundation**

**stupor** [st(j)u:pə] *n term*

**impaired**<sup>1</sup> [eə] or reduced consciousness with marked decrease in responsiveness to stimulation

(semi-)**stuporous**<sup>2</sup> *adj term* • **stupefaction**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **stupeficient**<sup>4</sup> [-feɪ'ʃnt] *adj & n*

» *In stuporous catatonia the patient is subdued<sup>5</sup>, mute<sup>6</sup> [mju:t], and negativistic, accompanied by varying combinations of staring [eə], rigidity [dʒɪ], and cataplexy.*

Use **alcoholic** / **anergic** [ə'nɜ:dʒɪk] / **benign** [aɪn] / **catatonic**<sup>7</sup> / depressive / **delusion**<sup>8</sup> / epileptic / **postseizure**<sup>9</sup> [ɪz] **stupor** • **stuporous** patient

**lethargy** [leθə:dʒɪ] *n term* *sim* **apathy**<sup>1</sup> [æ] *n*, → U113-2f

opposite **hyperactivity**<sup>2</sup>, **agitation**<sup>3</sup> [dʒ] *n term*

a state of abnormal **indifference**<sup>4</sup>, **listlessness**<sup>5</sup>, **sluggishness**<sup>6</sup> [ʌ], **lassitude**<sup>6</sup>, **languor**<sup>6</sup> [gə] or stupor

**lethargic** *adj term* • **apathetic** *adj* • **hyperactive** *adj* • **agitated**<sup>7</sup> *adj*

» *Apathy, drowsiness, and confusion improve more gradually. Hepatic encephalopathy may begin with irritability<sup>8</sup> and mild confusion and slowly progress to agitation, lethargy, change in personality and difficulties in judgment<sup>9</sup> and orientation.*

Use **fatigue** [fəti:g] and<sup>10</sup> **lethargy** • depression, **withdrawal**<sup>11</sup> [-drɪ:ʊ] and **apathy** • **apathetic** state / hyperthyroidism [aɪ]

**in Ohnmacht fallen, ohnmächtig werden**

bewusstlos/weg sein<sup>1</sup> wieder zu sich kommen<sup>2</sup>

6

(i) **nicht ansprechbar** (ii) **nicht reagierend/ansprechend**

ansprechbar<sup>1</sup> Ansprechbarkeit, Reaktionsfähigkeit, Reagibilität<sup>2</sup> reagieren, ansprechen (auf)<sup>3</sup> Reaktion<sup>4</sup> vortäuschen<sup>5</sup> lichtstarre Pupillen<sup>6</sup>

7

**Desorientiertheit, fehlende Orientierung**

Verwirrtheit, Verwirrung<sup>1</sup> Orientierung verlieren<sup>2</sup> verwirrt<sup>3</sup> verblüfft, perplex<sup>4</sup> Umgebung<sup>5</sup> orientiert zu Zeit, Raum, Person<sup>6</sup> Verwirrheitszustand<sup>7</sup>

8

(i) **betäubt (durch einen Schlag)** (ii) **benommen, (wie) gelähmt, fassungslos**

benommen, verwirrt<sup>1</sup> (wie) unter Drogen, weg, high<sup>2</sup> Benommenheit<sup>3</sup> Verletzung durch Blitzschlag<sup>4</sup> Gewitter<sup>5</sup>

9

**teilnahmslos, abgestumpft, gedämpft**

abgestumpft; abstumpfen<sup>1</sup> teilnahmslos; abstumpfen, dämpfen<sup>2</sup> Schmerzmittel<sup>3</sup> Narkotikum<sup>4</sup> dämpfend; dämpfendes Mittel<sup>5</sup> Endotrachealtubus m. Cuff<sup>6</sup> stark gedämpft<sup>7</sup>

10

**Stupor, Reaktionsunfähigkeit**

eingeschränkt<sup>1</sup> stuporös<sup>2</sup> Betäubung, Benommensein<sup>3</sup> betäubend; Betäubungsmittel<sup>4</sup> gedämpft<sup>5</sup> stumm<sup>6</sup> katatoner Stupor<sup>7</sup> schizophrener S.<sup>8</sup> Stupor nach epileptischem Anfall<sup>9</sup>

11

**Lethargie**

Apathie<sup>1</sup> Hyperaktivität<sup>2</sup> psychomotor. Unruhe, Agitiertheit<sup>3</sup> Gleichgültigkeit<sup>4</sup> Antriebs-, Teilnahmslosigkeit<sup>5</sup> Trägheit, Mattigkeit<sup>6</sup> agitiert<sup>7</sup> Gereiztheit<sup>8</sup> Urteilsvermögen<sup>9</sup> Müdigkeit u. Lethargie<sup>10</sup> Zurückziehen<sup>11</sup>

12

**somnolence** *n term & clin* → U72-1 *sim* **sopor**<sup>1</sup> [sɔʊpə] *n term*

(i) semicomatose state (ii) state of unnatural drowsiness

**somnolent** *adj term* • **soporific**<sup>2</sup> *adj & n* • **soporiferous**<sup>2</sup> *adj*

» The patient complained of excessive daytime somnolence, morning sluggishness and fatigue. Her lethargy deepened into somnolence.

Use episodes of **somnolence** • **somnolent** and lethargic / metabolic rate

**coma** [koumə] *n term & clin*

**profound** [aʊ] **unconsciousness**<sup>1</sup> from which a patient cannot be aroused even by powerful stimuli [aɪ]

**comatose**<sup>2</sup> [-tous] *adj term* • **semi-comatose** *adj* • **coma-like**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» CNS symptoms include lethargy, coma, and convulsions [Δ]. Pinpoint pupils<sup>4</sup>, coma, and hypertension are suggestive [dʒɛ] of<sup>5</sup> cerebellar hemorrhage [e].

Use to lapse into<sup>6</sup>/be in/lie in / **induced**<sup>7</sup> **coma** • alcoholic / deep hepatic / diabetic [e] or hypoglycemic [-glaisi:] / **thyrotoxic**<sup>8</sup> [aɪ] / uremic [i:] **coma** • Glasgow **coma scale**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] • to be/become **comatose** • **deeply**<sup>10</sup> **comatose**

**trance** [træn's||tra:n's] *n term*

(i) altered state of consciousness as in hypnosis [ɪ], hysteria [ɪ], or ecstasy (ii) dazed or stuporous state (iii) **detachment**<sup>1</sup> [æ:tʃ] from one's surroundings (e.g. in deep concentration or day-dreaming<sup>2</sup>)

» A history of **trancelike states**<sup>3</sup> during which simple motor behaviors persist **corroborates**<sup>4</sup> the presence of daytime somnolence.

Use alcoholic / **hypnotic**<sup>5</sup> / **induced**<sup>5</sup> / **death**<sup>6</sup> **trance** • **trance-like** state / attack

**delirium** *n term*

clouded state of consciousness and confusion, marked by difficulty in sustaining attention to stimuli, **anxiety**<sup>1</sup> [æŋzaiəti], illusions and hallucinations, **disordered sleep-wakefulness cycles**<sup>2</sup> [sai:kli:z], motor disturbances; etc.

**delirious**<sup>3</sup> *adj term*

» Delirium is an acute confusional state associated with a change in level of consciousness ranging from lethargy and withdrawal to agitation. Symptoms and signs of delirium tremens include profoundly delirious states associated with **tremulousness**<sup>4</sup> and agitation.

Use delirious patient • **delirium tremens**<sup>5</sup> (abbr DT) / of **persecution**<sup>6</sup> • acute / **exhaustion**<sup>7</sup> [ɪgzɔ:stʃ'n] / traumatic / **febrile**<sup>8</sup> [e||i:] **delirium**

**persistent vegetative** [vɛdʒ-] **state** *n term, abbr PVS* *syn* **vigil** [dʒ] **coma** *n, rel* **akinetic** [eikainetik] **mutism**<sup>1</sup> [jɪ:] *n term*

state of unresponsiveness due to diffuse cortical or brain stem damage<sup>2</sup>

» PVS patients may show some improvement from an initially comatose state and appear to be awake but lie motionless and without evidence of awareness or higher mental activity.

**brain death** [deθ] *n term* *syn* **irreversible coma** *n term*

**cessation** [s] and **irreversibility**<sup>1</sup> of brain function; legal definitions vary from state to state

**brain-dead**<sup>2</sup> *adj term*

» The criteria [aɪ] for brain death must **persist**<sup>3</sup> for 6 hours with a confirmatory **isoelectric** [aɪ] (flat) EEG<sup>4</sup>.

Use to confirm/declare/establish<sup>5</sup>/mimic **brain death** • diagnosis of / diagnostic criterion [kraɪtɪəri'n] for **brain death** • **brain death** legislation [dʒ]

(i) **schläfrige Teilnahmslosigkeit**

(ii) **Somnolenz**  
Sopor, schlafähnl. Zustand<sup>1</sup> einschläfernd; Schlafmittel<sup>2</sup>

13

**Koma**

tiefe Bewusstlosigkeit<sup>1</sup> komatös<sup>2</sup> komaartig<sup>3</sup> stecknadelkopfgroße Pupillen<sup>4</sup> sind ein Anzeichen für<sup>5</sup> ins Koma fallen<sup>6</sup> künstl. Tiefschlaf<sup>7</sup> thyrotoxisches Koma<sup>8</sup> Glasgow-Komaskala<sup>9</sup> tief komatös<sup>10</sup>

14

**Trance(zustand)**

Losgelöstsein<sup>1</sup> Tag-, Wachträumen<sup>2</sup> tranceähnliche Zustände<sup>3</sup> bestätigt, erhärtet<sup>4</sup> hypnotischer Schlaf<sup>5</sup> Scheintod<sup>6</sup>

15

**Delir, Delirium**

ängstl. Erregung, Angst(zustände)<sup>1</sup> gestörter Schlaf-Wach-Rhythmus<sup>2</sup> delirant<sup>3</sup> Zittern<sup>4</sup> Delirium tremens, Alkohol-, Entzugsdelir<sup>5</sup> Verfolgungswahn<sup>6</sup> Erschöpfungsdelirium<sup>7</sup> Fieberdelir<sup>8</sup>

16

**apallisches Syndrom, Coma vigile, Wachkoma**  
akinetischer Mutismus<sup>1</sup> Hirnstammschädigung<sup>2</sup>

17

**Hirntod**

irreversibler Ausfall<sup>1</sup> hirntot<sup>2</sup> bestehen, andauern<sup>3</sup> isoelekt./ Nulllinien-EEG<sup>4</sup> Hirntoddiagnose sicherstellen<sup>5</sup>

18

## Unit 8 First Aid

Related Units: **5** Injuries, **6** Accidents & Emergencies, **16** Paramedical Staff, **17** Medical Equipment, **7** Consciousness, **106** Fractures, **63** Posture & Position, **108** Clinical Signs, **140** Wound Care, **123** Resuscitation, **125** Critical Care

**first aid** [eɪd] *n* *rel* **field measures**<sup>1</sup> [eʒ], **help**<sup>2</sup>, **assistance**<sup>2</sup>, **attention**<sup>3</sup> *n* → U142-29

emergency [æɪ] care [keə] given before regular medical aid can be obtained [eɪ] **aid**<sup>4</sup> (in) *v* • **aid**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **aide**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **self-help**<sup>7</sup> *n* • **assist**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **attend** (to)<sup>8</sup> *v*

» As a first aid measure [meɪʒə], place the patient in a shady [eɪ], cool place, and remove clothing. First aid at the scene [si:n] of an accident should be administered by trained personnel whenever possible. Field placement of intravenous [ɪ:] lines<sup>9</sup> may increase the chances of infection. Patients commonly seek [i:] emergency medical attention for hemarthroses [ɪ:], hematuria, and epistaxis.

Use to give or provide<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] / seek first aid • basic / emergency / life-saving / advanced (abbr AFA) first aid • first aid measures<sup>11</sup> / techniques / instruction [ɪ] program<sup>12</sup> • first aid kit<sup>13</sup> / post or station<sup>14</sup> • aid and attendance • to aid in diagnosis • hearing<sup>15</sup> / mutual [ju:] / food / Band-aid • home health / nurse's<sup>16</sup> [ɜ:] aide • first responder • field conditions / hospital<sup>17</sup> / personnel • field paramedics<sup>18</sup> / treatment • sterile / surgical<sup>19</sup> [ɜ:] field • to call for/summon<sup>20</sup> [ɪ] / request/ seek help • emergency help • to ask for/seek/lend or provide<sup>21</sup> assistance • disaster<sup>22</sup> (medical) / military / aeromedical<sup>23</sup> assistance • assistance team • to require/seek/ get/focus<sup>24</sup>/pay<sup>25</sup> attention • in need of / urgent [ɜ:] / to seek medical<sup>26</sup> attention

### erste Hilfe

Maßnahmen vor Ort<sup>1</sup> Hilfe<sup>2</sup> Aufmerksamkeit, Beachtung; med. Behandlung, Versorgung<sup>3</sup> unterstützen, beistehen, helfen<sup>4</sup> Hilfe(stellung); Hilfsmittel<sup>5</sup> Helfer(in), Berater(in)<sup>6</sup> Selbsthilfe<sup>7</sup> s. kümmern um<sup>8</sup> Venenkatheter<sup>9</sup> erste Hilfe leisten<sup>10</sup> Erste-Hilfe-Maßnahmen<sup>11</sup> Erste Hilfe-Kurs<sup>12</sup> Verbandskasten<sup>13</sup> Erste-Hilfe-Station<sup>14</sup> Hörgerät<sup>15</sup> Krankenpflegehelfer(in)<sup>16</sup> Feldlazarett<sup>17</sup> Sanitäter<sup>18</sup> Operationsfeld<sup>19</sup> Hilfe holen<sup>20</sup> Hilfe leisten<sup>21</sup> Katastrophenhilfe<sup>22</sup> Hilfe durch d. Flugrettungsdienst<sup>23</sup> Aufmerksamkeit richten<sup>24</sup> Beachtung schenken<sup>25</sup> s. in ärztl. Behandlung begeben, einen Arzt aufsuchen<sup>26</sup>

1

**rescue** [reskjʊ:] *v* & *n* *rel* **save**<sup>1</sup> [seɪv], **secure**<sup>2</sup> [sɪkjʊə], **relieve**<sup>3</sup> [rɪli:v] *v*

(v) to save a person who is in a dangerous situation or remove [ɪ:] a victim from the danger zone [zəʊn]

**rescuer**<sup>4</sup> *n* • life-saving *adj* • (un)safe<sup>5</sup> *adj* • relief<sup>6</sup> *n* • safeguard<sup>7</sup> [eɪ] *v* & *n*

» They were rescued from the blazing [eɪ] drilling rig<sup>8</sup>. It must not interfere [-ɪə] with<sup>9</sup> the rescue efforts<sup>10</sup>. Wearing a safety belt<sup>11</sup> can save your life. Immobilization is not complete until the patient is secured to the spine [aɪ] board<sup>12</sup> with straps. The tiring [aɪ] rescuer must signal for a change. It is erroneous to assume that during storms it is safe to leave the shelter and venture [-tʃə] into the open<sup>13</sup> once lightning strikes.

Use to come to the or sb.'s<sup>14</sup> rescue • victim / air-sea<sup>15</sup> / fire rescue • cave [eɪ] / avalanche [-æntʃ] rescue • rescue team or squad<sup>16</sup> [skwɔ:d] / worker / personnel • rescue services / activities<sup>10</sup> / treatment • rescue operation<sup>10</sup> / attempt<sup>17</sup> / vessels<sup>18</sup> • rescue breathing<sup>19</sup> [ɪ:] / blanket • search-and-rescue (abbr SAR) mission / dog • to save the patient's life / sb. from drowning<sup>20</sup> [aʊ] • to save the eye / a finger • to relieve suffering [ɪ] / distress / pain • to secure the patient's wellbeing / the airway<sup>21</sup> • to secure sth. with tapes [eɪ] / it to the arm • life/ limb<sup>22</sup>. [lɪm] / time-saving • safe distance / location / travel / procedure [si:] • professional rescuer • rescuer's skills<sup>23</sup> / hand / arm / mouth • rescuer exhaustion [ɪ:] or fatigue<sup>24</sup> • 2-rescuer CPR<sup>25</sup> • disaster<sup>26</sup> / famine [æ] relief • relief work / supplies [aɪ] / agency [eɪdʒ] or organization<sup>27</sup>

### retten (aus), bergen, befreien; Rettung, Bergung

retten, bewahren, -schützen<sup>1</sup> sichern, sicherstellen; festmachen<sup>2</sup> helfen, befreien; erleichtern, lindern<sup>3</sup> Retter(in)<sup>4</sup> sicher, in Sicherheit<sup>5</sup> Erleichterung, Hilfe<sup>6</sup> schützen; Schutz<sup>7</sup> brennende Bohrinnsel<sup>8</sup> behindern<sup>9</sup> Rettungsmaßnahmen, -aktion<sup>10</sup> Sicherheitsgurt<sup>11</sup> Rettungstrage<sup>12</sup> s. ins Freie wagen<sup>13</sup> jem. z. Hilfe kommen<sup>14</sup> Luftrettung über See<sup>15</sup> Rettungsmannschaft<sup>16</sup> Rettungsversuch<sup>17</sup> Bergungsschiffe<sup>18</sup> Mund-zu-Mund-Beatmung<sup>19</sup> jem. vor d. Ertrinken retten<sup>20</sup> d. Atemwege freihalten<sup>21</sup> zur Rettung d. Arms/ Beins<sup>22</sup> Können d. Retters/-in<sup>23</sup> Ermüdung d. R.<sup>24</sup> Zwei-Helfer-Reanimationsmethode<sup>25</sup> Katastrophenhilfe<sup>26</sup> Hilfsorganisation<sup>27</sup>

2

**evacuate** [ɪvækju:et] *v* *sim* **extricate**<sup>1</sup>, **retrieve**<sup>1</sup> [ɪ:], **free**<sup>1</sup> *v*, *rel* **transport**<sup>2</sup> *v*

(i) move out of an unsafe location into safety (ii) to excrete [ɪ:] or discharge from the body **evacuation**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **extrication**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **retrieval**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **transport(ation)**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» A helicopter equipped for medical evacuation should be requested. To conserve [ɜ:] oxygen, lower flow rates may be used until the victim can be evacuated to a lower altitude [æ]. Casualty mitigation<sup>6</sup> through early warning and evacuation is hard to manage, since tornadoes are difficult to predict and the time frame for evacuation or protective cover is brief. This will help you to reach and extricate persons who are trapped<sup>7</sup>. Ensure that the airway remains patent<sup>8</sup> while the victim is transported to the hospital.

Use to evacuate victims / homes<sup>9</sup> / from danger • emergency / victim<sup>10</sup> / surgical<sup>11</sup> evacuation • emergency / rescue and / (aero-)medical retrieval • retrieval team / flight • ground / air / aeromedical<sup>12</sup> transport • (non)medical / emergency transport • prompt / rapid transport • transport officer<sup>13</sup> • victim<sup>14</sup> extrication • extrication time<sup>15</sup> / device<sup>16</sup> [-aɪs] / from the vehicle

### (i) evakuieren, bergen

(ii) (aus)räumen, entleeren befreien (aus)<sup>1</sup> (ab)transportieren, befördern<sup>2</sup> Evakuierung, Räumung<sup>3</sup> Befreiung<sup>4</sup> Transport, Beförderung<sup>5</sup> Reduktion d. Opferzahl<sup>6</sup> eingeschlossen sein, festsitzen<sup>7</sup> frei<sup>8</sup> Wohnhäuser evakuieren/ räumen<sup>9</sup> Evakuierung d. Opfer<sup>10</sup> chir. Ausräumung<sup>11</sup> Flugrettungstransport<sup>12</sup> Transportleiter<sup>13</sup> Befreiung d. Opfer(s)<sup>14</sup> Dauer d. Bergung<sup>15</sup> Bergevorrichtung<sup>16</sup>

3

**safety** [seɪfti] *n*    *sim* **security**<sup>1</sup> [sɪkjʊəəti] *n*

opposite **danger**<sup>2</sup>, **risk**<sup>3</sup>, **hazard**<sup>3</sup> [hæzəd] *n* → U124-2; U91-5

a place or state in which there is no **danger**; **security** refers to protection against potential **threats**<sup>4</sup> [e]

(**in**)**secure**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **insecurity**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **endanger**<sup>7</sup> *v* • **dangerous**<sup>8</sup> *adj* • **risky**<sup>9</sup> *adj*

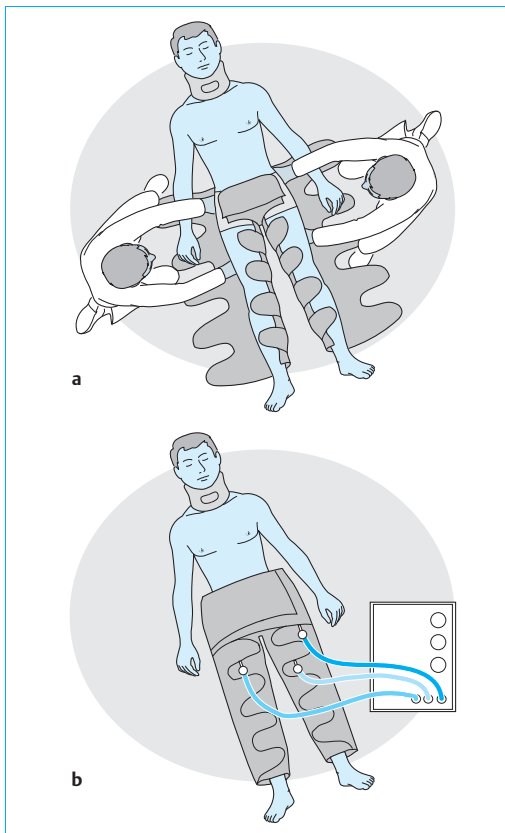
» The press cannot be **denied** [aɪ] **access**<sup>10</sup> to a **disaster site**<sup>11</sup> unless they interfere [-ɪə] with **ongoing rescue efforts**, even if they **jeopardize**<sup>7</sup> [dʒəpədaɪz] their own **safety** in the process. My life was in **danger**. "Splint<sup>12</sup> them where they lie" is a **time-honored rule**<sup>13</sup> of emergency care of **fractures** unless it is necessary to **remove an injured patient** from **imminent danger**<sup>14</sup> of fire, explosion, etc.

Use to run for/bring into/be in/reach/ensure<sup>15</sup> [ɪnʃʊə] **safety** • a place of<sup>16</sup> / **public**<sup>17</sup> [ʌ] / child **safety** • helicopter / firearm / radiation<sup>18</sup> [eɪ] **safety** • **safety** needs / precautions<sup>19</sup> [dɪ:] / regulations • **safety first program**<sup>20</sup> / buoy<sup>21</sup> [bu:ɪ||bɔɪ] / belt • **safety goggles**<sup>22</sup> / check / pin<sup>23</sup> / valve<sup>24</sup> [æ] • airport / (false) **sense of**<sup>25</sup> **security** • **security** measures / provisions<sup>19</sup> [ɪz] • **security risk**<sup>26</sup> / considerations / guard<sup>27</sup> [ɑ:] • **security** personnel / check<sup>28</sup> / system [ɪ] / alert<sup>29</sup> [ɜ:] • financial / **social**<sup>30</sup> **security** • to be in/pose little **danger** • **danger zone**<sup>31</sup> / **signal**<sup>32</sup> / list / to travelers • to take the/be at **risk** • **risk** factor / **assessment**<sup>33</sup> / reduction [ʌ] • to **pose a potential**<sup>34</sup> **hazard** • **health**<sup>35</sup> / environmental / safety **hazard** • radiation / contamination **hazard** • occupational<sup>36</sup> / without undue<sup>37</sup> **hazard** • **hazard area**<sup>31</sup> • to feel **secure** • **dangerous** activities / chemicals [ke-] / **poisons**<sup>38</sup> • **dangerous** situations / disease • **risky** maneuver [aɪ] / procedure [si:] / test

### Sicherheit, Gefahrlosigkeit

Sicherheit, Geborgenheit, Sicherung, Schutz<sup>1</sup> Gefahr<sup>2</sup> Risiko, Gefahr<sup>3</sup> Bedrohungen<sup>4</sup> (un)sicher<sup>5</sup> Ungewissheit, -sicherheit, Verunsicherung<sup>6</sup> gefährden<sup>7</sup> gefährlich, nicht sicher<sup>8</sup> risikoreich, riskant<sup>9</sup> Zutritt verwehrt<sup>10</sup> Unglücksort<sup>11</sup> schienen<sup>12</sup> altbewährte Regel<sup>13</sup> drohende Gefahr<sup>14</sup> Sicherheit gewährleisten<sup>15</sup> sicherer Ort<sup>16</sup> öffentl. Sicherheit<sup>17</sup> Strahlensicherheit<sup>18</sup> Sicherheitsvorkehrungen<sup>19</sup> Unfallverhütungsprogramm<sup>20</sup> Rettungsboje<sup>21</sup> Schutzbrille<sup>22</sup> Sicherheitsnadel<sup>23</sup> Sicherheitsventil<sup>24</sup> Gefühl d. Sicherheit<sup>25</sup> Sicherheitsrisiko<sup>26</sup> Wache, Sicherheitsbeamte(r)<sup>27</sup> Sicherheitskontrolle<sup>28</sup> Sicherheitsalarm<sup>29</sup> Sozialhilfe<sup>30</sup> Gefahrenzone<sup>31</sup> Warnsignal<sup>32</sup> Risikoeinschätzung<sup>33</sup> e. mögl. Gefahr/ Risiko darstellen<sup>34</sup> Gesundheitsrisiko<sup>35</sup> Berufsrisiko<sup>36</sup> ohne großes Risiko<sup>37</sup> gefährl. Gifte<sup>38</sup>

4



Military antishock trousers:

- (a) the garment is placed around the patient's legs  
 (b) the MAST garment is inflated

**ambulance** *n* *rel* **emergency medical service** (*abbr* EMS) **helicopter**<sup>1</sup> *n* *term*

specially equipped automobile to transport casualties and patients to and from hospitals

- » The loading (transport) officer maintains [eɪ] a log<sup>2</sup> of each departing ambulance's destination. Obtain [eɪ] and deploy<sup>3</sup> [ɔɪ] additional ambulance resources through reserve [ɜː] units, back-up arrangements<sup>4</sup> [eɪ], mutual [mjuːtʃʊəl] aid<sup>5</sup>, etc. Request assistance from the aeromedical helicopter<sup>1</sup> unit.

Use to call an **ambulance** • community / air<sup>6</sup> / first-in<sup>7</sup> / EMS<sup>8</sup> **ambulance** • **ambulance** car / service<sup>9</sup> / men or crew<sup>10</sup> [kruː] / driver<sup>11</sup> / attendant or technician<sup>12</sup> [ɪ] • **ambulance** dispatch center / carry(ing) chair • **ambulance trolley**<sup>13</sup> / loading bay<sup>14</sup> [beɪ] • to approach a **helicopter** • **helicopter** rotor vibrations / landing zone

**paramedic** *n* *sim* **emergency medical technician**<sup>1</sup> [teknɪʃˈn] *n* *term*, *abbr* EMT

person (not a physician [ɪ] or nurse [ɜː]) trained to give emergency medical treatment before or during transportation to hospital and to assist medical professionals (e.g. in the military)

**paramedical**<sup>2</sup> [pærəmedɪkəl] *adj* *term* • **paramedic**<sup>3</sup> *adj* → U16-9

- » One paramedic assumes the role of medical commander. Endotracheal [k] intubation is a skill typically learned at the paramedic level. Check if radio contact<sup>4</sup> with the emergency transport technicians is available. Well-trained EMTs can prepare patients for transport quickly and perform life-support procedures en route.

Use EMT / field / first-in<sup>5</sup> **paramedic** • **paramedical** staff<sup>6</sup> / personnel<sup>6</sup> / specialist • certified / basic<sup>7</sup> / trained **EMT** • intermediate [iː] / paramedic or advanced<sup>8</sup> **EMT** • **paramedic** team / unit / manual • **paramedic services**<sup>9</sup> / division

**alarm** [ə'lɑːrm] *n* & *v* *sim* **alert**<sup>1</sup> [ɜː] *n* & *v*, **warning**<sup>2</sup> *n* & *adj*, *rel* **report**<sup>3</sup> *n* & *v*

(v) to warn others to a danger or fill sb. with apprehension<sup>4</sup> or anxiety [æŋzɪə'tɪ]

**alarming**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **alerting**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **hyperalert**<sup>6</sup> [aɪ] *adj* • (**fore**)**warn**<sup>7</sup> *v*

- » There was a brief false alarm when a rescue worker reported hearing a voice in the wreckage<sup>8</sup> [r]. Be alert for possible concurrent [ɜː] trauma<sup>9</sup> [ɔː] with occult internal bleeding. The laboratory must be alerted. Provide advance warning to receiving [iː] hospitals so that appropriate measures [eɪ] may be taken. When there is a report of a trapped victim, a fire rescue team is dispatched in addition to the EMS unit to clear fire hazards, wash away spilled gasoline, etc.

Use to be **alarmed** by the cries • to give or raise [eɪ] or sound the<sup>10</sup> **alarm** • to cause/set the<sup>11</sup>/trigger an **alarm** • smoke / fire / security / false alarm • **alarm bell**<sup>12</sup> / system<sup>13</sup> / response<sup>14</sup> / clock<sup>15</sup> • to be alert to danger • to be on the<sup>16</sup>/put sb. on alert • red<sup>17</sup> **alert** • to raise/issue [ɪ] [sɪjuː] / heed<sup>18</sup> [iː] warnings • early / advance / without<sup>19</sup> **warning** • **warning sign**<sup>20</sup> / label [eɪ] / symptoms [ɪ] • initial [ɪ] / preliminary<sup>21</sup> / red<sup>17</sup> **report** • **alarming figures**<sup>22</sup> / rate / level / increase

**tourniquet** [tɜːr|tʊə'nɪkɪt] *n* *term*

compression bandage applied to arrest a hemorrhage or to facilitate obtaining blood samples

- » Control bleeds by pressure or elevation or by tourniquet if these are not successful. Use a tourniquet to obtain a bloodless field. Correct tightness [taɪt-] of the tourniquet is hard to assess.

Use to apply or place<sup>1</sup> a **tourniquet** • to tighten [taɪt'n]/inflate [eɪ]/deflate<sup>2</sup>/release [iː]/remove the tourniquet • **tourniquet** control / effect / time<sup>3</sup> / constriction • **tourniquet** ischemia<sup>4</sup> [ɪskɪ'miə] / injury / test<sup>5</sup> • arm / limb [lɪm] / **pneumatic**<sup>6</sup> [n(j)uː-] / rotating / multiple [Δ] **tourniquets**

**ambulance dispatch center** [dɪspætʃ sentə] *n* *term*

communications center which receives incoming emergency calls, assesses capacity needs<sup>1</sup> and resources available at local hospitals and coordinates the rescue operation

**dispatch**<sup>2</sup> *v* • **dispatcher**<sup>3</sup> *n*

- » The first paramedic on the scene of a multicasualty event<sup>4</sup> provides an initial report by radio to the dispatch center, relaying<sup>5</sup> such information as type of incident, estimated number of victims and severity of injuries<sup>6</sup>, presence of any hazard, additional resources needed, etc.

Use central<sup>7</sup> / (local) EMS **dispatch center** • **dispatch information**<sup>8</sup> / personnel / system<sup>9</sup> • to **dispatch** ambulances / mobile EMS personnel • central dispatcher

**Rettungs-, Krankenwagen**

Notarzt-, Rettungshubschrauber<sup>1</sup>  
Aufzeichnungen<sup>2</sup> einsetzen<sup>3</sup> Hilfs-  
einrichtungen<sup>4</sup> gegenseitige Hilfe<sup>5</sup>  
Flugrettung<sup>6</sup> erstretreffender Ret-  
tungswagen<sup>7</sup> Notarztwagen<sup>8</sup> Ret-  
tungsdienst<sup>9</sup> Mannschaft d. Ret-  
tungswagen<sup>10</sup> Krankenwagenfah-  
rer(in)<sup>11</sup> Rettungssanitäter(in)<sup>12</sup>  
Fahrgestell f. Patiententrage<sup>13</sup>  
Laderampe f. Rettungswagen<sup>14</sup> 5

**Rettungsassistent(in)**

Rettungssanitäter, -helfer(in)<sup>1</sup> pa-  
ramedizinisch<sup>2</sup> Sanitäts-, Assis-  
tenz-<sup>3</sup> Funkkontakt<sup>4</sup> erster Sani-  
täter am Unfallort, Ersthelfer(in)<sup>5</sup>  
ärztl. Hilfspersonal<sup>6</sup> Rettungshel-  
fer(in)<sup>7</sup> Rettungsassistent(in)<sup>8</sup>  
Sanitätsdienst<sup>9</sup> 6

**Alarm, Besorgnis; alarmieren, warnen, beunruhigen**

Alarm; alarmieren<sup>1</sup> Warnung; war-  
nend, Warn-<sup>2</sup> Bericht; Meldung,  
Reportage; berichten, melden<sup>3</sup> Be-  
sorgnis<sup>4</sup> alarmierend, beunruhi-  
gend<sup>5</sup> aufgeputscht, hypervigil<sup>6</sup>  
(vor)warnen<sup>7</sup> Trümmer, Wrack(tei-  
le)<sup>8</sup> Begleitverletzung<sup>9</sup> Alarm  
schlagen<sup>10</sup> d. Wecker stellen<sup>11</sup>  
Alarmglocke<sup>12</sup> Alarmanlage<sup>13</sup>  
Alarmreaktion<sup>14</sup> Wecker<sup>15</sup> einsatz-  
bereit/ auf der Hut sein<sup>16</sup> Alarm-  
stufe Rot<sup>17</sup> Warnungen beachten<sup>18</sup>  
ohne Vorwarnung<sup>19</sup> erstes Anzei-  
chen<sup>20</sup> vorläufiger Bericht<sup>21</sup> be-  
sorgniserregende Zahlen<sup>22</sup> 7

**Tourniquet, Druckmanschette, Stauschlauch, -binde**

einen Stauschlauch anlegen<sup>1</sup> Luft  
aus d. Manschette ablassen<sup>2</sup> Dauer  
d. Blutleere<sup>3</sup> tourniquetbedingte  
Ischämie<sup>4</sup> Rumpel-Leede Stauer-  
such<sup>5</sup> Druckluftmanschetten<sup>6</sup> 8

**Rettungsleitstelle**

erhebt Bedarf an Ressourcen<sup>1</sup>  
(ent)senden<sup>2</sup> Einsatzleiter(in)<sup>3</sup>  
Massenunfall<sup>4</sup> weiterleiten<sup>5</sup>  
Schweregrad d. Verletzungen<sup>6</sup> zen-  
trale Rettungsleitstelle<sup>7</sup> Einsatz-  
meldung<sup>8</sup> Verteilersystem<sup>9</sup> 9

**foreign body** *n term, abbr FB* *sim* **foreign** [fɔɪr̩n] **material** or **matter**<sup>1</sup> *n clin*

material that has been introduced into the tissues or cavities of the body and is not readily absorbable

» In **choking** [tʃoʊkɪŋ] **victim**<sup>2</sup> **cardiac arrest** may respond promptly to removal of foreign bodies by the Heimlich maneuver. The abrupt [Δ] onset of cough [kɔːf] or choking in **toddlers**<sup>3</sup> should heighten [haɪt̩n] suspicion of foreign body aspiration. The foreign body lodges<sup>4</sup> [lɒːdʒɪz] in the supraglottic airway.

Use to aspirate/search for/locate<sup>5</sup> a foreign body • to dislodge/remove<sup>6</sup> a foreign body • **tracheobronchial**<sup>7</sup> [k] / **esophageal** [dʒɪː] / **intraocular**<sup>8</sup> / **conjunctival** [dʒʌ] **FB** • **intravesical**<sup>9</sup> / **corneal** / **nasal** [eɪ] **FB** • **urethral** [iː] / **vaginal** [dʒ] **FB** • **ingested** [dʒe] / **swallowed** / **aspirated** / **impacted**<sup>10</sup> **FB** • **retained** [eɪ] / **infected** / **sharp** **FB** • **penetrating** / **migratory**<sup>11</sup> [aɪ] / **minute**<sup>12</sup> [mɪn(j)uːt] **FB** • **foreign body aspiration**<sup>13</sup> / **obstruction** [Δ] / **extraction** or **removal**<sup>14</sup> [uː] • **foreign body sensation**<sup>15</sup> / **granuloma**<sup>16</sup> / **reaction**<sup>17</sup> • **foreign body giant** [dʒaɪːnt] **cells**<sup>18</sup> / **embolus**<sup>19</sup> • **foreign object** / **protein**<sup>20</sup> / **particle**<sup>1</sup> • **foreign** antigen / **serum** [ɪə] / **organism** / **cells**

**Heimlich maneuver** [mɛnuːvə] *n term*

*syn* **subdiaphragmatic** [sʌbdɪəfræɡ-] or **abdominal thrusts** [Δ] *n term*

technique [teknɪk] for **dislodging**<sup>1</sup> and **clearing**<sup>2</sup> [ɪə] a foreign body from the airway of a choking victim by **forceful upward thrusts**<sup>3</sup> to the victim's upper abdomen just below the **rib cage**<sup>4</sup> [keɪdʒ]

**maneuver** *v* • **maneuverability** *n* • **thrust**<sup>5</sup> [Δ] *v* • **thrusting** *adj & n*

» Foreign bodies obstructing the airway may be relieved by performing the Heimlich maneuver repeatedly until successful. **Back blows**<sup>7</sup> [oʊ] or the Heimlich maneuver may clear the obstruction. In children younger than one year back blows and chest thrusts are recommended instead of the Heimlich maneuver, which should not be attempted.

Use to perform the **Heimlich maneuver** • **supine**<sup>8</sup> [aɪ] / prompt **Heimlich maneuver** • **life-saving** / **manual**<sup>9</sup> / **resuscitative**<sup>10</sup> [Δs] **maneuvers** • **respiratory** / **airway** (clearance) **maneuvers** • **airway** foreign body / **jaw-thrust** [dʒɔː] and **chin-lift**<sup>11</sup> [tʃɪn] **maneuver** • **to deliver**<sup>12</sup> **thrusts** • **upper**<sup>13</sup> / forcible **abdominal thrusts** • **manual** / chest / **upward thrusts**

**breathing bag** [brɪːðɪŋ bæɡ] *n clin*

*syn* **resuscitation** [rɪsʌsɪteɪʃn] or **reservoir bag, Ambu bag**<sup>®</sup> *n term*

self-refilling device [dɪvʌs] used to assist in manual ventilation

» Provide supplemental oxygen by mask (nonbreathing, if available), **nasal prongs**<sup>1</sup> [ɔː], or **Ambu bag**. **Maintain** [eɪ] ventilation with oxygen delivered by a bag-mask combination at a high flow rate until **tracheal** [k] intubation can be performed.

Use **manual resuscitation**<sup>2</sup> / **rebreathing**<sup>3</sup> **bag** • self-refilling / nonbreather reservoir **bag** • **bag-valve-mask** [æ] **device** or **combination**<sup>4</sup> • **bag-(valve)-mask unit**<sup>4</sup> / **-breathing**<sup>5</sup> / **-(valve)-mask ventilation**<sup>5</sup> • **hand bag** **respiratory assistance**<sup>5</sup>

**medical** or **military antishock trousers** *n term, abbr MAST* → U124-4f

inflatable garment placed around a patient's legs and abdomen to reduce perfusion to the lower body and thereby direct cardiac output to the vital organs, e.g. for field treatment of hypovolemia, shock, etc.

» MAST also raise peripheral resistance and therefore increase coronary blood flow. We have an **ET tube**<sup>1</sup> in place, 2 IVs with **lactated Ringer's**<sup>2</sup> wide open, and MAST garment inflated. The MAST suit [suːt] is of proved value for in-hospital tamponade of bleeding in patients with severe pelvic fractures and massive pelvic bleeding. If a patient arrives with MAST in place, it should be deflated slowly and only after the patient has been stabilized hemodynamically.

Use to apply/remove/deflate [eɪ] **the MAST garment** • **MAST garment or suit**<sup>3</sup> / **device**<sup>3</sup> • **antishock** **measures** [eʒ] • **pneumatic** [n(j)uː-] **antishock garment**<sup>3</sup>

**logroll** [lɒːgrɔʊl] *v term*

special rolling technique used to transfer patients with suspected spinal [aɪ] lesions<sup>1</sup> [ɪz] to **preclude**<sup>2</sup> [uː] further injury [ɪndʒəɪ]

» Logroll the patient to maintain axial orientation if cervical spine injury is suspected. She was logrolled onto the spine board with manual cervical spine traction maintained throughout<sup>3</sup>.

Use **logroll(ing) technique**<sup>4</sup> [teknɪk]

**Fremdkörper, FK**

Fremdstanz, -körper, körperfremdes Material<sup>1</sup> Erststickungsopfer<sup>2</sup> Kleinkinder<sup>3</sup> sitzt fest<sup>4</sup> e. Fremdkörper lokalisieren<sup>5</sup> e. Fremdkörper entfernen<sup>6</sup> tracheobronchialer F.<sup>7</sup> intraokulärer F.<sup>8</sup> intravesikaler F.<sup>9</sup> festsitzender F.<sup>10</sup> wandernder F.<sup>11</sup> winziger F.<sup>12</sup> Fremdkörperaspiration<sup>13</sup> Fremdkörperentfernung<sup>14</sup> Fremdkörpergefühl<sup>15</sup> Fremdkörpergranulom<sup>16</sup> Fremdkörperreaktion<sup>17</sup> Fremdkörperriesenzellen<sup>18</sup> Fremdkörperembolus<sup>19</sup> Fremdprotein<sup>20</sup> 10

**Heimlich-Handgriff**

Mobilisieren<sup>1</sup> Beseitigen, Entfernen<sup>2</sup> nach oben gerichtete Druckstöße<sup>3</sup> Brustkorb<sup>4</sup> manövrieren<sup>5</sup> drücken, stoßen<sup>6</sup> Schläge zw. d. Schulterblätter<sup>7</sup> Heimlich-Handgriff beim liegenden Patienten<sup>8</sup> Handgriffe, manuelle Methoden<sup>9</sup> Reanimationsmaßnahmen<sup>10</sup> Anheben d. Kinns u. Verschieben d. Unterkiefers, Esmarch-Handgriff<sup>11</sup> Stöße versetzen<sup>12</sup> Druckstöße auf den Oberbauch<sup>13</sup>

11

**Beatmungs-, Ambu-Beutel**

Nasenklemme<sup>1</sup> Handbeatmungs-, Atembeutel<sup>2</sup> Rückatmungsbeutel<sup>3</sup> Beatmungsbeutel mit Maske<sup>4</sup> Maskenbeatmung<sup>5</sup>

12

**Antischockhose**

Endotrachealtubus<sup>1</sup> Ringer-Laktat-Lösung<sup>2</sup> Antischockhose<sup>3</sup>

13

**atraumatisch umlagern (bei Verdacht auf WS-Verletzung)**

mit Verdacht auf Wirbelsäulenverletzungen<sup>1</sup> verhindern<sup>2</sup> die ganze Zeit über<sup>3</sup> en-bloc Umlagerungstechnik/ Mobilisation (bei WS-Verletzten)<sup>4</sup> 14

**extrication collar** [kɔːlɪə] *n term* → U141-9 *rel* **vacuum mattress**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

rigid cervical collar for prehospital use<sup>2</sup> when a casualty is suspected to have sustained [ɛɪ] spinal trauma

- » **Proper sizing**<sup>3</sup> of the extrication collar is extremely important. The 2<sup>nd</sup> care provider<sup>4</sup> [aɪ] should then place a firm extrication collar around the neck. Split-scoop [u:] stretchers and vacuum mattresses are more appropriate for transfer than rigid spinal boards, which should be reserved for primary extrication from vehicles, rather than as devices for transporting patients.

Use to apply an<sup>5</sup> / cervical [sɜː] / adjustable [Δ] **extrication collar** • one-piece / Stif-neck<sup>6</sup> **extrication collar** • semirigid [semɪrɪdʒɪd] cervical<sup>7</sup> / stiff / c-/ floatation<sup>8</sup> collar • vacuum (limb) [lɪm] splint<sup>9</sup> / pump<sup>10</sup> [Λ]

15

**stretcher** [stretʃə] *n* *syn* litter *n BE*,

*rel* spine [aɪ] board<sup>1</sup>, backboard<sup>1</sup>, scoop [sku:p] **stretcher**<sup>2</sup> *n term*

equipment for transporting people who are ill, wounded [wʌɪ] or dead which usually consists of a sheet of canvas<sup>3</sup> stretched between two poles<sup>4</sup>; spine boards are used for prehospital patient transport and extrication from vehicles

- » Gently [dʒ] maneuver the stretcher under the patient without rolling or lifting. Transfer the patient from the ambulance stretcher<sup>5</sup> to the emergency department stretcher, taking care to maintain cervical spine and back immobilization in multiple blunt [Λ] injuries<sup>6</sup>. Immobilize the patient on a rigid spine board using tape and lateral restraints<sup>7</sup> [ɛɪ] (sandbags). Prolonged use of spine boards can rapidly lead to pressure injuries.

Use to place on<sup>8</sup>/strap on/fall from a **stretcher** • road / folding / split scoop<sup>9</sup> **stretcher** • stretcher bearer<sup>10</sup> [ɛə] / case<sup>11</sup> • long<sup>12</sup> / short / wood / plastic spine board • fiber-glass / helicopter / rigid<sup>13</sup> spine board • pediatric backboard • rescue<sup>1</sup> board • orthopedic [i:] scoop stretcher • scoop and run time / attitude / versus stay & play<sup>14</sup>

16

**sniffing position** *n jar* → U63-7f

*rel* stable side/lateral position<sup>1</sup>, jaw thrust<sup>2</sup> [Λ], head tilt<sup>3</sup> *n term*

the head is extended on the slightly flexed neck and the chin is elevated to align [əlaɪn] the oral, pharyngeal, and tracheal [k] planes which ensures patency [ɛɪ] of the airway and allows for endotracheal intubation

- » Place the patient in the sniffing position. The sniffing position permits visualization of the glottis and vocal cords and allows passage of the endotracheal tube<sup>4</sup>. After managing life-threatening problems turn the casualty to a stable side position. Place the victims in a stable lateral position and keep them warm until they can be transported to a medical facility. Jaw thrust without head tilt should be done if cervical spine injury is possible.

Use prone<sup>5</sup> [ou] / semiprone or lateral recumbent<sup>6</sup> [Δ] **position** • (dorsal) recumbent<sup>7</sup> / recovery<sup>8</sup> / semi-Fowler<sup>9</sup> **position** • (left/ right) lateral (decubitus)<sup>10</sup> / supine<sup>11</sup> **position**

17

**salvage** [sælˌvɪdʒ] *v* *sim* preserve<sup>1</sup> [prɪsɜːrv], spare<sup>2</sup> [speə] *v term*

to save from death, damage or destruction

salvage<sup>3</sup> *n term* • salvageable<sup>4</sup> *adj* • salvageability *n* • preservation<sup>5</sup> *n*

- » Intensive care salvages some critically ill head-injured patients. By the time shock develops the opportunity for salvage has been lost. These patients may be spared emergency endoscopy. The nerve-sparing approach [-ou] usually results in preservation of potency.

Use to salvage vision<sup>6</sup> [ɪʒ] / a kidney • to merit<sup>7</sup> / limb / foot / bladder **salvage** • salvage therapy / surgery<sup>8</sup> / rate • salvageable blood / teeth<sup>9</sup> / case • to be worth salvaging • organ-/ nerve<sup>10</sup>-sparing • to preserve blood supply<sup>11</sup> / the spleen [i:] • to preserve potency<sup>12</sup> [ou] / cognitive functions • preservation of sight<sup>13</sup> [sat] / (renal) function<sup>14</sup> • preservation of host [ou] tissue / cellular integrity

18

## HWS-Stützkrawatte, -Schiene, Immobilisationskragen

Vakuummatratze<sup>1</sup> Einsatz im präklin. Bereich<sup>2</sup> Wahl d. richtigen Größe<sup>3</sup> Helfer(in)<sup>4</sup> HWS-Schiene anlegen<sup>5</sup> Stifneck<sup>6</sup> Halskrause<sup>7</sup> Rettungskragen<sup>8</sup> Vakuum-Schiene<sup>9</sup> Absaugpumpe<sup>10</sup>

88

## (Kranken)trage, Tragbahre

Rettungstrage, Spine-Board<sup>1</sup> Schaufeltrage, -bahre<sup>2</sup> Leinentuch<sup>3</sup> Stangen<sup>4</sup> Rettungstrage<sup>5</sup> stumpfe Verletzungen<sup>6</sup> seitliche Abstützung<sup>7</sup> auf eine Trage legen<sup>8</sup> zweiteilige Schaufeltrage<sup>9</sup> Krankenträger<sup>10</sup> nicht gehfähige(r) Patient(in)<sup>11</sup> langes Rettungsbrett<sup>12</sup> Rettungsbrett<sup>13</sup> möglichst rasch einladen u. abtransportieren oder am Unfallort stabilisieren<sup>14</sup>

16

## Schnüffelstellung

stabile Seitenlage, NATO-Lagerung<sup>1</sup> Vorschieben d. Unterkiefers<sup>2</sup> Überstrecken d. Kopfes<sup>3</sup> Endotrachealtubus<sup>4</sup> Bauchlage<sup>5</sup> Sims-Position<sup>6</sup> Rückenlage m. angewinkelten, gespreizten Beinen<sup>7</sup> Erholungs-, Recoveryposition<sup>8</sup> halbsitzende Lagerung<sup>9</sup> Seitenlage(rung)<sup>10</sup> Rückenlage<sup>11</sup>

17

## retten, erhalten

erhalten, schonen<sup>1</sup> (ver)schonen, ersparen<sup>2</sup> Rettung, Erhaltung<sup>3</sup> erhaltungsfähig<sup>4</sup> Erhaltung, Schonung<sup>5</sup> d. Sehkraft erhalten<sup>6</sup> erhaltenswert sein<sup>7</sup> Erhaltungsoperation<sup>8</sup> (noch) zu rettende Zähne<sup>9</sup> nervschonend<sup>10</sup> d. Blutversorgung erhalten<sup>11</sup> d. Potenz erhalten<sup>12</sup> Erhaltung d. Sehkraft<sup>13</sup> Erhaltung d. Nierenfunktion<sup>14</sup>

18

**triage** [ˈtriːdʒ] *n term*

process of classifying patients by categories and **allocating**<sup>1</sup> aid on the basis of relative **urgency**<sup>2</sup> [ˈɜːrdʒɪnəs] or of likely benefit from medical treatment

» *Triage at the accident scene seeks to identify the patients who are most at risk of dying from their injuries and thus would benefit most from*<sup>3</sup> a trauma center.

Use to perform/begin/permit **triage** • disaster / **prehospital**<sup>4</sup> / telephone **triage** • emergency room / **4-level**<sup>5</sup> / psychiatric [saɪkɪˈætrɪk] **triage** • **triage** examination / system / decision / category • **triage** location / **tag**<sup>6</sup> / priority [aɪˈɔː] / **officer**<sup>7</sup>

**Sichtung, Triage**

zuteilen<sup>1</sup> Dringlichkeit<sup>2</sup> am meisten profitieren von<sup>3</sup> präklinische Triage<sup>4</sup> Vierstufen-Triage, Triage m. vier Kategorien<sup>5</sup> Triage-Anhängekarte<sup>6</sup> Triageleiter(in)<sup>7</sup>

19

**Unit 9 Drugs & Remedies**

Related Units: **121** Pharmacologic Treatment, **92** Pharmacologic Agents, **93** Anesthetics, **U 102** History

**medication** *n term* *syn* **medicine** *n clin & inf*, **medicament** *n rare*

(i) medicinal **preparations**<sup>1</sup>

(ii) **administration**<sup>2</sup> of remedies

**medicinal**<sup>3</sup> *adj term* • **medical**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **medicate**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **self-medication** *n*

» *Relapses*<sup>6</sup> can be treated with a second **course**<sup>7</sup> of these medications. Don't forget to take your medicine! Are you on any medication?

Use to take/start/receive [iː]/continue/discontinue<sup>8</sup>/review<sup>9</sup> [rɪvjuː] **medication** • oral / **pre**<sup>10</sup> / transdermal / **sodium-containing**<sup>11</sup> / pain **medication** • preoperative / daily **schedule** [skɪʃ] of / **life-long**<sup>12</sup> **medication** • **medicinal drug**<sup>13</sup> / **herbs**<sup>14</sup> [zɜːrbz] / iron supplementation [ʌ] • **medical therapy**<sup>15</sup> • **medicated** bath / **shampoo**<sup>16</sup> / **soap** [oʊ] / area

**remedy** [ˈremədi] *n & v clin* *rel* **remediation**<sup>1</sup> [iː] *n term*

(n) substance or treatment that can **cure**<sup>2</sup> [kjʊə] a disease or **relieve**<sup>3</sup> pain or other symptoms (v) to cure

**remediable**<sup>4</sup> [iː] *adj clin* • **remedial**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» *The cause of his hearing loss (impaction of ear wax)<sup>6</sup> was easily remediable. Hot showers are an age-old remedy for itching disorders<sup>7</sup>. Obstructive [ʌ] causes must be excluded or remedied.*

Use pain-relieving / **herbal**<sup>8</sup> (folk) / **home**<sup>9</sup> / **over-the-counter**<sup>10</sup> / **cold**<sup>11</sup> **remedy** • **remedy for** internal/external use<sup>12</sup> / burns • **remediable** condition

(i) **Medikament(e)**(ii) **Arznei(mittel)verordnung, -anwendung, Medikation**

Präparate<sup>1</sup> Verabreichung<sup>2</sup> medizinisch, Heil-<sup>3</sup> medizinisch, ärztlich<sup>4</sup> medikamentös behandeln<sup>5</sup> Rückfälle, Rezidive<sup>6</sup> Zyklus, Kur<sup>7</sup> Medikament absetzen<sup>8</sup> Med. überprüfen<sup>9</sup> Prämedikation<sup>10</sup> natriumhaltiges Med.<sup>11</sup> Dauermedikation<sup>12</sup> Arzneidroge<sup>13</sup> Heilkräuter<sup>14</sup> medikamentöse Behandlung<sup>15</sup> medizinisches Shampoo<sup>16</sup>

1

**(Heil-/ Arznei)mittel; bessern, heilen**

Behandlung, Besserung<sup>1</sup> kurieren, heilen<sup>2</sup> lindern<sup>3</sup> heil-, beherrbar<sup>4</sup> heilend, Heil-<sup>5</sup> Zerstärkung<sup>6</sup> bewährtes Mittel gegen Juckreiz<sup>7</sup> pflanzliche Droge<sup>8</sup> Hausmittel<sup>9</sup> rezeptfreies Arzneimittel<sup>10</sup> Mittel gegen Erkältungen<sup>11</sup> M. zur äußeren Anwendung<sup>12</sup>

2

**drug** [ʌ] *n term & clin & inf* *sim* **agent**<sup>1</sup> [ˈeɪdʒənt] *n term* → U11-1; U92-2

(i) any substance other than food used for preventing, diagnosing, treating, and curing disease (ii) in genE it also refers to stimulating or depressing substances that can be **addictive**<sup>2</sup>, esp. **narcotics**<sup>3</sup>

**drug-induced** [ɪːs] *adj* • **drug-related** *adj* • **drug**<sup>4</sup> *v usu pass*

» *This is the drug of choice<sup>5</sup> for the treatment of uncomplicated urinary tract infections.*

Use to administer<sup>6</sup>/be on or take<sup>7</sup> **drugs** • street or illicit<sup>8</sup> / recreational<sup>9</sup> / designer / potent<sup>10</sup> / powerful **drug** • crude<sup>11</sup> / scheduled / (non)prescription<sup>12</sup> / over-the-counter<sup>13</sup> (abbr OTC) **drug** • oral / experimental or investigational new<sup>14</sup> (abbr IND) **drug** • **drugs for hay** [heɪ] fever<sup>15</sup> [iː] • **drug** administration / dependence<sup>16</sup> / dispensing<sup>17</sup> / incompatibility<sup>18</sup> / interaction / -related deaths<sup>19</sup> • sustained/prolonged release<sup>20</sup> **drug** • **adverse drug event** (abbr ADE) or **drug reaction**<sup>21</sup> (abbr ADR) • therapeutic / blocking / antiallergic **agent** • **drug-induced jaundice**<sup>22</sup> [dʒʌːndɪs] / parkinsonism

**Note:** In view of its double meaning the expression *drug* is best avoided when talking to patients about *medication* as it may give rise to misunderstandings. Among physicians and in the literature, however, the term is widely used. While patients are likely to interpret *Is he on drugs?* as a reference to cocaine or LSD, doctors commonly use terms like *drug-related disease* or *drug therapy*<sup>23</sup>.

(i) **Medikament, (Arznei)mittel**

(ii) **(Rausch)droge, Suchtgift** Wirkstoff<sup>1</sup> abhängig/ süchtig machend<sup>2</sup> Narkotika, Rausch-, Betäubungsmittel<sup>3</sup> (starke) Medikamente geben, D. nehmen, betäuben<sup>4</sup> M. der Wahl<sup>5</sup> M. verabreichen<sup>6</sup> D. nehmen, drogenabhängig sein<sup>7</sup> illegale Droge<sup>8</sup> Psychopharmakon<sup>9</sup> hochwirksames M.<sup>10</sup> Ausgangsdroge<sup>11</sup> rezeptpflichtiges Medikament<sup>12</sup> rezeptfreies M.<sup>13</sup> Testmed.<sup>14</sup> M. gegen Heuschnupfen<sup>15</sup> Drogenabhängigkeit<sup>16</sup> Arzneimittelhandel<sup>17</sup> Arzneistoffinkompatibilität<sup>18</sup> Drogentote<sup>19</sup> Depot-, Retardpräparat<sup>20</sup> Nebenwirkung, unerwünschte Arzneimittelwirkung<sup>21</sup> Drogenikterus<sup>22</sup> medikamentöse Behandlung<sup>23</sup>

3



**pharmacy** [fɑ:rməsi] *n clin & term* *sim* **chemist(s)**<sup>1</sup> [kɛmɪst] *n*

- (i) **retail**<sup>2</sup> store where **medicinal preparations and supplies**<sup>3</sup> are sold  
 (ii) a branch of pharmacology

**pharmacist**<sup>4</sup> *n term* • **druggist**<sup>5</sup> *n inf* • **pharma(co)-** *comb* → U92-1

- » In general, the **prescribing physician**<sup>6</sup> provides or asks the **dispensing pharmacist** to provide written drug use information for the patient.

Use **hospital**<sup>7</sup> **pharmacy** • **pharmacist-on-call**<sup>8</sup> • **pharmaco**chemistry /**therapy**<sup>9</sup> /logy

**Note:** In America *drugstores* are retail shops which sell drinks, snack, cosmetics, household goods, etc.; they may, however, include a *pharmacy* where prescription drugs are dispensed.

**dispense** *v term*

to prepare, **compound**<sup>1</sup> [au], **label**<sup>2</sup> [ei], sell and give out medications to patients

**dispensatory**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **dispensary**<sup>4</sup> *n clin* • **dispenser**<sup>5</sup> *n*

- » Today these drugs are increasingly dispensed **without prescription**<sup>6</sup>. It may not be sold or dispensed directly to the patient. Dispense in **dropper bottle**<sup>7</sup> or **amber**<sup>8</sup> [æ] glass container.

Use **dispensing chemist**<sup>9</sup> (BE) • soap **dispenser**

**dosage** [dousɪdʒ] **form** *n term* *sim* **dosage formulation**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

describes how a drug is **supplied**<sup>2</sup> (as a tablet or **cream** [i:], **powdered** [au], in liquid form, etc.)  
**formulate**<sup>3</sup> *v term*

- » Special **coatings**<sup>4</sup> [ou] are used to **retard**<sup>5</sup> the **disintegration**<sup>6</sup> of solid dosage forms in the **gut**<sup>7</sup> [ʌ]. This solution is specifically formulated for exclusive application to the oral mucosa.

Use **oral**<sup>8</sup> / **topical** / **solid**<sup>9</sup> / liquid / **oral suspension**<sup>10</sup> **dosage form** • **parenteral** / **pediatric** [iæ] / **controlled- or slow-release**<sup>11</sup> **dosage form** • **commercial** [ɜ:] / **metered** [i:] **spray**<sup>12</sup> / water-in-oil / **delayed**<sup>11</sup> [ei] / **extended**<sup>11</sup> / **prompt-release**<sup>13</sup> / capsule **formulation**



... strictly for the birds!

**tablet** *n & v, abbr tabs* *sim* **capsule**<sup>1</sup> [kæpsʊl] *n term & clin*, **pill**<sup>2</sup> *n clin & inf*

solid dosage form varying in shape (disk-like) and size, and method of manufacture (**molded**<sup>3</sup> [ou], **compressed**<sup>4</sup>); a caplet is a mixture between a tablet and a capsule-shaped dosage form

- » **Dissolve**<sup>5</sup> the tablet under the tongue. **Swallow** [v:] the capsule **whole**<sup>6</sup>. Take the tablet with a glass of water.

Use **enteric-coated**<sup>7</sup> / **chewable**<sup>8</sup> [u:] / **scored**<sup>9</sup> / **sublingual tablet** • **buffered** [ʌ] / **half-, regular-, double-strength**<sup>10</sup> / rapidly dissolving **tablet** • **dispersible**<sup>11</sup> [ɜ:] / **slow-release**<sup>12</sup> [i:] / **coated**<sup>13</sup> / **dry-coated**<sup>14</sup> / **film-coated**<sup>15</sup> **tablet** • (hard/soft) **gelatin** [dʒe] / **translucent** [u:s] **capsule** • **sleeping** / **contraceptive**<sup>16</sup> [se] / **multiphasic**<sup>17</sup> [ei] **pill**

(i) **Apotheke**

(ii) **Pharmazie, Pharmazeutik**  
 Apotheke u. Drogerie<sup>1</sup> Einzelhandels-<sup>2</sup> Arzneimittel u. Ärztebedarf<sup>3</sup> Apotheker(in), Pharmazeut(in)<sup>4</sup> Apotheker(in), Drogist(in)<sup>5</sup> verschreibende(r) Arzt/ Ärztin<sup>6</sup> Anstalts-, Klinikapotheke<sup>7</sup> diensthabende(r) Apoth.<sup>8</sup> medikamentöse Behandlung<sup>9</sup>

4

(Arznei) (zu)bereiten u. abgeben

(ab)mischen<sup>1</sup> etikettieren<sup>2</sup> Arzneimittel-Codex, Ergänzung z. amlt. Arzneibuch<sup>3</sup> Anstalts-, Klinikapotheke<sup>4</sup> Spender, Dispenser<sup>5</sup> rezeptfrei<sup>6</sup> Tropfflasche<sup>7</sup> bernsteinfarben<sup>8</sup> Apotheker(in), Drogist(in)<sup>9</sup>

5

**Arznei-, Darreichungsform**

Zubereitungsform<sup>1</sup> hergestellt, vertrieben<sup>2</sup> zubereiten<sup>3</sup> Überzug<sup>4</sup> verzögern<sup>5</sup> Zerfall<sup>6</sup> Darm<sup>7</sup> perorale Arzneiform<sup>8</sup> feste A.9 Mixtur<sup>10</sup> Retardpräparat<sup>11</sup> Dosieraerosol<sup>12</sup> schnell zerfallende Arznei-zubereitung<sup>13</sup>

6

**Tablette; tablettieren**

Kapsel<sup>1</sup> Pille<sup>2</sup> geformt<sup>3</sup> gepresst<sup>4</sup> zergehen lassen<sup>5</sup> unzerkaut schlucken<sup>6</sup> magensaftresistente T.7 Kautablette<sup>8</sup> T. m. Teilungs-/ Bruchkerbe<sup>9</sup> forte Tabl.<sup>10</sup> Brause-, Lösungs-tablette<sup>11</sup> Retardpräparat<sup>12</sup> überzogene Tabl., Dragee<sup>13</sup> Manteltablette<sup>14</sup> Filmtablette<sup>15</sup> Antibaby-pille<sup>16</sup> Mehrphasenpille<sup>17</sup>

7

**ointment** [ɔɪ] *n term or salve* [sæv] *n clin, abbr oint.* or **UNG** *sim gel*<sup>1</sup> [dʒel], **paste**<sup>2</sup> [eɪ], **cream**<sup>3</sup>, **balm** [bæɪm||bɑ:m] or **balsam**<sup>4</sup> [bɔ:] *n clin* semisolid medicinal preparations for application to the skin which are **suspended**<sup>5</sup> in fatty or **greasy**<sup>6</sup> [i:] material

**creamy** *adj*

» Oils, **powders**<sup>7</sup>, and ointments should not be routinely used. *Lindane 1% cream is also effective but may irritate the skin. Apply*<sup>8</sup> the ointment topically and **spread**<sup>9</sup> [e] it with **gauze**<sup>10</sup> [gɔ:z].

Use to use/rub in an **ointment** • **ophthalmic** [ɒ:fθæɪ-] or **eye**<sup>11</sup> / **rectal** / **emulsifying**<sup>12</sup> [Δ] / 5% / water-soluble **ointment** • **emollient** or **soothing**<sup>13</sup> [u:ð] / **steroid** [ɪə:] / **iodine**<sup>14</sup> [aɪ] **ointment** • **ointment** dosage form / tube / application • coal tar / lidocaine / film-forming / regular-strength **gel** • (emollient) dental / **zinc**<sup>15</sup> (oxide) / gelatin [dʒeɪ] **paste** • corticosteroid / (sun block) lip **balm** • vaginal [dʒ] / **moisturizing**<sup>16</sup> [tʃ] / **cold**<sup>17</sup> **cream**

**powder** [paʊdər] *n & v term & clin* *sim pellet*<sup>1</sup> *n term & clin*

solid preparation dispensed in the form of small particles; pellets are small cylindrical or ovoid pills of compressed agents, e.g. steroid hormones for subcutaneous implantation and slow release

**powdery**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **powdered**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» Dissolve one 2-gram package [pækɪdʒ] of powder in a full glass (8 ounces [au]) and stir [stɜ:r] well<sup>4</sup>. The **diluent**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] is slowly injected into the vial [vaɪəl] which is then gently [dʒ] swirled<sup>6</sup> [ɜ:] until the pellet is dissolved.

Use absorbent / oral / topical / **antifungal**<sup>7</sup> / **activated charcoal**<sup>8</sup> [tʃ] / **sprinkle**<sup>9</sup> / **aerosol** [æə] **powder** • **freeze-dried**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] **pellets**

**tincture** [tɪŋktʃər] *n term* *sim lotion*<sup>1</sup> [ləʊʃn] *n term & clin*

medicinal agents suspended in an alcohol-containing solution

» Preparations containing tincture of benzoin can be removed by **swabbing**<sup>2</sup> them with rubbing alcohol. The gel is spread onto the ulcer as a thin continuous film. Apply enough gel and rub in<sup>3</sup> gently.

Use **iodine**<sup>4</sup> [aɪə] / **hydroalcoholic**<sup>5</sup> / **benzoin** [z] **opium**<sup>6</sup> **tincture** • **shake**<sup>7</sup> / drying / (back) **rub**<sup>8</sup> / **antifungal** [Δŋg] / **cleansing**<sup>9</sup> [e] / aftershave **lotion**

**drops** *n term & inf usu pl, abbr gtt.* *sim solution*<sup>1</sup> [ju:ʃn], → U81-25

**syrup**<sup>2</sup> [sɪrəp] *n term & clin, abbr Liq*

(i) dosage for medications (ii) popular term for tinctures, **eyewashes**<sup>3</sup>, etc.

**solvent**<sup>4</sup> *n term* • **solute**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **soluble**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **solubility**<sup>7</sup> *n*

» Some recommend a dose of 2 drops of ophthalmic solution. 5mL of a 20% solution should be **instilled**<sup>8</sup> with a **syringe**<sup>9</sup> [dʒ] connected to the catheter. **Ipecac** [ɪ] **syrup**<sup>10</sup> is now used as a centrally acting **emetic**<sup>11</sup> in acute oral drug overdose.

Use eye / nose / **stomach**<sup>12</sup> [k] **drops** • **maple**<sup>13</sup> [eɪ] / flavored [eɪ] / demulcent [Δls] / glucose / **cough**<sup>14</sup> [kɔ:f] **syrup** • clear / **cloudy**<sup>15</sup> [au] / discolored / **diluted**<sup>16</sup> [ju:] / **aqueous**<sup>17</sup> [eɪkwɪəs] **solution** • concentrated / IV / nasal / oral / **saline**<sup>18</sup> [eɪ] **solution**

**suppository** [səpɒzɪtɔ:ri] *n term*

solid cone-shaped<sup>1</sup> [ou] dosage form for introduction into the rectum or vagina [dʒ] that readily [e] melts<sup>2</sup> at body temperature

» **Moisten**<sup>3</sup> the suppository by placing it in a cup of water for 10s before rectal insertion. For best results the suppository should be **retained**<sup>4</sup> for at least 3 hours.

Use to place/insert<sup>5</sup> a **suppository** • vaginal<sup>6</sup> / intraurethral / **pile**<sup>7</sup> [aɪ] / **laxative**<sup>8</sup> **suppository**

**vial** [vaɪəl] or **phial** [faɪəl] *n term*

*sim ampul(e) or ampoule*<sup>1</sup> [æmp'u:l] *n term*

small **receptacle**<sup>2</sup> [se] (usually of glass) for holding liquids, and esp. medicines which are typically **withdrawn**<sup>3</sup> [dɔ:n] with syringes for IV or IM injection; ampuls are hermetically **sealed**<sup>4</sup> [i:] vials which need to be broken for use

» **Discard**<sup>5</sup> opened vials after 96 hours. Remove the vial from **packaging**<sup>6</sup> just before use and shake well. The vial should be rolled not shaken to dissolve the drug. 0.05 mg/mL is packaged as **single-use ampuls**<sup>7</sup>, all other **strengths**<sup>8</sup> as multiple-dose vials.

Use plastic / reaction / diluent [ɪ] / **multiple dose**<sup>9</sup> **vial** • opened / 4-mL size **ampul**

## Salbe, Unguentum

Gel<sup>1</sup> Paste<sup>2</sup> Creme<sup>3</sup> Balsam<sup>4</sup> suspendiert<sup>5</sup> fettig, schmierig<sup>6</sup> Puder<sup>7</sup> auftragen<sup>8</sup> verteilen<sup>9</sup> Gaze, Verbandsmull<sup>10</sup> Augensalbe<sup>11</sup> emulgierende S.<sup>12</sup> weiche Salbe, Ung. melle<sup>13</sup> Iodsalbe<sup>14</sup> Zinkpaste<sup>15</sup> Feuchtigkeitscreme<sup>16</sup> Kühlalsalbe<sup>17</sup>

8

## Puder, Pulver;

### (ein) pudern, pulverisieren

Granulat, Pellet<sup>1</sup> pulverförmig<sup>2</sup> pulverisiert<sup>3</sup> gut umrühren<sup>4</sup> Verdünnungsmittel<sup>5</sup> vorsichtig schwenken<sup>6</sup> fungizider Puder<sup>7</sup> Aktivkohle, Carbo medicinalis<sup>8</sup> Streupuder<sup>9</sup> gefriergetrocknete Granula<sup>10</sup>

9

## Tinktur

Lotion<sup>1</sup> Wegwischen<sup>2</sup> einreiben<sup>3</sup> Iodtinktur<sup>4</sup> Äthanol-Wassergemisch<sup>5</sup> benzoessäurehalt. Opiumtinktur<sup>6</sup> Schüttelmixtur<sup>7</sup> Einreibemittel<sup>8</sup> Reinigungs lotion<sup>9</sup>

10

## Tropfen, Guttae

Lösung<sup>1</sup> Sirup<sup>2</sup> Augenwässer, Collyria<sup>3</sup> Lösungsmittel<sup>4</sup> gelöster Stoff<sup>5</sup> löslich<sup>6</sup> Löslichkeit<sup>7</sup> eingeträufelt, instilliert<sup>8</sup> Spritze<sup>9</sup> Ipecacuanha-, Brechwurzel sirup<sup>10</sup> Emetikum<sup>11</sup> Magentropfen<sup>12</sup> Ahornsirup<sup>13</sup> Hustensaft, -sirup<sup>14</sup> trübe Lösung<sup>15</sup> verdünnte L.<sup>16</sup> wässrige L.<sup>17</sup> Kochsalzlösung<sup>18</sup>

11

## Zäpfchen, Suppositorium

kegelförmig<sup>1</sup> schmilzt<sup>2</sup> befeuchten<sup>3</sup> im Körper verbleiben<sup>4</sup> Z. einführen<sup>5</sup> Vaginalzäpfchen<sup>6</sup> Hämorrhoidenzäpfchen<sup>7</sup> Stuhlzäpfchen<sup>8</sup>

12

## Stechampulle, Vial, Ampullenflasche

Ampulle<sup>1</sup> Behälter<sup>2</sup> entnommen<sup>3</sup> verschlossen<sup>4</sup> entsorgen<sup>5</sup> Verpackung<sup>6</sup> Einzeldosisampullen<sup>7</sup> Konzentrationen<sup>8</sup> Mehrfachentnahmeflasche<sup>9</sup>

13

**lozenge** [lɒːzəndʒ] *n clin* *syn* **pastil(le)** [pæstˈl||pæstiːəl] *n clin*

(i) a dose of medicine in the form of a small pellet (ii) a small aromatic or medicated candy

- » Dissolve slowly in the mouth, do not bite or chew [tʃuː] lozenges or **swallow** [dɔː] them **whole**<sup>1</sup> [hoʊl]. He was **sucking**<sup>2</sup> [ʌ] a lozenge.

Use menthol / iron / cough<sup>3</sup> [kɔːf] / sore throat<sup>4</sup> / benzocaine [keɪ] / chloraseptic **lozenge** • fruit / throat<sup>4</sup> **pastille**

14

**antidote** [æntɪdɔʊt] *n & v*drugs that can neutralize [uː] toxic substances<sup>1</sup> or counteract<sup>2</sup> [aʊ] their effects

- » This medication is to be used as an antidote for emergency use in poisoning<sup>3</sup>.

Use universal / physiologic [fɪz] / chemical<sup>4</sup> [ke] **antidote** • **antidote** to / against

15

**pack(age)** [pækɪdʒ] *n & v* *sim* **packet**<sup>1</sup> [pækɪt], **carton**<sup>2</sup> [ɑː] *n*

(n) container (glass bottle, carton, packets for powders etc.) for dispensing drugs in adequate doses

**packaging**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **repackaging** *n*

- » Keep in the protective packaging until used. Each blister card<sup>4</sup> contains one day's dosage (14 cards per package). Dispense in the original carton to protect the solution from light.

Use dose / triple [ɪ] card / hospital<sup>5</sup> **pack** • double-barrier / child-resistant<sup>6</sup> / unit-dose<sup>7</sup> **packaging**

16

**package insert** *n term* *syn* **patient instruction** [ɪ] **leaflet** [iː] *n clin & inf*important product information for the patient (composition<sup>1</sup>, mode of action<sup>2</sup>, dosage<sup>3</sup>, administration<sup>4</sup>, indications, contra-indications<sup>5</sup>, side effects<sup>6</sup>, precautions [dɪ] etc.)

- » Carefully read the package insert for specific dosing guidelines<sup>7</sup> [aɪ].

17

**precautions** [prɪkɔːʃnz] *n*these are warnings to take preventive<sup>1</sup> or security measures<sup>2</sup> [ɛz], e.g. not to exceed [iː] the recommended dosage<sup>3</sup>, do not take with alcohol, avoid excessive heat, keep drugs out of the reach of children, etc.**precautionary**<sup>1</sup> *adj* • **caution**<sup>4</sup> [kɔːʃn] *n & v*

- » Caution in increasing dosage is recommended. These precautions do not apply to short-term IV use unless otherwise specified. Use caution when driving or operating machinery because of possible drowsiness<sup>5</sup> [aʊz], impairment [ɛə] of motor skills<sup>6</sup> and/or judgement [dʒʌdʒ-] of distance<sup>7</sup>, etc.

Use **precautions to consider**<sup>8</sup> / while using this medication • **to caution** against<sup>9</sup>

18

**storage** [stɔːrɪdʒ] *n*the conditions under which drugs are kept<sup>1</sup> are decisive [aɪ] for their shelf life<sup>2</sup> and stability<sup>3</sup>

- » Store below 40°C (104°F) in a tight [taɪt], light-resistant<sup>4</sup> container and protect from freezing. Fomepizole is stable [eɪ] for at least 48 hs when refrigerated [dʒ] or if stored<sup>1</sup> at room temperature. The tablet will maintain potency<sup>5</sup> through the expiration date<sup>6</sup> provided the bottle cap is replaced tightly after each use.

19

**Pastille, Lutschtablette**ganz schlucken<sup>1</sup> lutschen<sup>2</sup> Husten-pastille, -bonbon<sup>3</sup> Lutschtablette gegen Halsschmerzen<sup>4</sup>**Gegenmittel, -gift, Antidot; G. verabreichen**Gift(stoff)e<sup>1</sup> entgegenwirken<sup>2</sup> bei Vergiftungsnotfällen<sup>3</sup> chemisches Gegenmittel<sup>4</sup>**Packung; verpacken**Schachtel, Packung<sup>1</sup> (Papp)karton<sup>2</sup> Verpackung<sup>3</sup> Blisterpackung<sup>4</sup> Klinik-, Anstaltspackung<sup>5</sup> kinder-sichere Verpackung<sup>6</sup> Einzeldosis-packung<sup>7</sup>**Packungsbeilage, Beipackzettel**Zusammensetzung<sup>1</sup> Wirkungsweise<sup>2</sup> Dosierung<sup>3</sup> Anwendungsweise<sup>4</sup> Gegenanzeigen, Kontraindikationen<sup>5</sup> Nebenwirkungen<sup>6</sup> Dosis-rungsrichtlinien<sup>7</sup>**Vorsichtsmaßnahmen**vorbeugende Maßnahmen<sup>1</sup> Sicherheitsmaßn.<sup>2</sup> empfohlene Dosis nicht überschreiten<sup>3</sup> Vorsicht; warnen<sup>4</sup> Schläfrigkeit, Benommenheit<sup>5</sup> Beeinträchtigung d. Fahrtüchtigkeit<sup>6</sup> Distanzeinschätzung<sup>7</sup> zu berücksichtigende V.<sup>8</sup> warnen vor<sup>9</sup>**Lagerung**gelagert/ aufbewahrt werden<sup>1</sup> Haltbarkeit<sup>2</sup> Stabilität<sup>3</sup> licht-undurchlässig<sup>4</sup> Wirkung behalten<sup>5</sup> über das Verfalldatum hinaus<sup>6</sup>**Clinical Phrases**

These tablets should be taken on an empty stomach. Diese Tabletten sollten auf nüchternen Magen eingenommen werden. • **Take these capsules with meals.** Nehmen Sie diese Kapseln zu den Mahlzeiten ein. • **The drug is well tolerated.** Das Medikament ist gut verträglich. • **Protect from light!** Lichtschutz erforderlich. • **This drug has a particularly swift onset of action.** Dieses Medikament wirkt besonders rasch. • **Consult your family doctor if symptoms persist.** Bei anhaltenden Beschwerden sollten Sie Ihren Hausarzt aufsuchen. • **Store in a cool, dry place. Protect from heat and moisture.** Kühl und trocken aufbewahren! • **For expiration date see bottom of container.** Verfalldatum auf der Unterseite des Behälters beachten!

## Unit 10 Alcohol & Smoking

Related Units: 11 Substance Abuse, 3 Food & Drink, 9 Drugs & Remedies, 91 Toxicology, 7 Consciousness, 44 Respiration, 65 Walking, 66 Speech, 75 Behavior, 111 Respiratory Signs & Symptoms, 113 Neurologic Findings

**drunk(en)** [Δ] *adj* *syn* **booze(-up)** [u:] *adj inf, rel* **tipsy**<sup>1</sup> [tɪpsi] *adj*

suffering from the effects of excessive alcohol intake (also termed **acute alcohol intoxication**<sup>2</sup>)  
**drunk**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **drunk**<sup>4</sup> - drank - drunk *v irr* • **drinking**<sup>5</sup> *adj & n* • **drunkenness**<sup>6</sup> *n*

» He had an **argument** with a friend while **drunk**. How much do you **ordinarily** drink? Perform a **systematic** **intraoral** **examination** in **patients** over 45 who **smoke** **tobacco** or **drink** **immoderately**. He keeps **drinking** to the point of **drunkenness**. He's **half asleep** and a bit **booze** up. **Drinking** **sherry** always makes me **tipsy**.

Use **drunken** **behavior** / **bum**<sup>7</sup> [Λ] / **husband** / **gait** [ei] / **brawl**<sup>8</sup> [ɔ:] • to get/be/appear **drunk** • **blind** or **dead**<sup>9</sup> / **roaring**<sup>9</sup> [zɪ] **drunk** • **drunk** **driver** / **as a lord**<sup>9</sup> (BE) • **drunk** **driving**<sup>10</sup> (arrest) / and **disorderly** • **to drink** **greedily**<sup>11</sup> [i:] / **excessively** / **up**<sup>12</sup> / **sb.** under the table • **drink** **oneself** into **oblivion**<sup>13</sup> / and **drive**<sup>10</sup> • **chronic** / **problem** **drinking** • **inability** to control / **surreptitious**<sup>14</sup> [Λ] **drinking** • **drinking** **binge**<sup>15</sup> [bɪndʒ] / **habits**<sup>16</sup> / **problem** • **drinking** **pattern** / **friends**<sup>17</sup> / **water** • **to drink** **daily** / **to sb.'s health**<sup>18</sup> • **to drink** **alcoholic** **beverages** / **without control**

**Note: Drinking, drinks** and **to drink** (unless specified otherwise) normally refer to alcohol. **Drunken** is only used in front of nouns. Informal and slang expressions for **drunk** include: **smashed**, **tight**, **pickled**, **loaded**, **\*\*pissed**, **\*plastered** (BE).

**alcohol** [ælkəhɔ:l] *n* *syn* **booze** [bu:z] *n inf, drink n*  
*rel* **liquor**<sup>1</sup> [lɪkə] *n, BE* **spirits**<sup>1</sup> *n pl* → U3-27f

(i) alcohol-containing drinks (beer, wine, gin, etc.) (ii) volatile hydroxyl [aɪ] compounds, e.g. ethanol [ɛ]

(**non**)-**alcoholic**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **booze**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **boozer**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **boozy** *adj* • **spirit**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» No **alcohol** is allowed on the **ward**<sup>6</sup> [ɔ:]. **Moderate** **alcohol** **intake** is not **harmful**. **Quite** **honestly**, he's been **too fond** of<sup>7</sup> the **booze** lately. On a day when you **drink** **alcohol**, how many **drinks** do you **have**?

Use **to drink/ingest**<sup>8</sup> [dʒɛ] / **abuse/avoid** **alcohol** • **grain**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] / **ethyl** [eθɪl] / **BE** **izθaɪl** / **methyl** / 70% / **rubbing**<sup>10</sup> [Λ] **alcohol** • **alcohol** **use** / **consumption** [Λ] **or** **intake** **or** **ingestion**<sup>11</sup> / **excess** • **alcohol** **abuse**<sup>12</sup> / **sponging** [Λ] **or** **rub**<sup>13</sup> / **withdrawal**<sup>14</sup> [vɪ] • **alcohol**-induced /-related • **alcohol-related** **blackouts**<sup>15</sup> / **traffic** **accident** / **gastritis** [aɪ] • **to stay off the**<sup>16</sup> **booze** • **big**<sup>17</sup> **boozer** • **intoxicating** / **hard**<sup>18</sup> / **distilled** **liquor** • **liquor** **store**<sup>19</sup> • **surgical**<sup>20</sup> **spirit** • **to give up** / **be given to**<sup>3</sup> **drink** • **soft**<sup>21</sup> **drinks** • **to have/take a** **drink** • **methylated**<sup>22</sup> **spirits** (BE)

**blood alcohol level** *n*, *abbr* **BAL** *syn* **blood alcohol content** *n*, *abbr* **BAC**

» In **habitual** [ɪtʃ] **drinkers**<sup>1</sup> the rate of **ethanol**<sup>2</sup> **metabolism** can be **sufficiently** [Λ] **high** to permit the consumption of large quantities of **spirits** without **raising** [eɪ] the **blood alcohol level** over 80 mg/dL, at which the conventional **breath analyzer**<sup>3</sup> begins to **detect** **ethanol**. **Estimate** the **blood alcohol level** by taking a **breath** [e], **blood** or **urine** [jʊəɪn] **sample**.

Use **blood alcohol sample**<sup>4</sup> [æ] / **concentration** • **to raise** [eɪ] / **determine**<sup>5</sup> [zɪ] / **reduce** **the blood alcohol level** • **high** / **low** / **rising**<sup>6</sup> [aɪ] / **falling** **blood alcohol content**

**sober** [soʊbə] *adj* *rel* **dry**<sup>1</sup> [draɪ], **clean**<sup>2</sup> [kli:n] *adj inf*

(i) not under the influence of alcohol or any other intoxicant (ii) serious and realistic

**sober** **up**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **dry out**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **sobriety**<sup>4</sup> [səbrɪəti] *n* • **sobriety**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» **Breathalyzers** [ɛ] are a very rough [ɾʌf] **means** of **determining** whether a **person** is **sober** or not. **Alcoholics Anonymous**<sup>5</sup> (*abbr* AA) **helps** **alcoholics** **maintain** **sobriety** through **group support**. He thought the **coffee** would **sober** him up. The road to **sobriety** is often **long** and **bumpy** [Λ]. Is New York a **dry** state?

Use **stone-cold**<sup>6</sup> **sober** • **sober** **as a judge**<sup>6</sup> [dʒʌdʒ] / **moody** [u:] / **mind**<sup>7</sup> [aɪ] • **to be/ stay** **dry** • **dry** **hotel** / **bar**<sup>8</sup> / **party** / **campus** **policy** • **driving-out** **cell**<sup>9</sup> • **period** of<sup>10</sup> / **long-term** / **maintenance** [ɛɪ] of **sobriety** • **sobriety** **test** / **checkpoint** / **from** **alcohol** • **standard** **field** **sobriety** **test**<sup>11</sup> (*abbr* SFST)

### betrunken, alkoholisiert

beschwipst<sup>1</sup> akute Alkoholvergiftung /-intoxikation<sup>2</sup> Betrunkene(r), Säufer(in)<sup>3</sup> trinken<sup>4</sup> Trink-, Sauf-, Trinken<sup>5</sup> (Be)trunkenheit, Trunksucht<sup>6</sup> Saufbold, Penner<sup>7</sup> Schlägerei v. Betrunkene(n)<sup>8</sup> sternhagelvoll, total blau<sup>9</sup> Trunkenheit/ Alkohol am Steuer<sup>10</sup> gierig trinken<sup>11</sup> austrinken<sup>12</sup> bis zur Bewusstlosigkeit trinken<sup>13</sup> heimliches Trinken<sup>14</sup> Saufgelage<sup>15</sup> Trinkgewohnheiten<sup>16</sup> Saufkumpanen<sup>17</sup> auf jem. trinken, jem. zuprosten<sup>18</sup>

1

### Alkohol

Spirituosen<sup>1</sup> alkoholfrei<sup>2</sup> saufen<sup>3</sup> Säufer(in); Kneipe (BE)<sup>4</sup> Spiritus, Weingeist<sup>5</sup> (Krankenhaus)station<sup>6</sup> gerne mögen<sup>7</sup> Alkohol konsumieren<sup>8</sup> Äthylalkohol<sup>9</sup> Alkohol für Ein-/Abreibungen<sup>10</sup> Alkoholkonsum<sup>11</sup> Alkoholmissbrauch, -abusus<sup>12</sup> Alkoholabreibung<sup>13</sup> Alkoholentzug<sup>14</sup> alkoholbedingte Erinnerungs-lücken<sup>15</sup> Alkohol meiden<sup>16</sup> starke(r) Trinker(in)<sup>17</sup> harte Getränke, Schnaps<sup>18</sup> Spirituosengeschäft<sup>19</sup> Wundbenzin<sup>20</sup> alkoholfreie Getränke<sup>21</sup> denaturierter Alkohol, Brennspiritus<sup>22</sup>

2

### Blutalkoholspiegel, -konzentration

Gewohnheitstrinker, notorische T.<sup>1</sup> (Äthyl)alkohol, Äthanol<sup>2</sup> (Atem)alkoholmessgerät, Alkomat<sup>3</sup> Alkoholblutprobe<sup>4</sup> d. Blutalkoholgehalt bestimmen<sup>5</sup> steigender Blutalkoholspiegel<sup>6</sup>

3

### (i, ii) nüchtern

trocken, keinen Alkohol mehr trinken<sup>1</sup> clean, nicht mehr drogenabhängig<sup>2</sup> ausnüchtern, nüchtern machen/ werden<sup>3</sup> Nüchternheit, Alkoholabstinenz<sup>4</sup> Anonyme Alkoholiker<sup>5</sup> vollkommen nüchtern<sup>6</sup> besonnen, nüchtern<sup>7</sup> Bar ohne Alkoholausschank<sup>8</sup> Ausnüchterungszelle<sup>9</sup> trockene Phase<sup>10</sup> Blutalkoholtest<sup>11</sup>

4

**intoxicated** [ɪntɔːksɪkeɪtɪd] *adj* *syn* **inebriated** [iː] *adj* → U91-14

showing signs of temporary deterioration in mental function, emotional lability, flushed [A] face<sup>1</sup>, **unsteady** [ɛ] gait<sup>2</sup> [eɪ], loud incoherent [ɪə] speech, esp. as a result of rapid or excessive ingestion of alcoholic beverages

**intoxicate** *v* • **inebriate** *v* • **intoxication**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **inebriation**<sup>4</sup> *n*  
• **intoxicant**<sup>5</sup> *n & adj* • **inebriant**<sup>5</sup> *n & adj*

» Typical intoxication **states** [eɪ] include **euphoria** [juː-], **slurred** [ɜː] **speech**<sup>6</sup>, **hallucinations**, and **confusion** [(j)ʊɪz]. **Inhaling** of gases produces a form of **inebriation** similar to that of the **volatile** [-aɪ] **anesthetics**<sup>7</sup>.

Use driving while (*abbr* DWI) / to appear **intoxicated** • **intoxicated** individuals / **driver**<sup>8</sup> / with alcohol / **by drugs**<sup>9</sup> • **intoxicating effect**<sup>10</sup> • (acute) alcohol / ethanol [e] **intoxication** • methanol / carbon monoxide [-aɪd] / **drug**<sup>11</sup> **intoxication** • **lead**<sup>12</sup> [eɪ] / **narcotic**<sup>13</sup> / systemic **intoxication** • mild / moderate **intoxication** • acute / chronic / **overt**<sup>14</sup> [ɜː] **intoxication** • **severe**<sup>15</sup> [ɪə] / pathologic / **water**<sup>16</sup> **intoxication** • signs / severity [eɪ] / period / reversal [ɜː] **of intoxication** • **intoxication state**<sup>17</sup> • **drug**<sup>11</sup> / alcohol **inebriation** • **inebriated** patient

**temperance** *n* *syn* **moderation** *n*

(i) to control one's behavior, esp. with regard to avoiding extremes such as alcohol excess  
(ii) being in the habit of not drinking alcohol because of one's principles

**intemperance**<sup>1</sup> *n* • **temper**<sup>2</sup> *v* • **immoderate**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • (**in**)**temperate**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» **Temperance** and self-control are the **virtues**<sup>5</sup> [ɜː] he preaches to **reformed alcoholics**<sup>6</sup>. **Temperance supporters** regarded alcohol the way people today view heroin—as an inherently addicting substance. **Alcohol use in moderation** need not be discouraged [ɜː||BE Δ]. **Moderate alcohol intake** does not retard the **healing** [iː] process. She used to drink **immoderately**.

Use to **advocate or promote**<sup>7</sup> **temperance** • **temperance movement**<sup>8</sup> / activists / society / hotel • to **drink in**<sup>9</sup> / allow salt in / show **moderation** • **moderation** in alcohol use / of alcohol intake • to **drink**<sup>9</sup> (**im**)**moderately** • **moderate alcohol intake**<sup>10</sup> / amounts [au] of fat • **moderate** calorie restriction / **cholesterol elevation**<sup>11</sup>

**abstinence** [æbstɪnən's] *n* *syn* **abstention** [æbstɛn] *n*

practice of refraining [eɪ] from pleasurable [eɪ] activities that might have a negative effect, esp. alcohol

**abstain** [eɪ] (**from**)<sup>1</sup> *v* • **abstinent**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **abstainer**<sup>3</sup> [eɪ] *n*

» **Delirium tremens syndrome** typically appears after 3-4 days of **abstinence**. **Abstinence from alcohol** is essential while you are on this medication. He's managed to **remain abstinent** for more than a month now. His prognosis is poor if he is unable to **abstain from drinking**.

Use to **maintain/warrant**<sup>4</sup> [ɜː] **abstinence** • relative / **absolute or complete or total**<sup>5</sup> **abstinence** • continued / periodic **abstinence** • **abstinence** rate / from alcohol / from food<sup>6</sup> • **abstinence** symptoms [ɪ] / **syndrome**<sup>7</sup> [ɪ] • **abstention from** alcohol / tobacco / coitus • to **abstain from** alcohol<sup>8</sup> / drinking / sexual contact • to **abstain from strenuous physical** [ɪ] **exercise**<sup>9</sup>

**teetotaler** [tiːtɔʊtələ] *n* *syn* **teetotalist** *n & adj*, **prohibitionist**<sup>1</sup> [ɪ] *n & adj*

person who totally abstains from all intoxicating beverages

**teetotal**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **teetotaling** *n* • **teetotalism** *n* • **prohibition**<sup>3</sup> *n*

» He was a **teetotaler** in an era [ɪː] when alcoholism was widespread [e]. More than 10% of physicians said they were **teetotal**. The **prohibition era** was the period from 1920 to 1933 when the production of alcoholic beverages in the U.S. was illegal [ɪː].

Use habitual / **confirmed**<sup>4</sup> [ɜː] / **strict**<sup>5</sup> **teetotaler** • anti-**teetotalist** • **teetotalist state**<sup>6</sup> • anti-**prohibitionist** • **prohibitionist** movement / **policies**<sup>7</sup> • to advocate / promote **teetotalism** • fanatical / state-enforced **teetotalism** • alcohol **prohibition**

**hangover** [hæŋoʊvə] *n clin* *rel* **hung-over**<sup>1</sup> [hʌŋ ʊvə] *adj clin*

**disagreeable**<sup>2</sup> aftereffects (headache, **heartburn**<sup>3</sup>, etc.) from the use of alcohol or **recreational drugs**<sup>4</sup>

» Simple intoxication lasts less than 12 hours and is usually followed by a **hangover**. This is not a **stomach** [k] **upset**<sup>5</sup>, you simply got a **hangover**. I'm feeling really hung-over today.

**berauscht, im Rausch, unter Alkoholeinfluss**

gerötetes Gesicht<sup>1</sup> unsicherer Gang<sup>2</sup> Intoxikation, Trunkenheit, Rausch(zustand)<sup>3</sup> Trunkenheit, betrunkenener Zustand<sup>4</sup> Rauschmittel; berauschend<sup>5</sup> verwaschene Sprache<sup>6</sup> (volatile) Inhalationsanästhetika<sup>7</sup> alkoholisierte(r) (Auto)lenker(in)<sup>8</sup> im Drogenrausch<sup>9</sup> berauschte Wirkung<sup>10</sup> Arzneimittelintoxikation, -vergiftung<sup>11</sup> Bleivergiftung<sup>12</sup> Rauschmittel-, Betäubungsmittelintoxikation<sup>13</sup> klin. manifeste I.<sup>14</sup> schwere Vergiftung<sup>15</sup> Wasserintoxikation<sup>16</sup> Rauschzustand<sup>17</sup>

5

**(i) Mäßigkeit, Zurückhaltung (ii) Abstinenz**

Unmäßigkeit, Zügellosigkeit<sup>1</sup> mäßigen<sup>2</sup> unmäßig, maßlos<sup>3</sup> gemäßig, maßvoll<sup>4</sup> Tugenden<sup>5</sup> ehemalige Alkoholiker(innen)<sup>6</sup> sich für Mäßigung aussprechen<sup>7</sup> Abstinenzbewegung<sup>8</sup> in Maßen trinken<sup>9</sup> mäßig/ maßvoller Alkoholkonsum<sup>10</sup> mäßiggradige Erhöhung d. Cholesterinspiegels<sup>11</sup>

6

**Abstinenz, Enthaltensamkeit**

s. enthalten, verzichten auf<sup>1</sup> abstinent<sup>2</sup> Abstinenzler(in)<sup>3</sup> Abstinenz erfordern<sup>4</sup> vollkommene Abstinenz<sup>5</sup> Nahrungskarenz<sup>6</sup> Abstinenz-, Entzugssyndrom<sup>7</sup> keinen Alkohol trinken, Alkohol meiden<sup>8</sup> keinen anstrengenden Sport betreiben<sup>9</sup>

7

**Antialkoholiker(in), Abstinenzler(in)**

Alkoholgegner(in)<sup>1</sup> abstinent<sup>2</sup> Verbot; Prohibition<sup>3</sup> überzeugte(r) Antialkoholiker(in)<sup>4</sup> strenge(r) A.<sup>5</sup> Land/ Bundesstaat mit Alkoholverbot<sup>6</sup> Prohibitionspolitik<sup>7</sup>

8

**Kater, Katzenjammer**

verkatert<sup>1</sup> unangenehm<sup>2</sup> Sodbrennen<sup>3</sup> Freizeitdrogen<sup>4</sup> Magenverstimmung<sup>5</sup>

9

**alcoholic** *n* *syn* **drinker**, \***drunk(ard)** *n*, \***lush** [Λ], \***dipso(maniac)** [ɛɪ] *n inf*  
a person who is given to excessive drinking

**alcoholic**<sup>1</sup> *adj* • **low-alcohol**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **non-drinker**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **non-drinking** *adj*

» **Gout**<sup>4</sup> [au] attacks in **chronic alcoholics** occur [ɜ:] at lower **serum** [ɪɹ] **urate** [juɹeɪt] levels than in **nonalcoholics**<sup>3</sup>. Even in **moderate drinkers alcohol** is likely to result in **repeated awakenings** [ɛɪ] and a sense of **restless sleep**. Her father was a **drunkard**.

Use **alcoholic beverages or drinks**<sup>5</sup> / **extract** / **tincture** • **alcoholic family** / **stupor** [-(j)u:] / **hallucinations**<sup>6</sup> / **poisoning**<sup>7</sup> • **alcoholic coma** [ou] / **cirrhosis** [sɹɹʊsɪs] / **fatty liver**<sup>8</sup> • **alcoholic hepatitis** [aɪ] / **pancreatitis** / **psychosis**<sup>9</sup> [saɪk-] • **active / chronic / teenage**<sup>10</sup> **alcoholic** • **addicted**<sup>11</sup> / **homeless alcoholic** • **abstinent / well-nourished** [ɜ:] / **reformed**<sup>12</sup> **alcoholic** • **Alcoholics Anonymous** • **heavy or hard**<sup>13</sup> / **moderate** / **wine drinker** • **whiskey** / **problem** / **social**<sup>14</sup> **drinker** • **incurable** [kjʊə] **drunkard**

**alcohol habituation** [həbɪtʃuɛɪʃn] *n term* → U11-5

habit-forming process referring generally to **tolerance**<sup>1</sup> and psychological [saɪkə-] dependence on continued alcohol intake to maintain a sense of well-being which may result in addiction

**habitual**<sup>2</sup> [həbɪtʃuəl] *adj* • **habit**<sup>3</sup> [həbɪt] *n* • **habituated to**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» **Unlike dependency, alcohol habituation is not associated with a tendency to increase alcohol consumption** [Λ]. We use the term 'dependency' in a broad sense to include both **alcohol addiction** and **habituation**.

Use **alcohol addiction**<sup>5</sup> / **tolerance** / **overdose** / **odor** [ou] **on breath**<sup>6</sup> [e] • **drug**<sup>7</sup> **habituation** • **drinking** / **smoking**<sup>8</sup> / **drug habits** • **poor dietary** [aɪ] **or eating**<sup>9</sup> / **noxious**<sup>10</sup> [nɒ:kʃəs] / **living habits** • **to kick or give up a**<sup>11</sup> **habit** • **habit-forming**<sup>12</sup>

**alcoholism** *n term* *syn* **alcohol dependency or addiction** [ədɪkʃn] *n term*

chronic alcohol abuse, dependence, or addiction resulting in impairment [ɛə] of health and social or occupational [ɛɪ] functioning [Λ], and increasing adaptation to the effects of alcohol

» **Liver failure**<sup>1</sup> [ɛɪ] may be **precipitated**<sup>2</sup> [sɪ] by **alcoholism**. Is there any evidence for a **genetic predisposition** [ɪ] to **alcoholism**? **Alcohol dependency frequently coexists with depression**.

Use **chronic / acute / long-standing**<sup>3</sup> / **genetic alcoholism** • **alpha**<sup>4</sup> / **type I / type II / treatment-resistant alcoholism** • **primary** [aɪ] / **secondary** / **parental**<sup>5</sup> **alcoholism** • **alcohol dependence**<sup>6</sup> / **excess**<sup>7</sup> / **addict**<sup>8</sup> / **counseling** [au] • **to produce/develop dependency** • **mild / severe** [ɪə] / **physical**<sup>9</sup> / **psychologic** [saɪkə-] **dependency**

**fetal alcohol syndrome** [fi:ʔl ælkəhɔ:l sɪndroʊm] *n term*

specific pattern of fetal malformation with **growth deficiency**<sup>1</sup> [ɪ], **craniofacial** [ɛɪ] anomalies, and limb defects [ɪ] found among **offspring**<sup>2</sup> of alcoholic women

» In **fetal alcohol syndrome** the **fetuses** [ɪ] are very quiet in **utero** [ju:ɹ], and there is a higher **incidence of delayed** [ɛɪ] **postnatal** [ɛɪ] **growth and behavior development**.

**delirium tremens** [dɛɪɹɪəm trɪ: || trɛmɛnz] *n term, abbr DT*

*rel* **withdrawal syndrome**<sup>1</sup> [wɪðdɹɔ:ɹɪ sɪndroʊm] *n term* → U11-12

acute organic psychosis following alcohol withdrawal marked by mental confusion, restlessness, tremor, sweating [ɛ], electrolyte [-laɪt] disturbances [ɜ:], **anxiety**<sup>2</sup> [æŋzɪəti], and preordial distress

**delirious**<sup>3</sup> *adj term* • **withdraw**<sup>4</sup> - **withdrew** [u:] - **withdrawn** *v irr* → U75-14

» **The spectrum of manifestations in alcoholic withdrawal, ranges from anxiety, decreased cognition**<sup>5</sup>, and **tremulousness**<sup>6</sup>, increasing **irritability**<sup>7</sup> to **full-blown delirium tremens**. **Alcohol withdrawal should be suspected in every unexplained delirium**.

Use **alcohol withdrawal** / **toxic**<sup>8</sup> / **senile** [ɪ: || ɛ] **delirium** • **traumatic / exhaustion**<sup>9</sup> [ɹɪ] / **postoperative delirium** • **acute**<sup>10</sup> / **transient** / **unexplained** / **agitated**<sup>11</sup> [ædʒ] **delirium** • **delirious patient** / **state**<sup>12</sup> / **dependence** • **alcohol**<sup>13</sup> / **caffeine** / **drug withdrawal** • **heroin** / **gradual**<sup>14</sup> / **abrupt** [Λ] **withdrawal** • **withdrawal symptoms**<sup>15</sup> / **reactions** / **headache** • **withdrawal state** / **insomnia** / **program**<sup>16</sup> • **withdrawal from/of stimulants** / **hallucinogens** [u:s] • **withdrawal from/of depressants**<sup>17</sup> / **alcohol**<sup>13</sup>

**Alkoholiker(in), Alkoholkrank(e)(r), Trinker(in), Trunkenbold**  
alkoholisch, -haltig, -süchtig<sup>1</sup> alkoholarm<sup>2</sup> Nichttrinker(in)<sup>3</sup> Gicht<sup>4</sup> alkohl. Getränke, Alkoholika<sup>5</sup> Alkoholhalluzinose<sup>6</sup> Alkoholvergiftung, -intoxikation<sup>7</sup> Alkoholfettleber<sup>8</sup> Alkoholpsychose<sup>9</sup> jugendl. Alkoholiker(in)<sup>10</sup> Alkoholkrank(e), -süchtige(r)<sup>11</sup> ehemalige(r) Alkoholiker(in)<sup>12</sup> starke(r) Trinker(in), Säuerer(in)<sup>13</sup> Gesellschaftstrinker(in)<sup>14</sup>

10

**Alkoholgewöhnung, -toleranz**

Toleranz<sup>1</sup> gewohnheitsmäßig, habituell<sup>2</sup> (An)gewohnheit<sup>3</sup> gewöhnt an<sup>4</sup> Alkoholkrankheit, Alkoholismus<sup>5</sup> Alkoholfahne<sup>6</sup> Arzneimittelgewöhnung<sup>7</sup> Rauchgewohnheiten<sup>8</sup> schlechte Essgewohnheiten<sup>9</sup> gesundheitsschäd. Gewohnheiten<sup>10</sup> eine Gewohnheit ablegen<sup>11</sup> suchterzeugend<sup>12</sup>

11

**Alkoholismus, -krankheit,**

**-abhängigkeit, -sucht**  
Leberinsuffizienz<sup>1</sup> herbeigeführt<sup>2</sup> langjähriger Alkoholismus<sup>3</sup> Alpha-Alkoholismus<sup>4</sup> Alkoholabhängigkeit eines Elternteils<sup>5</sup> Alkoholabhängigkeit, -krankheit<sup>6</sup> Alkoholmissbrauch, -abusus<sup>7</sup> Alkoholiker(in)<sup>8</sup> physische Abhängigkeit<sup>9</sup>

12

**embryofetales Alkoholsyndrom, Alkoholembryopathie**  
Minderwuchs<sup>1</sup> Kinder<sup>2</sup>

13

**Alkoholdelir, Delirium tremens**

Entzugs-, Abstinenzsyndrom<sup>1</sup> Angst<sup>2</sup> delirant, deliriös<sup>3</sup> entziehen<sup>4</sup> vermindertes Wahrnehmungs- u. Denkvermögen<sup>5</sup> Zittern<sup>6</sup> Reizbarkeit<sup>7</sup> toxisches Delirium<sup>8</sup> Erschöpfungsdelir<sup>9</sup> akutes Delir, Delirium acutum<sup>10</sup> rasendes Delirium<sup>11</sup> deliranter Zustand<sup>12</sup> Alkoholentzug<sup>13</sup> allmählicher Entzug<sup>14</sup> Entzugerscheinungen<sup>15</sup> Entziehungskur<sup>16</sup> Barbituratentzug<sup>17</sup>

14

**alcohol detoxi(fi)cation** *n term* *syn* **treated** [i:] **withdrawal** [d:] *n clin*

- (i) gradual recovery from the toxic effects of alcohol  
 (ii) treatment assisting in the elimination of alcohol

**detoxify** [dɪtɒksɪfaɪ] *v term* • **detoxicate**<sup>1</sup> *v* → U91-23

- » The immediate objectives of alcohol detoxification are to help the patient relieve the immediate symptoms of withdrawal and achieve [tʃ] a substance-free state. The drugs of choice<sup>2</sup> for alcohol detoxification are benzodiazepines [aɪæ]. Ingested alcohol is detoxified by the liver. While alcohol withdrawal is often treated in a hospital, outpatient detoxification<sup>3</sup> has been proposed for alcoholics with mild abstinence syndromes in an attempt to save costs.

Use long-term / short-term / metabolic<sup>4</sup> **detoxification** • inpatient<sup>5</sup> / chemical **detoxification** • **detoxification** from stimulants / center<sup>6</sup> • **detoxification treatment**<sup>7</sup> / program<sup>8</sup> / of addicts

**smoke** [smoʊk] *v & n* *sim* **puff (on)**<sup>1</sup> [pʌf], **draw on**<sup>2</sup> [drɔː] *v phr*

- (v) to inhale [eɪ] and exhale smoke from cigarettes, cigars, pipes, etc.

(non-)smoker<sup>3</sup> *n* • **smoking**<sup>4</sup> *n & adj* • **smoke-free**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **smokeless**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

- » It is estimated that women smokers who quit smoking by age 35 add about 3 years to their life expectancy. The drug may help reduce anxiety [aɪ] generated by smoking cessation.

Use **to smoke like a chimney**<sup>6</sup> [tʃ] / tobacco / marijuana • parental cigarette / exposure [oʊz] **to passive**<sup>7</sup> **smoke** • **smoke** inhalation /-filled room • **chain**<sup>8</sup> [tʃeɪn] / pipe / heavy<sup>9</sup> **smoker** • long-term / ex- or former<sup>10</sup> **smoker** • **smoker's heart**<sup>11</sup> [ɑː] / palate / cough<sup>12</sup> [kɔːf] • **to start/stop or quit**<sup>13</sup> [kwɪt] / **discontinue**<sup>13</sup>/refrain [eɪ] from/continue **smoking** • passive<sup>7</sup> / involuntary / maternal [zɪ] **smoking** • heavy / no<sup>14</sup> / cigarette **smoking** • **smoking** history / area / restrictions / habit • **smoking cessation** [sɪ] (treatment)<sup>15</sup> • **smoke-free** environment [aɪ] / **work site**<sup>16</sup> [aɪ] • **smokeless** tobacco

**tobacco** [təbækoʊ] *n* *rel* **nicotine**<sup>1</sup> [nɪkətiːn] *n*

leaves<sup>2</sup> of the tobacco plant<sup>3</sup> dried and prepared for smoking or ingestion [ɪndʒɛstʃən]

**tobacco-stained**<sup>4</sup> [eɪ] /-related /-free *adj* • **tobacconist**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **nicotinic**<sup>6</sup> *adj*

- » Inhalation is the most addictive form of nicotine use. Nicotine is a poisonous volatile alkaloid which is responsible for many of the effects of tobacco.

Use **tobacco exposure** [oʊz] / use / addiction<sup>7</sup> / smoke<sup>8</sup> / products<sup>9</sup> • **tobacco** and marijuana mix / control program<sup>10</sup> • **tobacco-stained fingers**<sup>11</sup> • **tobacco-related cancer** • chewing<sup>12</sup> [tʃuːɪŋ] / smokeless tobacco • **nicotine craving**<sup>13</sup> [eɪ] / (blood) level / dependence<sup>7</sup> • **nicotine** withdrawal / replacement therapy<sup>14</sup> / (-containing chewing gum)<sup>15</sup> [ʌ] • **nicotine** (skin) patches<sup>16</sup> / patch [pætʃ] therapy • **nicotinic acid**<sup>17</sup> [æsɪd] / receptor

**light - lit - lit** [laɪt - lɪt] *v irr* *syn* **light up** *v phr*

**light**<sup>1</sup> [laɪt] *n* • **give sb. a light**<sup>2</sup> *phr* • **lighter**<sup>3</sup> [laɪtə] *n*

- » Sorry, have you got a light? You can't light up in here! He lit the cigar with a match<sup>4</sup>.

Use cigarette<sup>5</sup> **lighter** • **lit** cigarette<sup>6</sup>

**cigarette** [sɪgəret] *n* *syn* **frag** [æ] *n inf BE,*

*rel* **cigar**<sup>1</sup> [sɪgəɹ], **pipe**<sup>2</sup> [paɪp], **cigarillo**<sup>3</sup> [ɪ] *n*

finely ground [au] tobacco wrapped [r] in paper, usually with a filter tip<sup>4</sup> for smoking

- » Cigarette smoking should be avoided. Patients should anticipate<sup>5</sup> [ɪs] situations that stimulate cigarette craving [eɪ] and use the gum [ʌ] prophylactically.

Use a packet of cigarettes • **cigarette** smoke / smoking / burns [zɪ:] / butt [ʌ] or end<sup>6</sup> • **cigarette holder**<sup>7</sup> / lighter / ash<sup>8</sup> [æʃ] • **filter-tipped**<sup>9</sup> / low-tar [ɑː] and -nicotine<sup>10</sup> / marijuana **cigarette** • **pipe stem**<sup>11</sup> / cleaner<sup>12</sup> / tobacco • a pack-a-day **cigarette** smoker • **cigar** smoker / box / cutter<sup>13</sup> [ʌ]

## Alkoholentgiftung, Entziehungskur, Alkoholentzug(stherapie)

entgiften<sup>1</sup> Medikamente der Wahl<sup>2</sup> ambulante Entgiftung/ Entziehungskur<sup>3</sup> physiolog. Entgiftung<sup>4</sup> stationäre Entgiftung/ Entziehungskur<sup>5</sup> Entgiftungszentrum, Entzugsanstalt<sup>6</sup> Entgiftungstherapie<sup>7</sup> Entziehungskur<sup>8</sup>

15

## rauchen; Rauch

rauchen (ohne zu inhalieren)<sup>1</sup> ziehen an<sup>2</sup> (Nicht)raucher(in)<sup>3</sup> Rauchen, Raucher-<sup>4</sup> rauchfrei<sup>5</sup> wie ein Schlot rauchen<sup>6</sup> passives Rauchen<sup>7</sup> Kettenraucher(in)<sup>8</sup> starke(r) Raucher(in)<sup>9</sup> ehemalige(r) R.<sup>10</sup> Raucherherz<sup>11</sup> Raucherhusten<sup>12</sup> mit dem Rauchen aufhören<sup>13</sup> Rauchen verboten<sup>14</sup> Raucherentwöhnung<sup>15</sup> rauchfreier Arbeitsplatz<sup>16</sup>

16

## Tabak

Nikotin<sup>1</sup> Blätter<sup>2</sup> Tabakpflanze<sup>3</sup> nikotingelb<sup>4</sup> Tabak(waren)händler<sup>5</sup> nikotinhalzig; Nikotin-<sup>6</sup> Nikotinabhängigkeit, -abus<sup>7</sup> Tabakrauch<sup>8</sup> Tabakwaren<sup>9</sup> Raucherentwöhnung(sprogramm)<sup>10</sup> Raucherfinger<sup>11</sup> Kautabak<sup>12</sup> starkes Verlangen nach e. Zigarette<sup>13</sup> Nikotinentwöhnung, -ersatztherapie<sup>14</sup> nikotinhalt. Kaugummi<sup>15</sup> Nikotinpflaster<sup>16</sup> Nikotinsäure<sup>17</sup>

17

## anzünden

Feuer<sup>1</sup> jem. Feuer geben<sup>2</sup> Feuerzeug<sup>3</sup> Streichholz<sup>4</sup> Zigarettenanzünder<sup>5</sup> brennende Zigarette<sup>6</sup> 18

## Zigarette

Zigarre<sup>1</sup> Pfeife<sup>2</sup> Zigarillo<sup>3</sup> Filter<sup>4</sup> vorhersehen<sup>5</sup> Zigarettenstummel, Kippe<sup>6</sup> Zigarettenspitze<sup>7</sup> Zigarettenasche<sup>8</sup> Filterzigarette<sup>9</sup> leichte Zigarette<sup>10</sup> Pfeiffenhals, -rohr<sup>11</sup> Pfeifenreiniger<sup>12</sup> Zigarrenabschneider<sup>13</sup>

19

**snuff** [snʌf] *n* *rel* **sniffing**<sup>1</sup> [i], **snorting**<sup>2</sup> [ɔ:] *n* → U11-23; U44-2

finely powdered [au] tobacco taken by sniffing it up the nose

**sniff**<sup>3</sup> *v* & *n* • **sniffer**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **sniffle**<sup>5</sup> [i] *v* • **snuffle**<sup>5</sup> [Δ] *v*

» *It's about time you stopped taking snuff, don't you think. With the eyes closed, the patient sniffs and tries to identify the stimulus. Ask about the use of illicit drugs, reviewing major techniques of use (e.g. pills, smoking, sniffing or huffing [Δ], snorting, injecting [dʒe]).*

Use **to take**<sup>6</sup> / **a pinch** [tʃ] of<sup>7</sup> **snuff** • **snuff box**<sup>8</sup> • **glue**<sup>9</sup> [u:] / **gasoline** [gæs'li:n] / **solvent**<sup>10</sup> **sniffing** • **cocaine**<sup>11</sup> [eɪ] / **chronic snorting**

### Schnupftabak

Schnüffeln, Schnupfen, Inhalation<sup>1</sup> Schnupfen<sup>2</sup> schnüffeln, schnupfen; Schnüffeln<sup>3</sup> Schnüffler(in)<sup>4</sup> schniefen<sup>5</sup> schnupfen<sup>6</sup> eine Prise Schnupftabak<sup>7</sup> Schnupftabakdose<sup>8</sup> Klebstoffschnüffeln<sup>9</sup> Inhalation v. Lösungsmitteln<sup>10</sup> Cocain-schnupfen<sup>11</sup>

20

## Unit 11 Substance Abuse

Related Units: **9** Drugs & Remedies, **10** Alcohol & Smoking, **7** States of Consciousness, **77** Mental Health, **91** Toxicology, **135** Anesthesiology, **124** Medical Emergencies

**dope** [doup] *n* *inf* *syn* **stuff** [Λ] *n* *inf*, **(street) drug** [Λ], **narcotic** *n* → U9-3

slang expression for illicitly<sup>1</sup> bought, self-administered substances [Δ] taken for mood-altering purposes

**dope**<sup>2</sup> *v* *inf* • **drugged**<sup>3</sup> [drʌgd] *adj* • **drug-related** *adj* • **narcotic**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» *Do you think he is pushing dope? Somebody must have doped her drink. He was drugged to the eyeballs<sup>5</sup>. Where did you get the stuff from? "Street drugs" are almost always adulterated<sup>6</sup> [Δ] with one or more other compounds. They were all arrested on drug charges<sup>7</sup>. Though controversial, decriminalization of drug use, particularly of narcotics, and registration of addicts would probably decrease drug-related handgun violence [ai].*

Use **to smoke**<sup>8</sup>/push<sup>9</sup> **dope** • **dope dealer or pusher**<sup>10</sup> / test • to be **doped up** • **to do/be on or take**<sup>11</sup>/push<sup>9</sup> **drugs** • **narcotic**<sup>12</sup> / depressant<sup>13</sup> / illegal [i:] or illicit [is] **drug** • **soft**<sup>14</sup> / **hard**<sup>15</sup> / **recreational**<sup>16</sup> [eɪ] **drug** • hallucinogenic [dʒe]/ mood [u:] elevating / designer [ai] **drugs** • **drug (ab)use**<sup>17</sup> (pattern) / habit / needle / **intoxication**<sup>18</sup> • **drug** addiction / **addict**<sup>19</sup> • **drug trafficking**<sup>20</sup> / **counselor**<sup>21</sup> [au]/-related death • **Drug Abuse Warning Network (abbr DAWN)** • **heavily**<sup>5</sup> [e] **drugged** • **narcotic** effect / **addict**<sup>19</sup> / **agent**<sup>12</sup> [eɪdʒ'nt] • **narcotic** analgesics [dʒi:] / **premedication**<sup>22</sup> • **opioid**<sup>23</sup> [oupi'oid] / parenteral / IV<sup>24</sup> / long-acting **narcotics**

### Rauschmittel, -gift, (illegale) Droge, Stoff

illegal<sup>1</sup> betäuben, dopen, Rauschmittel beimischen<sup>2</sup> unter Drogen einfluss stehend<sup>3</sup> betäubend, -rauschend, narkotisch<sup>4</sup> mit Drogen vollgepumpt<sup>5</sup> verunreinigt<sup>6</sup> Drogendelikt<sup>7</sup> Haschisch rauchen<sup>8</sup> mit Drogen handeln, dealen<sup>9</sup> Drogenhändler(in), Dealer(in)<sup>10</sup> drogen-süchtig sein, Drogen nehmen<sup>11</sup> Rauschgift, Betäubungsmittel, Narkotikum<sup>12</sup> Beruhigungsmittel, Sedativum<sup>13</sup> leichte Droge<sup>14</sup> harte D.<sup>15</sup> Freizeitdroge<sup>16</sup> Drogenmissbrauch<sup>17</sup> Arzneimittelvergiftung<sup>18</sup> Drogenabhängige(r), Rauschgift-süchtige(r)<sup>19</sup> Drogenhandel<sup>20</sup> Drogenberater(in)<sup>21</sup> medikamentöse Narkosevorbereitung<sup>22</sup> Opioid<sup>23</sup> Injektionsnarkotika<sup>24</sup>

1

**craving** [kreɪvɪŋ] *n* *clin*

*sim* **urge**<sup>1</sup> [ɜ:rɜ:ʒ], **compulsion**<sup>2</sup> [Δ] *n* → U73-11, U77-19

strong, often uncontrollable desire [ai] for sth., e.g. drugs, cigarettes, or certain foods

**crave**<sup>3</sup> [eɪ] *v* *clin* • **urge**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **compel**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **compulsive**<sup>6</sup> *adj* • **compelling**<sup>7</sup> *adj*

» *These infants are often found to crave salt [ɔ:]. Factors contributing to relapse include craving for nicotine<sup>8</sup> [i] and social pressures. They crave nicotine and have a strong urge to smoke. Elimination of drug craving and withdrawal [ɔ:] symptoms may not be possible initially.*

Use **craving** for sugar [ʃ] / **for attention**<sup>9</sup> / to be loved / for fresh air • carbohydrate [ai] / alcohol<sup>10</sup> / drug / cigarette<sup>8</sup> **craving** • to have/produce **a craving** • **to reduce/satisfy**<sup>11</sup> / [-far] lose **one's craving** • **food**<sup>12</sup> / urges and **cravings** • to feel an / strong / **compelling**<sup>13</sup> **urge** • sucking [Δ] / **sexual**<sup>14</sup> **urge** • **urge to** smoke / **void**<sup>15</sup> [vɔɪd] / defecate [def'ekeɪt] • **compulsive eating disorder**<sup>16</sup> / use of drugs / **urge**<sup>13</sup> / **neurosis**<sup>17</sup> [n(j)uə'rəʊsɪs]

### Appetenz, starkes/ unbezwingbares Verlangen

Verlangen, Drang<sup>1</sup> (innerer) Zwang, Druck<sup>2</sup> s. sehnen/ verlangen nach<sup>3</sup> eindringlich bitten, drängen<sup>4</sup> zwingen<sup>5</sup> zwanghaft, Zwangs-<sup>6</sup> zwingend<sup>7</sup> Nikotinsucht<sup>8</sup> starkes Bedürfnis nach Aufmerksamkeit<sup>9</sup> Alkoholsucht, Alkoholismus<sup>10</sup> seine Gelüste befriedigen<sup>11</sup> Essensgelüste<sup>12</sup> unwiderstehlicher Drang<sup>13</sup> Sexualtrieb<sup>14</sup> Harnrang<sup>15</sup> Essstörung<sup>16</sup> Zwangsneurose<sup>17</sup>

2



**addiction** [əˈdɪkʃən] *n* *syn* **dependence, dependency** *n*, → U10-12  
*rel* **abuse**<sup>1</sup> [əˈbjuːs] *n* & *v*

chronic, relapsing disease characterized by compulsive drug seeking [i:] and dependency on a substance that is psychologically [saɪkə-] or physically [fɪz-] **habit-forming**<sup>2</sup> (esp. alcohol or narcotic drugs)

**dependent**<sup>3</sup> (up) *adj* • **drug-dependent**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **abuser** *n* • **abused** *adj*

» The most troublesome [Δ] complication is addiction to narcotics. Drugs with little or no potential for addiction<sup>5</sup> or significant dependence should be used to treat chronic benign [aɪ] pain. Two members of the family have known and untreated substance abuse disorders.

Use to develop/overcome **an addiction** • drug / methadone / nicotine **addiction** • iatrogenic [aɪə-] / some level of **addiction** • **addiction** to narcotics / **potential**<sup>5</sup> • to cause/produce/develop/diminish/be predisposed to **dependence** • **physical or physiologic**<sup>8</sup> [fɪzi-] / psychologic(al) **dependence** • narcotic / **prescription drug**<sup>9</sup> **dependence** • **dependence liability**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] • to detect<sup>11</sup> **abuse** • adolescent / multiple / **IV**<sup>12</sup> **drug abuse** • recreational / **physician**<sup>13</sup> **drug abuse** • **substance**<sup>14</sup> / alcohol / cocaine [eɪ] **abuse** • stimulant / polydrug / child **abuse** • drug / narcotics / child **abuser**

**addicted (to)** *adj* *clin* & *term* *syn* **hooked** [ʊ] (on), turned on [ɜ:] *adj* *inf*

**addictive**<sup>1</sup> *adj* *clin* & *term* • **addicting**<sup>1</sup> *adj*

» The infant of a woman addicted to opioids (e.g. heroin, morphine, methadone) should be observed [ɜ:] for the development of withdrawal [wɪ:] symptoms<sup>2</sup> within 72 h after delivery. Many patients become addicted to the narcotics prescribed [aɪ] for pain. She's hooked on cocaine<sup>3</sup>.

Use to be/become **addicted** • heroin-/ cocaine<sup>3</sup>- / physically [ɪ] **addicted** • **psychologically**<sup>4</sup> [saɪkə-] / moderately **addicted** • to be/get hooked on a drug<sup>5</sup> • **addictive properties**<sup>6</sup> / **potential**<sup>7</sup> / **medications**<sup>8</sup> • **addictive disorder**<sup>9</sup> / **behavior**<sup>10</sup> [eɪ] / illness • **addictive** personality / daily dose • highly **addictive/ing** • **addicting agent**<sup>11</sup> [eɪdʒənt]

**tolerance** *n* *clin* *rel* **habituation**<sup>1</sup>, **physical dependence**<sup>2</sup> *n* *term*

condition in which higher doses of a drug are required to produce the same effect as during initial use

**tolerate**<sup>3</sup> [tɒlɪəreɪt] *v* • **tolerant**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **tolerable**<sup>5</sup> [tɒlɪəəbl] *adj*

**habit**<sup>6</sup> [hæbɪt] *n* • **habitual**<sup>7</sup> [həbɪtʃuəl] *adj* • **habituating**<sup>8</sup> *adj* → U10-11

» Physical [fɪzɪkəl] dependence and tolerance do not accompany all forms of drug dependence. All available hypnotics [hɪp-] involve some risk of overdose, habituation, tolerance, and addiction. Before developing the drug dependence, he did not demonstrate the pleasure-oriented [eɜ] behavior usually attributed to<sup>9</sup> addicts.

Use drug / alcohol / opiate [oʊpiət] **tolerance** • potential for / cross<sup>10</sup>- / **development of**<sup>11</sup> / risk of **tolerance** • **tolerance to** opioids / to the psychoactive effects of marijuana • **tolerant to** opioids / alcohol • to do sth. out of or from<sup>12</sup> / pick up a<sup>13</sup> / get into the **habit** • smoking / methadone **habit** • **habit-forming**<sup>8</sup> / change • **habitual** drug user • to cause / risk of / drug<sup>14</sup> **habituation** • **habituating potential**<sup>15</sup> / medications / **dependence**<sup>16</sup>

**addict** *n* *syn* **substance** [Δ] **abuser** *n* *term*, **junkie** or **junky** [dʒʌŋki] *n* *inf*

person who is physiologically dependent on a substance so that abrupt [Δ] **deprivation**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] of the substance produces withdrawal [wɪ:] symptoms [ɪ]

**nonaddict**<sup>2</sup> *n* *clin* • **abused**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **drug-abusing**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» Addicts have been described as escapists who cannot face realities or as withdrawn<sup>5</sup> [-wɪn] or depressed individuals with a history of suicide [suːsaɪd] attempts and self-inflicted injuries<sup>6</sup>.

Use narcotic / drug / heroin / teenage<sup>7</sup> **addict** • **substance abuse** problem / **prevention**<sup>8</sup> • **substance abuse** disorder / **treatment**<sup>9</sup> (program) • **abused** drugs<sup>10</sup> • drug / opioid **abuser**

## Abhängigkeit, Sucht

Missbrauch, Abusus; missbrauchen<sup>1</sup> suchterzeugend, süchtigmachend<sup>2</sup> abhängig<sup>3</sup> drogenabhängig<sup>4</sup> Abhängigkeits-, Suchtpotential<sup>5</sup> eine gewisse Abhängigkeit<sup>6</sup> suchtgefährdet sein<sup>7</sup> physische Abhängigkeit<sup>8</sup> Medikamentenabhängigkeit<sup>9</sup> Suchtneigung, -gefahr<sup>10</sup> Missbrauch aufdecken<sup>11</sup> intravenöser Drogengebrauch/ -missbrauch<sup>12</sup> ärztl. Arzneimittelmisbrauch<sup>13</sup> Drogenmissbrauch, -gebrauch<sup>14</sup>

3

## süchtig, abhängig

süchtigmachend, suchterzeugend<sup>1</sup> Entzugerscheinungen<sup>2</sup> kokainabhängig<sup>3</sup> psychisch abhängig<sup>4</sup> drogenabhängig werden<sup>5</sup> suchtbildende Eigenschaften<sup>6</sup> Abhängigkeits-, Suchtpotential<sup>7</sup> suchterzeugende Medikamente<sup>8</sup> Sucht(krankheit)<sup>9</sup> Suchtverhalten<sup>10</sup> suchterzeugende Substanz, Suchtmittel<sup>11</sup>

4

## Toleranz

Gewöhnung<sup>1</sup> physische Abhängigkeit<sup>2</sup> (er)dulden, tolerieren, vertrauen<sup>3</sup> widerstandsfähig; nachsichtig, tolerant<sup>4</sup> erträglich, tolerierbar<sup>5</sup>, (An)gewohnheit, Sucht<sup>6</sup> gewohnheitsmäßig, habituell<sup>7</sup> suchterzeugend, -bildend<sup>8</sup> nachgesagt, zugeschrieben<sup>9</sup> Kreuztoleranz<sup>10</sup> Toleranzentwicklung<sup>11</sup> etw. aus Gewohnheit tun<sup>12</sup> s. etw. angewöhnen<sup>13</sup> Arzneimittel-, Drogengewöhnung<sup>14</sup> Suchtpotential<sup>15</sup> psychische Abhängigkeit<sup>16</sup>

5

## Drogengebraucher(in), (Drogen)süchtige(r), -abhängige(r)

Entzug<sup>1</sup> nicht-abhängige(r) Drogengebraucher(in)<sup>2</sup> missbraucht<sup>3</sup> süchtig<sup>4</sup> verschlossen<sup>5</sup> Selbstverstümmelungen<sup>6</sup> drogenabhängige(r) Jugendliche(r)<sup>7</sup> Suchtmittelprophylaxe<sup>8</sup> Suchtentwöhnungsbehandlung, Drogenentzugsbehandlung<sup>9</sup> missbräuchl. verwendete Medikamente<sup>10</sup>

6

**drug dealer** [i:] n clinsyn **pusher** [u], **trafficker** [æ] n, sim **smuggler**<sup>1</sup> [ʌ] n inf

person who sells illegal [i:] drugs in the streets

» It was only a minor [aɪ] **incident**<sup>2</sup> in the unending battle between drug dealers and undercover [ʌ] **agents**<sup>3</sup> [eɪdʒ]. The **thugs**<sup>4</sup> [ʌ] posing [oʊ] as security guards [gɑ:rdz] were the pushers at parties where drugs were portrayed [eɪ] as harmless.

Use **major** / to arrest a **drug dealer** • a ring of<sup>5</sup> / drug / hashish **smugglers** • **drug** baron or lord / **cartel**<sup>6</sup> / control • **drug enforcement agency** [eɪ] or **administration**<sup>7</sup> (abbr DEA) • **drug clinic** / **smuggling**<sup>8</sup> • **drug charge**<sup>9</sup> [tʃɑ:rdʒ] / **counselor**<sup>10</sup> [aʊ]

**shoot (up)** [ʃu:t ʌp] v inf syn **fix** v, sim **mainline**<sup>1</sup> [meɪnlaɪn], **pop**<sup>2</sup> [pɔ:] v inf

to inject narcotics with a needle and syringe either subcutaneously or intravenously

**shot**<sup>3</sup> [ʃɔ:t] n inf • **fixer**<sup>4</sup> n • **fix**<sup>2</sup> n • **mainline**<sup>5</sup> n

» We saw him shooting up in the bathroom. She is shooting heroin five times a week. From this time on he needed his regular fix of heroin. I could have done anything for a shot of heroin. With **mainlining** the initial **thrill**<sup>6</sup> is more immediate. The classic routes of administration are **sniffing**<sup>7</sup>, **skin popping**<sup>8</sup> and **mainlining**, each being associated with a more intense experience as well as addiction liability [laɪəbɪlətɪ].

**rush** [rʌʃ] n clin & inf syn **flash** [flæʃ], **bang** [æ], **buzz** [bʌz] n inf,rel **flashback**<sup>1</sup> n → U74-11surge [sɜ:rdʒ] of **euphoric** [ju:f-] **pleasure**<sup>2</sup> [pleʒə] that rapidly follows administration of a drug

» The warm, glowing sensation [eɪ] rapidly spreading [e] over the body which is comparable to **sexual release**<sup>3</sup> [i:] is called rush. Mental imagery from a "bad trip" later triggered by mild stimuli [aɪ] such as marijuana, alcohol, or **psychic** [saɪkɪk] **trauma** [ɔ:] are termed **flashbacks**.

**trip (out)** v inf rel **spaced** [speɪst] **out**<sup>1</sup>, **high**<sup>1</sup>, **stoned**<sup>2</sup> [oʊ] adj inf → U7-9

to have an imaginary [ædʒ] experience while under the influence of a hallucinogenic [dʒɛ] substance

**trip**<sup>3</sup> n inf • **high**<sup>4</sup> [haɪ] n

» Has she been tripping out on LSD again? She was as high as a kite<sup>1</sup> [kaɪt]. He looks totally spaced out. With "free-base" **cocaine** [eɪ] (one version is now widely labeled [eɪ] as "crack") the speed [i:] of onset is shortened and the intensity of the high is magnified.

Use **bad**<sup>5</sup> / **horror**<sup>5</sup> **trip** • to block the / moderate / opiate / cocaine **high** • **to get/be high** on drugs<sup>1</sup>

**overdose** [oʊvəˈdoʊz] n term & clin, abbr **OD** rel **golden shot**<sup>1</sup> n inf → U122-4an excessive dosage of a drug the effects of which may range from mania [eɪ] to coma and death **overdose**<sup>2</sup> v term & clin • **overdosage**<sup>3</sup> n • **overdosing** n & adj → U121-7

» The patient was overdosed with cannabinoids. If opioid overdose is strongly suspected, give additional doses of naloxone. The overdosed patient should be screened for ethanol [e].

Use to die of<sup>4</sup>/take **an OD** • narcotic / drug / **barbiturate**<sup>5</sup> **overdose** • digitalis [dʒɪ]/ opiate / heroin **overdose** • **accidental**<sup>6</sup> / intentional / (sub)acute [ʌ] **overdose** • **overdose** of medication • **overdosed** patient / with stimulants • symptoms [ɪ] of / treatment for **overdosing** • **differential diagnosis with**<sup>7</sup> **overdosing**

**withdrawal** or **abstinence symptoms** n clin → U10-12rel **cold turkey**<sup>1</sup> [ɔ:] n inf

unpleasant [e] or life-threatening [e] reactions (e.g. anxiety, insomnia, tremor, etc.) occurring [æɪ] in an addict who is deprived [aɪ] of his accustomed [ʌ] dose of alcohol, narcotics etc.

» Patients receiving [i:] regular doses of opioids for two weeks or more frequently develop a physiologic dependence with the development of withdrawal symptoms (agitation [dʒɪ], tachypnea [i:], tachycardia [k], diarrhea) upon acute termination of the drug. I've gone through three days of cold turkey.

Use to lead to/show/**precipitate**<sup>2</sup> [sɪ] /**avert**<sup>3</sup> [æɪ] /**relieve**<sup>4</sup> [i:] **withdrawal symptoms** • acute / severe / mild / alcohol **withdrawal symptoms** • **substance or drug**<sup>5</sup> / neuroleptic / barbiturate / **gradual**<sup>6</sup> **withdrawal** • **withdrawal syndrome**<sup>7</sup> / sickness / **seizures**<sup>8</sup> [si:ʒəz] / from **methadone** • permanent [æɪ] / drug / **sexual**<sup>9</sup> **abstinence** • **abstinence** period / from drug products<sup>10</sup>

**Drogenhändler(in), -dealer(in)**Schmuggler(in)<sup>1</sup> Zwischenfall<sup>2</sup> verdeckte Ermittler<sup>3</sup> Schlägertypen<sup>4</sup> Schmugglerring<sup>5</sup> Drogenkartell<sup>6</sup> U.S. Drogenaufsichtsbehörde<sup>7</sup> Drogenschmuggel<sup>8</sup> Anklage wegen Drogenmissbrauchs<sup>9</sup> Drogenberater(in)<sup>10</sup>

7

**fixen, schießen, Schuss setzen, Drogen injizieren**i.v. spritzen, fixen<sup>1</sup> subkutan spritzen, (Pillen) schlucken<sup>2</sup> Schuss (Drogeninjektion); Spritze (Injektion), Impfung<sup>3</sup> Fixer(in)<sup>4</sup> (i.v.) Schuss<sup>5</sup> Kick<sup>6</sup> Schnüffeln<sup>7</sup> subkutanes Spritzen<sup>8</sup>

8

**Flash**Flashback, Echorausch, Rauschzustand ohne Drogeneinnahme<sup>1</sup> Euphoriewelle<sup>2</sup> Orgasmus<sup>3</sup>

9

**(auf) einen Trip gehen/ einwerfen**im Drogenrausch/ auf dem Trip/ high sein<sup>1</sup> stoned, im Drogenrausch, unter Drogeneinfluss stehend, angetört<sup>2</sup> Drogenrausch, Trip<sup>3</sup> High-Gefühl, Hochgefühl<sup>4</sup> Horrortrip<sup>5</sup>

10

**Überdosis**goldener Schuss, tödl. Überdosis (v. Heroin)<sup>1</sup> überdosieren, eine Überdosis verabreichen<sup>2</sup> Überdosierung<sup>3</sup> an einer Überdosis sterben<sup>4</sup> Barbituratüberdosis<sup>5</sup> akzidentelle Überdosis<sup>6</sup> Differentialdiagnose bei Überdosierung<sup>7</sup>

11

**Entzugserscheinungen**kalter Entzug, körperl. Entzug ohne flankierende Medikation<sup>1</sup> Entzugserscheinungen auslösen<sup>2</sup> Entzugserscheinungen vermeiden<sup>3</sup> Entzugserscheinungen abschwächen/ mildern<sup>4</sup> Drogenentzug<sup>5</sup> schrittweise Entziehung<sup>6</sup> Entzugs-, Abstinenzsyndrom<sup>7</sup> Krampfanfälle bei Entzug<sup>8</sup> sexuelle Abstinenz/ Enthaltbarkeit<sup>9</sup> Drogen-, Suchtmittelabstinenz<sup>10</sup>

12

**halfway house** *n clin* *rel sheltered* [ˈʃɛltərd] **workshop**<sup>1</sup> *n clin* → U142-28

specialized treatment facility for alcoholics, drug addicts, or psychiatric patients who no longer require full hospital care but are not yet prepared to adjust [Δ] to living independently

- » *Social and therapeutic environments* [aɪ] such as *day hospitals*, *halfway houses*, and *self-help communities*<sup>2</sup> utilize *peer pressure*<sup>3</sup> to modify the self-destructive [Δ] behavior. Appropriate care includes providing information about legal [i:] services, *shelters*<sup>4</sup> and *safe houses*, *hotlines*, *support groups*<sup>5</sup>, and *counseling* [aʊ] services.
- Use *halfway house* for drug addicts / alcoholics / *mentally retarded*<sup>5</sup> / *runaways* [Δ] • *halfway house for physically handicapped*<sup>5</sup> / *penal* [i:] *rehabilitation*<sup>6</sup> • *sheltered environment*<sup>7</sup> / *living arrangement*<sup>8</sup> / *job*

**joint** [dʒɔɪnt] *n inf* *syn reefer* [ri:fə], **spiff** *n, sim* **roach**<sup>1</sup> [routʃ] *n inf*

marihuana leaves rolled into a cigarette for smoking

- » He claimed [ei] that smoking joints is less harmful than chronic alcohol abuse.
- Use *to smoke*<sup>2</sup>/pass<sup>3</sup>/roll<sup>4</sup>/blast **a joint** • *to blast a roach*

**marijuana** or **marihuana** *n* *syn cannabis* *n term, rel hashish*<sup>1</sup> *n*

dried leaves or pressed resin<sup>2</sup> (hashish) of the *hemp plant*<sup>3</sup>; smoked or *chewed*<sup>4</sup> for its euphoric effects

**cannabinoid**<sup>5</sup> *n term* • **cannabinol**<sup>6</sup> *n*

- » *Marihuana derivatives* such as *tetrahydrocannabinol* (abbr *THC*) are about as effective as *oral prochlorperazine*. It is wise for *nursing mothers*<sup>7</sup> to avoid marijuana. *Phencyclidine*<sup>8</sup> (abbr *PCP*) – a common *adulterant*<sup>9</sup> of marihuana, amphetamines, and street hallucinogens) – is also called “angel dust” or “crystal.” Hashish is the most potent of the cannabis preparations.
- Use smoked / *sniffed*<sup>10</sup> / *ingested*<sup>11</sup> [dʒɛ] / *occasional* [eɪz] use of **marijuana** • **marijuana** cigarette<sup>13</sup> / smoking / *derivatives*<sup>14</sup> • **marijuana** intoxication /-induced tachycardia • high-potency **cannabis** • **cannabis** compound [aʊ] / users /-induced brain atrophy • **cannabinoid** abuse • *flashback reactions* with **cannabinoids**

**Note:** Street names for cannabis include **grass**, **pot**, **weed**, **tea**, **dope**, and **Mary Jane**, while hashish may be referred to as **hash**, **ganga**, or **Goma de Mota**.

**barbiturates** [ɪtʃ] *n pl term* *syn barbs, downers* [aʊ], **(Mexican) reds** *n inf*

addictive derivatives of *barbituric acid*<sup>1</sup> (e.g. phenobarbital) which have *sedative*<sup>2</sup> and *hypnotic* effects → U92-24; U93-14

**barbed up**<sup>3</sup> *adj inf* • **barbiturism**<sup>4</sup> *n term* • **barbituric** *adj* • **-barbital** *comb*

- » Because alcohol, barbiturates, and benzodiazepines [aɪ] are cross-tolerant, benzodiazepines are substituted [Δ] for alcohol in the treatment of alcohol withdrawal.
- Use *ingested* / *injected* [dʒɛ] / high-dose **barbiturates** • (ultra-)short-acting<sup>5</sup> / long-acting<sup>6</sup> **barbiturates** • **barbiturate poisoning**<sup>7</sup> / therapy • **barbiturate withdrawal**<sup>8</sup> / overdose / coma • **pheno**<sup>9</sup> [fi:nə] /sec/ pento/ hexo**barbital** • thio**barbituric** [θaɪə-] *acid*

**amphetamine** *n term* *rel stimulant*<sup>1</sup>, **Ecstasy**<sup>2</sup> *n, abbr XTC*

one of a group of addictive stimulants including *dextroamphetamine*<sup>3</sup> and *methamphetamine*<sup>4</sup>

- » *MDMA* (*methylenedioxyamphetamine*), an *amphetamine derivative*<sup>5</sup> better known as “ecstasy,” is a *designer drug*<sup>6</sup> with high abuse potential and neurotoxicity. Illicitly obtained stimulants may contain *caffeine*, *ephedrine*, *methylenedioxyamphetamine* (abbr *MDA*), and *phencyclidine*. *XTC*, the “peace and love” drug of the rave party culture, is similar to *MDA* in its chemistry and may have effects similar to other amphetamines. The amount [aʊ] of *MDMA* in *XTC* needed to get high is close to the toxic dose.
- Use *dextro/ methamphetamine* • **amphetamine** intake<sup>7</sup> / toxicity / poisoning • **amphetamine** abuse / epidemic<sup>8</sup> • **amphetamine**-barbiturate combination tablet • **amphetamine** withdrawal / *psychosis*<sup>9</sup> [saɪk-] / overdose • **over-the-counter**<sup>10</sup> [aʊ] (abbr *OTC*) / *CNS*<sup>11</sup> **stimulant** / *respiratory*<sup>12</sup> / *appetite*<sup>13</sup> **stimulant** • *to try/experiment with/deal with/be high on XTC* • **XTC pills**<sup>14</sup> / *trade*<sup>15</sup> / *user* • **XTC**-related violence / *smuggling route*

**Note:** Street names for various types of amphetamines include **black beauties**, **lid poppers**, **pep pills**, **speed** (injectable), and **ice** (crystalline [ɪ]).

**Rehabilitationseinrichtung**

geschützte Werkstatt<sup>1</sup> Selbsthilfegruppen<sup>2</sup> Gruppendynamik<sup>3</sup> Zufluchtsstätten, Wohnheime<sup>4</sup> Behindertenintegrationszentrum<sup>5</sup> Rehabilitationszentrum f. Straffällige<sup>6</sup> geschützte Umgebung<sup>7</sup> betreutes Wohnen<sup>8</sup>

13

**selbstgedrehte Marihuana, Haschischzigarette, Joint**

Joint-Stummel<sup>1</sup> einen Joint rauchen<sup>2</sup> e. Joint herumgehen lassen<sup>3</sup> e. Joint drehen<sup>4</sup>

14

**Marihuana, Cannabis**

Haschisch, Kiff<sup>1</sup> Harz<sup>2</sup> Hanf<sup>3</sup> gekaut<sup>4</sup> Cannabinoid<sup>5</sup> Cannabinol<sup>6</sup> stillende Mütter<sup>7</sup> Phencyclidin, PCP<sup>8</sup> unreine Mischung<sup>9</sup> geschnupftes Marihuana<sup>10</sup> oral aufgenommenes M.<sup>11</sup> gelegentl. Marihuanagebrauch<sup>12</sup> Marihuanazigarette<sup>13</sup> Marihuanaprodukte<sup>14</sup>

15

**Barbiturate, Beruhigungs-, Schlaf-, Narkosemittel**

Barbitursäure<sup>1</sup> sedierend<sup>2</sup> unter Barbiturateinfluss stehend<sup>3</sup> Barbituratabhängigkeit, -vergiftung<sup>4</sup> kurzwirkende Barbiturate<sup>5</sup> langwirkende B.<sup>6</sup> Barbituratvergiftung<sup>7</sup> Barbituratentzug<sup>8</sup> Phenobarbital<sup>9</sup>

16

**Amphetamin, Weckamin**

Stimulans, Aufputschmittel<sup>1</sup> Ecstasy, Extasy, XTC<sup>2</sup> Dextroamphetamine<sup>3</sup> Methamphetamine<sup>4</sup> Amphetaminderivat<sup>5</sup> Designerdroge<sup>6</sup> Amphetamineinnahme<sup>7</sup> Amphetaminepidemie<sup>8</sup> Amphetamineinsynchose<sup>9</sup> rezeptfreies Stimulans/ Aufputschmittel<sup>10</sup> ZNS-stimulierende Substanz<sup>11</sup> Atemstimulans<sup>12</sup> appetitanregendes Mittel<sup>13</sup> Ecstasy-Tabletten<sup>14</sup> Ecstasy-Handel<sup>15</sup>

17

**morphine** [mɔːrfɪn] *n term* *rel* **opiate**<sup>1</sup>, **codeine**<sup>2</sup>, **papaverine**<sup>3</sup> *n term*

main and most powerful narcotic alkaloid of opium which is highly addictive and is used as an analgesic<sup>4</sup> [dʒi:] and respiratory depressant in medicine

**morphinism**<sup>5</sup> *n* • **morphinist**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **opium** [ɒpɪəm] *n* • **opioid** *adj & n* → U135-5

» *Morphine is not only more potent than codeine [i:] but also has a higher maximal ceiling [si:] effect*<sup>7</sup>. At least 25% of persistent opiate abusers are likely to die within 10-20 years of abuse. Opiate antagonists (e.g. naloxone) compete [i:] with heroin and other opiates for **opioid receptors**<sup>8</sup>.

Use **intravenous** [i:] / **oral** / **topical** / **epidural** / **controlled-release**<sup>9</sup> [i:] **morphine** • **morphine** sulfate [Δ] / **dependence**<sup>10</sup> / **hydrochloride** • **morphine** cocktail / **tablet** / **addiction**<sup>10</sup> • **opium alkaloid**<sup>11</sup> / **derivative** / **tincture**<sup>12</sup> • **smoked**<sup>13</sup> / **synthetic** / **exogenous** [ɛdʒ] / **endogenous opiates** • **opiate drugs**<sup>14</sup> / **-dependent** / **tolerance** • **opiate** overdose / **antagonists**<sup>15</sup> / **withdrawal** • **potent** / **weak opioid** • **opioid** addict / **medication** / **-like effects** • **opioid** analgesic / **maintenance** [ei] **therapy**<sup>16</sup>

**heroin** [həroɪn] *n* *syn* **diacetylmorphine** [daɪəʃɪtɪˈmɔːfɪn] *n term*, *rel* **methadone**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

highly addictive opioid (**morphine derivative**)<sup>2</sup> prohibited in most countries due to its potential for abuse

» *Most opioids, including heroin, methadone, meperidine, morphine, and codeine, are excreted in the urine within 24 hours and can be readily [e] detected. Currently, methadone substitution is the preferred method of opioid withdrawal.*

Use **heroin** user / **injection** [dʒe] / **addiction**<sup>3</sup> • **heroin** withdrawal / **substitute**<sup>4</sup> [Δ] / **overdose** / **-addicted**<sup>5</sup> • **intravenous** [i:] / **dependent on**<sup>5</sup> / **street** / **black tar**<sup>6</sup> **heroin** • **methadone maintenance program**<sup>7</sup> / (use in) **detoxification** • **heroin-associated** nephropathy / **-addicted mother**<sup>8</sup> • **heroin-dependent** person / **-induced** euphoria

**Note:** Street names for heroin include **junk** [dʒʌŋk], **smack**, **big H**, and **mud**.

**cocaine** [kəʊkeɪn] *n* *rel* **crack**<sup>1</sup> [æ] (**cocaine**), **speedballs**<sup>2</sup> [i:] *n inf*

alkaloid obtained from coca leaves<sup>3</sup> or by synthesis from ecgonine or its derivatives; it has moderate vasoconstrictor activity and pronounced [au] psychotropic effects; its salts are used as a local anesthetic

**cocainization**<sup>4</sup> *n term* • **cocaine-induced** *adj*

» *Cocaine is a stimulant and local anesthetic [e] not a narcotic. There is an increased incidence of developmental delay [ei] in cocaine-exposed, very low birth weight infants. Cocaine smugglers [Δ] may swallow small packets of cocaine in balloons [u:] or condoms. Cocaine cannot be safely used while breastfeeding<sup>5</sup>, as it persists in the milk for up to 24 h. Persistent hemorrhage required **topical cocainization**<sup>4</sup>.*

Use **to snort**<sup>6</sup> / **inject** / **abuse** **cocaine** • **free-base** or **volatile**<sup>7</sup> **cocaine** • **street**<sup>8</sup> / **smokable** **cocaine** • **topical** / **adulterated**<sup>9</sup> [Δ] **cocaine** • **urine level of cocaine** • **cocaine** ingestion / **inhalation** / **base**<sup>10</sup> • **cocaine** snorting / **exposure** / **user** / **spray** • **cocaine solution**<sup>11</sup> / **toxicity** / **intoxication**<sup>12</sup> • **cocaine anesthesia**<sup>4</sup> / **-saturated cotton pledget**<sup>13</sup> [dʒ] • **cocaine-addicted** mother / **freebase** smoking / **-to-crime** connection

**Note:** Street names for cocaine include **coca**, **coke**, **snow**, **lady**, **flake**, and **paradise**.

**hallucinogen** [həluːsɪnədʒən] *n term* *syn* **hallucinogenic drug** *n* *sim* **psychedelic**<sup>1</sup> [saɪkədɛlɪk] *n term*

mind-altering substance whose most potent pharmacologic action is on the CNS (e.g. mescal)

**hallucinogenic**<sup>2</sup> [dʒe] *adj term* • **psychedelic**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **hallucinosis**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» *In normal subjects hallucinogens typically elicit<sup>5</sup> [s] optical or auditory hallucinations<sup>6</sup>, depersonalization, perceptual [sep] disturbances<sup>7</sup> [z:], and disturbances of thought processes.*

Use **hallucinogen** abuse / **user** / **poisoning** • **hallucinogenic mushrooms**<sup>8</sup> [Δ] • **psychedelic drug**<sup>1</sup> / **effect** / **-induced** / **experience** / **usage**<sup>9</sup> [juːsɪdʒ] • **substance-induced** / **alcoholic**<sup>10</sup> **hallucinosis**

## Morphium, Morphin

Opiat<sup>1</sup> Kodein<sup>2</sup> Papaverin<sup>3</sup> Analgetikum, Schmerzmittel<sup>4</sup> Morphinabhängigkeit; Morphinismus, (chron.) Morphinvergiftung<sup>5</sup> Morphiumsüchtige(r), Morphinist(in)<sup>6</sup> Ceiling-, Sättigungseffekt<sup>7</sup> Opioidrezeptoren<sup>8</sup> kontrollierte Gabe v. Morphin<sup>9</sup> Morphinabhängigkeit, Morphinismus<sup>10</sup> Opiumalkaloid<sup>11</sup> Tinctura Opii, Laudanum<sup>12</sup> Rauchopiate, Chandu, Tschandu<sup>13</sup> Opiate<sup>14</sup> Opiatantagonisten<sup>15</sup> Opioiderhaltungstherapie<sup>16</sup>

18

## Heroin, Dia(cetyl)morphin

Methadon<sup>1</sup> Morphinderivat<sup>2</sup> Heroinabhängigkeit<sup>3</sup> Heroinersatz<sup>4</sup> heroinabhängig<sup>5</sup> schwarzes Teerheroin, schwarzer Teer<sup>6</sup> Methadonsubstitutionstherapie, -ersatztherapie<sup>7</sup> heroinsüchtige Mutter<sup>8</sup>

19

## Kokain, Koks, Schnee

Crack, Kokainbase<sup>1</sup> Speedballs, Mixtur aus Heroin und Kokain<sup>2</sup> Cocablätter<sup>3</sup> Kokainisierung, Kokain-Lokalanästhesie<sup>4</sup> Stillen<sup>5</sup> Kokain schnupfen<sup>6</sup> rauchbares/ gelöstes Kokain, Free-Base<sup>7</sup> illegales K.<sup>8</sup> unreines K.<sup>9</sup> Kokainbase<sup>10</sup> Kokainlösung<sup>11</sup> Kokainvergiftung<sup>12</sup> mit Kokain getränkter Wattebausch<sup>13</sup>

20

## Halluzinogen

Psychedelikum, Psychodelikum, -dysleptikum, Psychotomimetikum<sup>1</sup> Halluzinationen auslösend, halluzinogen<sup>2</sup> psychodelisch, psychedelisch, bewusstseinsverändernd<sup>3</sup> Halluzinose<sup>4</sup> lösen aus<sup>5</sup> akust. Halluzinationen<sup>6</sup> Wahrnehmungsstörungen<sup>7</sup> halluzinogene Pilze<sup>8</sup> Konsum v. Psychodysleptika<sup>9</sup> Alkoholhalluzinose<sup>10</sup>

21

**LSD** *n* *syn* **acid** [æˈsɪd] *n inf, rel* **mescaline**<sup>1</sup> *n* or **mesc(al)**<sup>1</sup> *n inf*

psychedelic drug (**lysergic** [ˌzɪː ˈæɪd diethylamide]<sup>2</sup>) which induces hallucinatory states of a visual nature

» Because it is simple to produce and mimics<sup>3</sup> to some degree the traditional psychedelic drugs, PCP has become a common deceptive substitute for LSD, THC<sup>4</sup>, and mescaline. Tolerance develops rapidly for LSD-induced changes in psychological function when the drug is used over a course of 4 days or more.

Use **LSD** intake / **addict**<sup>5</sup> / **habit**<sup>6</sup> / **dependency**<sup>6</sup> • **LSD**-induced changes / withdrawal • **paper**<sup>7</sup> **acid** • **acidhead**<sup>5</sup> • ingested / smoked / snorted **mescaline**

**Note:** Street names for LSD include **blotter**, **Orange Sunshine**, **Purple Haze**, and **Blue Dragon**, while mescaline is also called **Big Chief** or **Cactus**.

**solvent** [ˈɒː] **sniffing** *n* *syn* **glue** [ɡluː] **huffing** [ʌ] *n inf, →* U10-20

**inhalant** [eɪ] **abuse** *n term, volatile substance abuse* *n term, abbr* **VSA**

inhaling [eɪ] volatile substances contained in many household products<sup>1</sup> in order to get high

» Sniffing of solvents and inhaling of gases (e.g. toluene, paint thinners<sup>2</sup>, nail polish<sup>3</sup>, aerosols) produce a form of inebriation<sup>4</sup> similar to that of volatile anesthetics<sup>5</sup>. Solvent abuse via paint, lacquer<sup>6</sup>, or glue sniffing is a relatively common form of substance abuse. Abuse of inhalants includes sniffing glue<sup>7</sup>, gasoline<sup>8</sup>, petroleum ether<sup>9</sup> [iː], spray paints<sup>10</sup>, and other hydrocarbons.

Use gasoline [ɡæsˈliːn] / glue / hydrocarbon<sup>11</sup> **sniffing** • household / organic<sup>12</sup> / lipid / volatile **solvents** • chlorinated<sup>13</sup> / aromatic hydrocarbon **solvent** • **solvent** user / exposure / intoxication<sup>14</sup> /-dependent • toxic **inhalant** • **inhalant** irritant / neurotoxicity

**doping** [ˈdɒpɪŋ] *n* *rel* **anabolic steroids**<sup>1</sup> [stɪˌɒː||sterɔɪdɪz] *n term*

use of banned<sup>2</sup> substances by athletes to improve their performance<sup>3</sup> in sporting competitions

**anti-doping** *adj & n*

» He claimed that he had nothing to do with doping. Had the athletes actually undergone blood doping procedures? Doping undermines<sup>4</sup> the integrity of sport and is a real danger to the health of athletes. We need to develop new anti-doping policies<sup>5</sup>.

Use inadvertent<sup>6</sup> [ɜːɪ] / (holistic) blood<sup>7</sup> / erythropoietin [ou] (*abbr* EPO) **doping** • **doping substance**<sup>8</sup> / **agent**<sup>8</sup> / charges<sup>9</sup> • **doping infractions**<sup>10</sup> [æːkʃ] / scandal / test<sup>11</sup> / expert • **anti-doping regulations or statutes**<sup>5</sup> / policy / **commission**<sup>12</sup>

**LSD, Acid**

Mescaline<sup>1</sup> Lysergsäurediethylamid<sup>2</sup> wirkt wie<sup>3</sup> Tetrahydrocannabinol, THC<sup>4</sup> LSD-Abhängige(r)<sup>5</sup> LSD-Sucht, -abhängigkeit<sup>6</sup> LSD-Blotter/ Pappen, auf Löschblatt geträufeltes LSD<sup>7</sup>

22

**Schnüffeln v. Lösungsmitteln**

Haushaltschemikalien<sup>1</sup> Farverdünnungsmittel<sup>2</sup> Nagellack<sup>3</sup> Rauschzustand<sup>4</sup> Inhalationsanästhetika, -narkotika<sup>5</sup> Lack<sup>6</sup> Klebstoff<sup>7</sup> Benzin<sup>8</sup> Petroläther<sup>9</sup> Spritzlacke<sup>10</sup> Schnüffeln v. Kohlenwasserstoffen<sup>11</sup> organische Lösungsmittel<sup>12</sup> chlorhalt. Lösungsmittel<sup>13</sup> Lösungsmittelintoxikation, -vergiftung<sup>14</sup>

23

**Doping**

Anabolika<sup>1</sup> verboten<sup>2</sup> Leistung<sup>3</sup> untergräbt<sup>4</sup> Dopingbestimmungen<sup>5</sup> unbeabsichtigtes/ ungewolltes Doping<sup>6</sup> Blutdoping<sup>7</sup> Dopingmittel<sup>8</sup> Dopingvorwürfe<sup>9</sup> Dopingvergehen<sup>10</sup> Dopingkontrolle, -test<sup>11</sup> Dopingkommission<sup>12</sup>

24

**Unit 12 Death & Mortality**

Related Units: **6** Accidents, **8** First Aid, **7** Consciousness, **89** Pathology, **123** Resuscitation, **125** Critical Care, **97** Oncology

**moribund** [ˈmɔːrɪbʌnd] *adj*

*syn* **on one's deathbed** [deθbed], **close to death, at death's door** *phr*

>to be in a very critical condition, close to death or in the terminal stages of a fatal illness<sup>1</sup>

» Bedfast<sup>2</sup>, paralyzed, and moribund patients must be turned frequently. Ms Kim is close to death now. When he was on his deathbed, he asked to see me a last time.

Use **moribund** patient [eɪ] / **victim**<sup>3</sup> / state

**im Sterben liegend;**

**todkrank**

tödliche Krankheit<sup>1</sup> bettlägerig<sup>2</sup> sterbendes Opfer<sup>3</sup>

1

**fatal** [ˈfeɪtəl] *adj* *syn* **lethal** [ˈliːθəl] *adj, rel* **terminal**<sup>1</sup> [ˈtɜːrminəl] *adj term*

leading to death or having extremely unfortunate, dire<sup>2</sup> [daɪə] or ruinous consequences

**fatality**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **fate**<sup>4</sup> [feɪt] *n* • **sublethal** *adj term* • **nonlethal** *adj* • **lethality** *n*

» Hepatitis [aɪ] A is more severe and more likely to be fatal in adults. Small amounts of this synthetic [sɪn-] narcotic are potentially lethal in children. In the terminal stages patients should be kept as comfortable as possible.

Use **fatal** accident / illness / heart [hɑːrt] attack / virus [aɪ] / infection • **fatal dose**<sup>5</sup> / complications / **outcome**<sup>6</sup> / **injury**<sup>7</sup> • **fatally wounded**<sup>8</sup> [uː] • **to cause**<sup>9</sup> **fatality** • **motor vehicle**<sup>10</sup> [iː] / **traffic**<sup>10</sup> **fatalities** • **fatality rate**<sup>11</sup> • **lethal injury**<sup>7</sup> / **damage** / injection [dʒeɪ] • **lethal dose**<sup>5</sup> / **factors**<sup>12</sup> / concentration • **lethal** complications / **mutation**<sup>13</sup> • **terminal cancer**<sup>14</sup> [s] / illness • **terminal stage**<sup>15</sup> / care / sedation [eɪ] • **terminally ill patient**<sup>16</sup>

**tödlich, letal, mit tödl.**

**Ausgang**

im Endstadium, End-, terminal<sup>1</sup> schrecklich<sup>2</sup> Todesfall, -opfer;<sup>3</sup> Schicksal<sup>4</sup> tödl./ letale Dosis<sup>5</sup> tödl. Ausgang<sup>6</sup> tödl. Verletzung<sup>7</sup> tödl. verwundet<sup>8</sup> zum Tode führen<sup>9</sup> Verkehrstote<sup>10</sup> Sterbe-, Sterblichkeitsziffer, Mortalität<sup>11</sup> Letalfaktoren, -gene<sup>12</sup> Letalmutation<sup>13</sup> Krebs im Endstadium<sup>14</sup> Endstadium<sup>15</sup> Patient(in) im Endstadium<sup>16</sup>

2

**mortal** [mɔ:rtəl] *adj & n* opposite **immortal**<sup>1</sup> *adj & n*

(adj) **unrelenting**<sup>2</sup> and deadly, unable to live on forever (n) a **human being**

**mortality**<sup>3</sup> [mɔ:rtæləti] *n* • **immortality** *n* • **immortalize** *v*

» The **commander** was **mortally wounded**<sup>4</sup> [u:ɪ]. He is **struggling** [Δ] to **come to grips**<sup>5</sup> with his own **mortality**. **Regular screening for breast** [e] **cancer helps decrease the mortality rate**<sup>6</sup>. **Telomerase** [-eɪz] **might be at least in part responsible for tumor cell immortality**.

Use **mortal** **danger** / **injury** / **enemy**<sup>7</sup> • **mortally offended**<sup>8</sup> • **perinatal**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] / **operative** / **overall**<sup>10</sup> **mortality** • **infant**<sup>11</sup> / **child(hood)**<sup>12</sup> / **treatment-related mortality** • **age-specific**<sup>13</sup> / **cause-specific** / **disease-specific**<sup>14</sup> **mortality** • **maternal**<sup>15</sup> [æɪ] / **reduction** [Δ] in / to **reduce** [-u:s] **mortality** • **high** / **low** / **cancer**<sup>16</sup> [kænsə] **mortality** • **mortality statistics**<sup>17</sup> / **study** • **immortal cells** [s]

**die** [daɪ] *v no pass* *syn pass away v phr*

*sim* **expire**<sup>1</sup> [ɪkspaɪə], **depart**<sup>2</sup> [dɪpɑ:rt], **succumb** [səkʌm] **(to)**<sup>3</sup> *v*

process of **gradual** or **sudden deterioration** of vital [vʌɪtəl] functions that ends in **death**

**dying**<sup>4</sup> [daɪɪŋ] *adj & n* • **to breathe one's last**<sup>5</sup> [brɪ:ð] *phr*

» He's **afraid of dying** a **violet** [aɪ] **death**<sup>6</sup>. **What did his father die of?** You should **realize that your father is a dying man**. Mrs Johns has been **nursing**<sup>7</sup> [æɪ] **her dying husband** for months. The **patient** quietly **expired** in his sleep. **When did your mother pass away?**

Use **to die** **unexpectedly** / **young** / in one's **sleep** • **to die by one's own hand**<sup>8</sup> / for your **beliefs** • **to die from hunger**<sup>9</sup> / **injuries** • **to die of** **cancer** / **heart disease**<sup>10</sup> / **natural causes**<sup>11</sup> [u:ɪ] • **dying** **day** / **words**<sup>12</sup> / **process** • **dying patient** • **process** [s] / **fear**<sup>13</sup> / **risk of dying** • **to succumb to cancer**<sup>14</sup>

**Note:** In clinical situations (e.g. when speaking to the patient's **next of kin**<sup>15</sup>) **to pass away** (rarely **to succumb to** and **expire**) is most commonly used.

**dead** [ded] *adj & n* *syn deceased* [dɪsi:st] *adj & n*,

opposite **(a)live**<sup>1</sup> [aɪ] *adj*, *rel* **late**<sup>2</sup> *adj*

(adj) not showing any signs of **life** (n) **people** who have **died** (**the dead**, *pl* and always with the article)

**deaden**<sup>3</sup> [dedən] *v* • **deadly**<sup>4</sup> [dedli] *adj* • **lifeless**<sup>5</sup> [laɪfləs] *adj* • **living**<sup>1</sup> [lɪvɪŋ] *adj*

» **Survival time from onset of symptoms** [ɪ] **ranges from 5 to 16 months, and about 75% of patients are dead within one year after diagnosis**. The **doctors are keeping him alive on a life support machine**<sup>6</sup> [sɪ:ɪ]. He's still **alive!** I am the **proudest person alive**. This is a **matter of life and death**. This is a **deadly form of skin cancer**. The **morphine will deaden her pain**<sup>7</sup>.

Use **to drop**<sup>8</sup> / **be shot/pronounce** [aʊ] / **be left for dead** • **to bury** [e] / **honor** [u:nə] / **rise** [aɪ] from the **dead** • **brain**<sup>9</sup> / **declared** / **considered dead** • **dead on arrival**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] (*abbr* DOA) / **body**<sup>11</sup> / **space**<sup>12</sup> [speɪs] / **tissue** • **deadly poison** / **trap**<sup>13</sup> • **live** **birth** / **virus** / **vaccine**<sup>14</sup> [ks] • **to reach hospital/be discharged** [tʃ] **alive** • **alive and well**<sup>15</sup> (*abbr* A & W) / **kicking**<sup>15</sup> • **lifeless body**<sup>16</sup> • **your late husband**<sup>17</sup>

**survive** [səvvaɪv] *v* *sim* **outlive**<sup>1</sup> [aʊtlɪv] *v*, **live on**<sup>2</sup> [lɪv ɒn] *v phr*

(i) to **stay alive**, esp. after being close to **death** (ii) to **live longer** than sb. else

**survival**<sup>3</sup> [səvvaɪvəl] *n* • **survivor**<sup>4</sup> *n* •

**surviving** *adj* • **survivable**<sup>5</sup> *adj* → U100-25

» If he **survives one week, recovery** [Δ] is **likely**. **Starvation**<sup>6</sup> [eɪ] can be **survived for 2-3 months**. The **patient is not likely to outlive the beneficial** [ɪ] **effects of such surgery** [æɪ]. I can't **live on like this**. Some **survivors of the acute illness recover surprisingly well**. **Airway injuries are survivable with immediate** [ɪ:ɪ] **treatment only**.

Use **to survive** an **accident** / a **heart attack** • **patient** / **disease-free**<sup>7</sup> **survival** • **survival rate**<sup>8</sup> / **time or period**<sup>9</sup> / **curve**<sup>10</sup> [e:ɪ] • **survival probability**<sup>11</sup> / **benefit**<sup>12</sup> / of the **fittest** • **long-term**<sup>13</sup> / **cancer** / **polio** / **neonatal** [ni:əʊnɪtəl] **survivor** • **survivor** of **heart transplant** • **surviving children** / **patients** • **survivable trauma** [u:ɪ] or **injury**

### sterblich, tödlich, Tod-, Sterbe-; Sterbliche

unsterblich; Unsterbliche<sup>1</sup> unerbittlich<sup>2</sup> Sterblichkeit(sziffer), Mortalität<sup>3</sup> tödl. verwundet<sup>4</sup> klarkommen mit<sup>5</sup> Mortalitätsrate<sup>6</sup> Todfeind<sup>7</sup> tödl. beleidigt<sup>8</sup> perinatale Mortalität<sup>9</sup> Gesamtmortalität<sup>10</sup> Säuglingssterblichkeit<sup>11</sup> Kindersterblichkeit<sup>12</sup> altersspezifische Mortalität<sup>13</sup> krankheitsspez. M.<sup>14</sup> Müttersterblichkeit<sup>15</sup> Krebssterblichkeit<sup>16</sup> Mortalitätsstatistik<sup>17</sup> 3

### sterben, entschlafen

seinen Geist aufgeben<sup>1</sup> aus d. Leben scheidet<sup>2</sup> erliegen<sup>3</sup> sterbend, im Sterben liegend; Sterbende<sup>4</sup> seinen letzten Atemzug tun<sup>5</sup> gewaltsamer Tod<sup>6</sup> pflegen<sup>7</sup> Hand an sich legen, Selbstmord begehen<sup>8</sup> verhungern<sup>9</sup> an einer Herzkrankheit sterben<sup>10</sup> eines natürl. Todes sterben<sup>11</sup> die letzten Worte<sup>12</sup> Angst vor d. Sterben<sup>13</sup> einem Krebsleiden erliegen<sup>14</sup> Angehörige<sup>15</sup> 4

### tot, verstorben;

### Tote, Verstorbene

lebend(ig)<sup>1</sup> verstorben<sup>2</sup> lindern, mildern, dämpfen, abtöten<sup>3</sup> tödlich<sup>4</sup> leblos, tot<sup>5</sup> Herz-Lungen-Maschine<sup>6</sup> Schmerz(en) lindern<sup>7</sup> tot umfallen<sup>8</sup> hirtot<sup>9</sup> tot bei d. Einlieferung<sup>10</sup> Leiche, Leichnam<sup>11</sup> Totraum<sup>12</sup> tödl. Falle<sup>13</sup> Lebendimpfstoff, -vaccine<sup>14</sup> gesund u. munter<sup>15</sup> lebloser Körper<sup>16</sup> Ihr verstorbener Gatte<sup>17</sup> 5

### (jem.) überleben, am Leben bleiben

jem. überleben, etwas überdauern<sup>1</sup> weiterleben<sup>2</sup> Überleben(szeit)<sup>3</sup> Überlebende(r), Hinterbliebene(r)<sup>4</sup> überlebar<sup>5</sup> Hungern<sup>6</sup> rezidivfreie Überlebenszeit<sup>7</sup> Überlebensrate<sup>8</sup> Überlebenszeit<sup>9</sup> Überlebenskurve<sup>10</sup> Überlebenswahrscheinlichkeit<sup>11</sup> Überlebensvorteil<sup>12</sup> Langzeitüberlebende(r)<sup>13</sup> 6

**death** [deθ] *n* *sim* **end**<sup>1</sup> *n inf.*, **eternal** [ɜː] **rest**<sup>2</sup> *n phr.*,  
**decease**<sup>3</sup> [dɪsɪːs], **demise**<sup>3</sup> [-aɪz] *n phr.*

permanent [ɜː] end of all life functions [Δ] in an organism or part of it

**deceased**<sup>4</sup> [dɪsɪːst] *adj & n* • **departed**<sup>4</sup> [ɑː] *adj & n* • **deathbed**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» Her family wanted to be present at the time of her death. Most deaths<sup>6</sup> are due to strokes<sup>7</sup>. Emotional stages that may occur when a patient learns of approaching death are denial<sup>8</sup> [aɪ], anger, bargaining<sup>9</sup>, depression, and acceptance. He died a natural death aged 79.

Use to be close to/face/meet one's **death** • to escape/resist<sup>10</sup>/deny [dɪnaɪ] /long for **death** • (un)natural / untimely<sup>11</sup> / tragic [dʒ] / sudden [Δ] **death** • instant / accidental<sup>12</sup> / violent [aɪ] / imminent<sup>13</sup> **death** • brain<sup>14</sup> / alcohol-related **death** • risk / (leading) cause<sup>15</sup> (abbr COD) / time / circumstances [sɜː] **of death** • denial / pronouncement [aʊ] / notification<sup>16</sup> **of death** • to put sb. to<sup>17</sup> **death** • starved / choked<sup>18</sup> [tʃ] / frightened [aɪ] **to death** • frozen / burned [ɜː] / beaten / trampled<sup>19</sup> **to death** • **death toll**<sup>20</sup> / **penalty**<sup>21</sup> / wish / instinct • **death rattle**<sup>22</sup> / **notice**<sup>16</sup> / with dignity • **death due to drug abuse** / strangulation / suffocation<sup>23</sup> • **death by poisoning** / fire / electrocution<sup>24</sup> [kjuː]

**suicide** [suːɪsaɪd] *n* *syn* **self-inflicted death** *n term*

the act of taking one's own life<sup>1</sup> voluntarily and intentionally

**suicidal** [suːɪsaɪdʒl] *adj* • **-cide** [-saɪd] *comb*

» Suicide attempts<sup>2</sup> with overdoses of other drugs are less often successful. He could see no way out but to take his own life. He tried to kill himself by slashing his wrists<sup>3</sup> [r]. The immediate [ɪ] goal [gou] of psychiatric [saɪk-] evaluation is to assess the current suicidal risk.

Use to consider/contemplate<sup>4</sup>/attempt/commit<sup>5</sup> **suicide** • apparent [ə] / prevention of<sup>6</sup> / teen / (physician)-assisted<sup>7</sup> **suicide** • **suicide** risk / hotline / victim / survivor • **suicidal** depression / individual<sup>8</sup> / thoughts or ideation<sup>9</sup> [aɪdeɪʃn] • **suicidal intent**<sup>10</sup> / overtures<sup>11</sup> [-tʃəz] / tendencies / threat<sup>12</sup> [θret] • **suicidal** overdose / act / death / rate<sup>13</sup> • **geno**<sup>14</sup> [dʒenəsaid] **infanti**<sup>15</sup> / **pesticide**

**mercy killing** [mɜːrsɪ kɪlɪŋ] *n clin* *syn* **euthanasia** [juːθənæɪz(i)ə] *n term*,  
*rel* **right-to-die**<sup>1</sup> *n*

to bring about<sup>2</sup> the death of a person suffering from an incurable disease by administering a lethal drug (active) or allowing the person to die by withholding treatment<sup>3</sup> or withdrawing life support (passive)

**kill**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **killer**<sup>5</sup> *n & adj* • **killing** *adj & n*

» Do you think euthanasia should be legalized [ɪ]? If we support a mentally competent<sup>6</sup> patient's right to request that life support be withdrawn, this may open the door to a more general acceptance of euthanasia. What are the public attitudes toward the right to die? Malaria kills a million children each year. She was killed in an air crash<sup>7</sup>.

Use active / passive<sup>8</sup> **euthanasia** • **killer** disease / instinct / virus [aɪ] / cells<sup>9</sup> • **kill off**<sup>10</sup> / yourself • **serial**<sup>11</sup> [sɪəriəl] / **pain**<sup>12</sup> **killer** • **right-to-die** debate [eɪ] / case

**manslaughter** *n leg* *sim* **murder**<sup>1</sup> [ɜː] *n & v*, **homicide**<sup>2</sup> [hɒmɪsaɪd] *n leg*

to kill sb. by accident (e.g. by reckless driving<sup>3</sup>) or while trying to defend one's own life (in self-defense<sup>4</sup>)

**slaughter**<sup>5</sup> [slɔːtə] *v & n* • **murderer**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **murderous**<sup>7</sup> *adj* • **homicidal**<sup>8</sup> *adj*

» The driver will be charged [tʃɑːrdʒd] with manslaughter. The incidence of violent crime—murder, rape<sup>9</sup> [reɪp], and assault<sup>10</sup> [əˈsɔːlt]—has doubled [Δ] within the past five years. For every teenager who dies of heart [hɑːt] disease, 8 die as a result of homicide.

Use to commit/be charged with<sup>11</sup> **manslaughter** • **manslaughter** charges • involuntary<sup>12</sup> **manslaughter** • attempted<sup>13</sup> / brutal / first-degree **murder** • mass / convicted<sup>14</sup> **murderer** • **homicide** investigation / by **misadventure**<sup>15</sup> • **homicidal** tendencies • **murderous** intentions<sup>16</sup>

## Tod

Tod, Ende<sup>1</sup> ewige Ruhe<sup>2</sup> Ableben, Tod<sup>3</sup> verstorben; Verstorbene(r)<sup>4</sup> Sterbe-, Totenbett<sup>5</sup> Todesfälle<sup>6</sup> Schlaganfälle<sup>7</sup> Verleugnung<sup>8</sup> Verhandeln<sup>9</sup> nicht sterben wollen<sup>10</sup> vorzeitiger/ allzu zu früher Tod<sup>11</sup> Unfalltod<sup>12</sup> nahe/ kurz bevorstehender T.<sup>13</sup> Hirntod<sup>14</sup> Haupttodesursache<sup>15</sup> Todesanzeige<sup>16</sup> jem. hinrichten<sup>17</sup> erstickt<sup>18</sup> zu Tode getramptel<sup>19</sup> Zahl d. Todesopfer<sup>20</sup> Todesstrafe<sup>21</sup> Todesröcheln<sup>22</sup> Tod durch Ersticken<sup>23</sup> Tod auf dem elektrischen Stuhl<sup>24</sup>

7

## Selbsttötung, Freitod, Suizid

sich d. Leben nehmen<sup>1</sup> Suizidversuche<sup>2</sup> sich d. Pulsadern aufschneiden<sup>3</sup> s. mit Selbstmordgedanken tragen<sup>4</sup> Selbstmord begehen<sup>5</sup> Suizidprophylaxe, -prävention<sup>6</sup> ärztl. Beihilfe zum Suizid<sup>7</sup> Suizidgefährdete(r)<sup>8</sup> Suizidgedanken<sup>9</sup> Suizid-, Selbsttötungsabsicht<sup>10</sup> Suizidphantasien<sup>11</sup> Suizid-, Selbstmorddrohung<sup>12</sup> Suizidrate<sup>13</sup> Völkermord<sup>14</sup> Kindestötung<sup>15</sup>

8

## Sterbehilfe, Euthanasie

Recht auf selbstbestimmtes Sterben<sup>1</sup> herbeiführen<sup>2</sup> Behandlungsverzicht, -abbruch<sup>3</sup> töten<sup>4</sup> Mörder(in); tödlich, Killer-<sup>5</sup> geistig voll zurechnungsfähig, i. Vollbesitz s. geistigen Kräfte<sup>6</sup> kam bei einem Flugzeugabsturz ums Leben<sup>7</sup> passive Sterbehilfe<sup>8</sup> Killer-, K-Zellen<sup>9</sup> vernichten, (ab)töten<sup>10</sup> Serienmörder(in)<sup>11</sup> Schmerzmittel, Analgetikum<sup>12</sup>

9

## Totschlag

Mord; ermorden<sup>1</sup> Tötung, Totschlag, Mord<sup>2</sup> rücksichtsloses Fahren<sup>3</sup> Selbstverteidigung<sup>4</sup> abschlagen, Blutbad<sup>5</sup> Mörder(in)<sup>6</sup> blutrünstig, Mord-<sup>7</sup> mörderisch, Mord-<sup>8</sup> Vergewaltigung<sup>9</sup> Körperverletzung<sup>10</sup> wegen Totschlags angeklagt sein<sup>11</sup> fahrlässige Tötung<sup>12</sup> versuchter Mord<sup>13</sup> verurteilte(r) Mörder(in)<sup>14</sup> Unfall m. Todesfolge<sup>15</sup> Mordabsichten<sup>16</sup>

10

**capital punishment** [ˌɔːpɪtəl ˈpʌnɪʃmənt] *n term* *syn* **death penalty** [ˈdeɪθ ˈpenəlti] *n inf*,  
*rel* **execution**<sup>1</sup> [ˌɛkˌsɪkjʊːʃn] *n*

to put to death (officially [ɪ] execute) a person who has been convicted of a **capital crime**<sup>2</sup> [aɪ ˈɛkɛkjuːt] *v* • **punish**<sup>4</sup> [ˈpʌnɪʃ] *v* • **punishable**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» Is **capital punishment** indeed an effective **deterrent**<sup>6</sup> [ˈdɛtərnt] [ɜː]? This crime carries the death penalty.

Use **to sentence**<sup>7</sup>/put sb. **to death** • **death row**<sup>8</sup> [roʊ]/ **sentence**<sup>9</sup> • **punishable** by death

**grieve** [grɪv] *v* *syn* **mourn** [maʊn] *v*, *rel* **condole** [ˈkɒdʊl] *with*<sup>1</sup> *v phr*

feel or show sorrow in reaction to an actual, perceived [sɪː] or anticipated loss

**grief**<sup>2</sup> [grɪf] *n* • **grieving** *adj & n* • **mourning**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **mourner**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **condolence**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» I can understand your grief. It grieved me to learn about my husband's infidelity<sup>6</sup>. May I offer my sincere [-sɪə] condolences to you and your family. Relatives who are grieving should be given an opportunity to talk about it. You have to give yourself time to mourn now.

Use **to grieve deeply**<sup>7</sup> / for sb. / over sth. • to cause/feel/suffer/express/ease [iːz] sb.'s **grief** • **normal** / **deep**<sup>8</sup> / **profound**<sup>8</sup> [aʊ]/ **overwhelming**<sup>9</sup> / **inconsolable** [aʊ] **grief** • **grief therapist**<sup>10</sup> / **assessment** / and loss **counseling** [aʊ] • **dysfunctional**<sup>11</sup> / **acute** / **anticipatory**<sup>12</sup> **grieving** • **grieving process**<sup>13</sup> • **mourn** for / over • to be in / period of **mourning** • **letter of**<sup>14</sup> **condolence** • to **extend**<sup>15</sup>/offer one's heartfelt **condolences**

**bereavement** [bɪrɪˈvɛmənt] *n* *sim* **loss**<sup>1</sup> *n*, *rel* **sorrow**<sup>2</sup> [ˈsɔːrəʊ] *n*

state of sadness and regret over the death or departure of a loved one

**bereaved**<sup>3</sup> [bɪrɪˈvɛd] *adj & n* • **sorrow**<sup>4</sup> *v* • **sorrowful**<sup>5</sup> *adj*

» Elderly patients who are bereaved are at greater risk of rapid deterioration. She has suffered a bereavement recently. It's a question of showing sympathy<sup>6</sup> [ɪ] for the bereaved. His death is a great loss to all of us. How did she get over<sup>7</sup> the loss of her son?

Use to suffer a/get over one's **bereavement** • **bereavement** **assessment** / **counseling** / **support group**<sup>8</sup> • **period of**<sup>9</sup> / **natural process of bereavement** • **bereaved family**<sup>10</sup> • to express one's **sorrow**

**corpse** [ˈkɔːps] *n clin* *syn* **body** *n*, **cadaver** *n term*, \***stiff** *n inf*,  
*rel* **ashes**<sup>1</sup> [æʃɪz] *n pl*

(i) the bodily remains [eɪ] of a dead person (ii) physical [ɪ] object or structure [ɔː]

**cadaveric**<sup>2</sup> [kədəˈvɛrɪk] *adj* • **stiff** *adj*

» Did you find any traces of violence on the body of Mr Morgan? **Dissecting cadavers**<sup>3</sup> is an essential component of teaching surgical skills. Her ashes were scattered over the lake.

Use **to embalm**<sup>4</sup> [-ɑːm] / **bury** [eɪ] / **exhume** [uː] **a body** • **dead** / **decomposing**<sup>5</sup> [aʊ] **body** • **foreign**<sup>6</sup> (abbr FB) **body** • **a corpse decays** [dɪkəɪz] or **rots**<sup>7</sup> • **cadaver organ** / **transplant or graft**<sup>8</sup> / **kidney donor**<sup>9</sup> [aʊ] • **cadaver scent**<sup>10</sup> [s] / **preserved** [ɜː] for anatomic study • **cadaveric rigidity**<sup>11</sup> [rɪdʒɪdətɪ]

**rigor mortis** [rɪgə ˈmɔːrtɪs] *n term* *rel* **livor** [lɪvə] **mortis**<sup>1</sup>, **lividity**<sup>2</sup> [lɪ] *n term*

rigid stiffening of cardiac and skeletal muscles shortly after death (due to **depletion**<sup>3</sup> of ATP)

**rigor**<sup>4</sup> *n term* → U105-9 • **rigid**<sup>5</sup> [rɪdʒɪd] *adj* • **rigidity**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **livid**<sup>7</sup> [lɪvɪd] *adj*

» Rigor mortis is well-developed in the cold body and livor mortis is dorsally distributed, cherry-pink in coloration and unfixed. Hypothermic [ɜː] patients who have been exposed to prolonged or extreme cold may appear to be in a state of rigor mortis. Livor mortis can be confused with **bruises**<sup>8</sup> [uː]. Fixed lividity darkened the victim's **mangled**<sup>9</sup> legs.

Use **rigor mortis** sets in • in a state of / degree of / **resolved**<sup>10</sup> **rigor mortis** • **algor**<sup>11</sup> **mortis** • **cherry-pink** / **postmortem**<sup>1</sup> / fully developed **lividity** • **pattern of** / **fixed** / **dependent lividity** • to become **rigid** • **postmortem or cadaveric**<sup>12</sup> / **muscle** [mʌsəl] **rigidity** • **livid** skin / **areas**<sup>13</sup> / **scar**<sup>14</sup>

### Todesstrafe

Exekution, Vollstreckung<sup>1</sup> Kapitalverbrechen, schweres V<sup>2</sup> hinrichten, vollstrecken<sup>3</sup> (be)strafen<sup>4</sup> strafbar<sup>5</sup> Abschreckungsmittel<sup>6</sup> zum Tode verurteilen<sup>7</sup> Todestrakt (Gefängnis)<sup>8</sup> Todesurteil<sup>9</sup>

11

### trauern (um), sich grämen

jem. kondolieren/ sein Mitgefühl aussprechen<sup>1</sup> Leid, Kummer<sup>2</sup> Trauerzeit, -kleidung<sup>3</sup> Trauernde(r), Trauergest<sup>4</sup> Beileid, Anteilnahme<sup>5</sup> Untreue<sup>6</sup> zutiefst bekümmert sein<sup>7</sup> tiefe Trauer<sup>8</sup> unsagbare Trauer<sup>9</sup> Trauertherapeut(in)<sup>10</sup> pathologische Trauer<sup>11</sup> antizipatorische Trauer<sup>12</sup> Trauerprozess<sup>13</sup> Kondolenz-, Beileidsbrief<sup>14</sup> seine Kondolenz erweisen, kondolieren, sein Beileid aussprechen<sup>15</sup>

12

### schmerzl. Verlust, Trauer(fall)

Verlust<sup>1</sup> Taurigkeit, Trauer, Kummer<sup>2</sup> leidtragend, trauernd; die Hinterbliebenen<sup>3</sup> sich grämen<sup>4</sup> traurig<sup>5</sup> Mitgefühl<sup>6</sup> hinwegkommen über<sup>7</sup> Selbsthilfegruppe für Trauernde<sup>8</sup> Trauerzeit<sup>9</sup> Trauerfamilie<sup>10</sup>

13

### (toter) Körper, Leichnam, Leiche

Asche, sterbl. Hülle<sup>1</sup> Leichen<sup>2</sup> Sezieren von Leichen<sup>3</sup> einen Leichnam einbalsamieren<sup>4</sup> verwesende Leiche<sup>5</sup> Fremdkörper<sup>6</sup> eine Leiche verwest<sup>7</sup> Leichentransplantat<sup>8</sup> Leichenspende(r)<sup>9</sup> Leichengeruch<sup>10</sup> Totenstarre<sup>11</sup>

14

### Totenstarre, Rigor mortis

Toten-, Leichenflecke, Livores<sup>1</sup> bläuliche Hautverfärbung, Lividität<sup>2</sup> Mangel<sup>3</sup> Rigor, Muskelsteifigkeit; Schüttelfrost<sup>4</sup> steif, starr, unbeweglich, rigid<sup>5</sup> Rigidität, Steifheit, Starre<sup>6</sup> livid, (blass)bläulich (verfärbt)<sup>7</sup> blaue Flecke, Hämatome<sup>8</sup> verstümmelt<sup>9</sup> gelöste Totenstarre<sup>10</sup> Algor mortis, Totenkälte<sup>11</sup> Rigor mortis<sup>12</sup> livide Bereiche<sup>13</sup> bläulich verfärbte Narbe<sup>14</sup>

15



**morgue** [mɔːrɡ] *n*

sim **mortuary**<sup>1</sup> [mɔːrtʃʊəi], **funeral home** or **parlor**<sup>1</sup> [ˈfjuːnəəl pɑːrlə] *n*

facility [sɪ] where the dead are kept before being identified or examined by the **medical examiner**<sup>2</sup> or before they are **released**<sup>3</sup> [ɪ] for **burial** [ɛ] or **cremation**<sup>4</sup> [krɪmeɪʃn]

- » A mix-up in the hospital morgue resulted [Δ] in a woman **burying** a man she thought was her husband—but was not. Mr Kelly's son, who died from **natural** causes an hour after delivery, went missing from the hospital **mortuary** four days before his **funeral**.  
Use body transferred to [ɜː] / a city / hospital **morgue** • **mortuary gown**<sup>5</sup> [gaʊn]

**burial** [berɪəl] *n* syn **interment** [ɜː] *n*,

sim **funeral**<sup>1</sup> *n*, **rel obituary**<sup>2</sup> [-bɪtʃʊəi] *n*

the ritual placing of a corpse or cremated ashes in a grave

**bury**<sup>3</sup> [berɪ] *v* • **buried** *adj* • **burying** *n* • **inter**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **funerary**<sup>4</sup> [ˈfjuː-] *adj*

- » The **burial** takes place on Monday. He is afraid of being buried alive. She'd buried her husband a year earlier. He lies buried over there.  
Use **burial ground**<sup>5</sup> [aʊ] • **decent** [ɪs] **burial** • **to attend**<sup>6</sup>/conduct **a funeral** • state **funeral** • **funeral service**<sup>7</sup> / home or **parlor** / **procession**<sup>8</sup> [se] / **director**<sup>9</sup>

**casket** [kæskɪt] *n* syn **coffin** [kɒfɪn] *n*,

rel **grave**<sup>1</sup> [eɪ], **tomb**<sup>1</sup> [tuːm], **cemetery**<sup>2</sup> [se-] *n*

box in which a corpse is buried or cremated [krɪmeɪʃd]

- » They lowered the **casket** into the grave. If you go on smoking you're **digging your own grave**<sup>3</sup>. It's not the cough that **carries you off**<sup>4</sup>, it's the **coffin** they **carry you off**<sup>5</sup> in.  
Use **to dig**<sup>6</sup>/pray at/**desecrate**<sup>7</sup> [desɪkreɪt] **a grave** • **unmarked**<sup>8</sup> / **mass**<sup>9</sup> **grave** • **graveyard**<sup>2</sup> / **stone**<sup>10</sup> / **side** / **digger**<sup>11</sup> • **from the cradle** [eɪ] **to the**<sup>12</sup> / **to turn in one's grave** • **tombstone**<sup>10</sup> • **military cemetery**

**posthumous** [pɒstʃʊməs] *adj*

sim **postmortem** or **post mortem**<sup>1</sup> *adj term & n jar*

occurring [ɜː] after a person's death

- » His **suicide** was seen as a means of getting **posthumously** the **affection**<sup>2</sup> that was not forthcoming during his lifetime.  
Use **posthumous** honors [ɒnəʒ] / **publication**<sup>3</sup> • **postmortem changes**<sup>4</sup> / **delivery** / **graft** • **postmortem examination**<sup>5</sup> / **lividity** / **rigidity** • **to do a**<sup>6</sup> **postmortem**

**autopsy** [ɒtɒpsi] *n term* syn **postmortem examination**, **necropsy** *n term*

examination of the organs of a dead body to determine [ɜː] the cause of death (esp. when death took place under suspicious [ɪʃ] circumstances [sɜː]) or for pathologic study

**autopsy**<sup>1</sup> *v term* • **autopsic(al)** *adj* • **autopsist**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **antemortem** *adj*

- » The **anomaly** was only discovered at **autopsy**. **Vasculitis** of the **coronary arteries** is seen in almost all **fatal** cases of **Kawasaki disease** that have been **autopsied**. **Atrophy** of the **cerebellum** was evident on **gross**<sup>3</sup> **postmortem** inspection of the brain. **Renal artery stenosis** was found at **postmortem**. **Necropsy** revealed **cardiac enlargement** with **mural thrombi** [aɪ].  
Use **to request an/do or perform an**<sup>1</sup>/**discover** at<sup>4</sup> **autopsy** • **hospital** / **epidemiologic** / **perinatal** [eɪ] / **forensic**<sup>5</sup> **autopsy** • **complete** / **nondiagnostic** **autopsy** • **autopsy examination**<sup>6</sup> / **room odor** [oʊdə] / **material** • **autopsy findings**<sup>7</sup> / **report**<sup>8</sup> / **confirmation** • **autopsy pathology** / **series** / **tissue** / **specimen** [es] • **autopsy consent form**<sup>9</sup> / **permit**<sup>10</sup> [ɜː] / **limited to the brain** • **autopsied patient**<sup>11</sup> • **post-mortem dissection**<sup>6</sup> / **inspection** / **study**<sup>6</sup> / **diagnosis** • **postmortem (anatomic) specimen**<sup>12</sup> / **tissue cultures** [Δ]

**coroner** [kɔːrɪnə] *n* rel **medical examiner**<sup>1</sup> *n term* → U15-21

local official who investigates the causes and circumstances of sudden, violent or unexplained deaths

- » Unless demanded by the **coroner** or **medical examiner**, an **autopsy** cannot be performed without the permission of the **patient's next of kin**<sup>2</sup>. The **medical examiner** agreed that using **rigor mortis** to determine the time of death is an **inexact formula**.  
Use to report a case to the **coroner** • **coroner's investigation or inquest**<sup>3</sup> (BE) / case / office / court / staff / documents • **coroner-on-call**<sup>4</sup>

**Leichenschauhaus**

Leichenhalle<sup>1</sup> Leichen(be)schauer(er)(in)<sup>2</sup> freigegeben<sup>3</sup> Feuerbestattung, Einäscherung, Kremation<sup>4</sup> Totenkleid<sup>5</sup>

16

**Bestattung, Beerdigung, Beisetzung**

Begräbnis<sup>1</sup> Nachruf<sup>2</sup> begraben, beerdigen<sup>3</sup> Begräbnis-<sup>4</sup> Begräbnisstätte, Friedhof<sup>5</sup> einem Begräbnis beiwohnen, an einem Begräbnis teilnehmen<sup>6</sup> Trauergottesdienst<sup>7</sup> Leichenzug<sup>8</sup> Beerdigungsunternehmer<sup>9</sup>

17

**Sarg**

Grab(stätte)<sup>1</sup> Friedhof<sup>2</sup> sich sein eigenes Grab schaufeln<sup>3</sup> hinwegraffen<sup>4</sup> wegtragen<sup>5</sup> e. Grab ausheben/ schaufeln<sup>6</sup> Grab schänden<sup>7</sup> Grab eines/r Unbekannten<sup>8</sup> Massengrab<sup>9</sup> Grabstein<sup>10</sup> Totengräber<sup>11</sup> von der Wiege bis zur Bahre<sup>12</sup>

18

**post(h)um**

post mortem, postmortal; Obduktion, Autopsie<sup>1</sup> Zuneigung<sup>2</sup> postume Veröffentlichung<sup>3</sup> postmortale Veränderungen<sup>4</sup> Autopsie, Obduktion<sup>5</sup> eine Obduktion durchführen<sup>6</sup>

19

**Leichenöffnung, Obduktion, Autopsie, Sektion, Nekropsie**

eine Obduktion/ Sektion vornehmen, obduzieren<sup>1</sup> Obduzent(in)<sup>2</sup> makroskopisch<sup>3</sup> bei d. Autopsie feststellen<sup>4</sup> gerichtl. Sektion<sup>5</sup> Autopsie, Obduktion, Sektion<sup>6</sup> Obduktionsbefund<sup>7</sup> Obduktionsbericht<sup>8</sup> schriftl. Einverständnis-erklärung f. d. Obduktion<sup>9</sup> Obduktionsgenehmigung<sup>10</sup> obduzierte(r) Patient(in)<sup>11</sup> Autopsiepräparat<sup>12</sup>

20

**Leichen(be)schauer(in)**

Gerichtsmediziner(in)<sup>1</sup> nächste Angehörige<sup>2</sup> Leichenschau, Totenschau<sup>3</sup> diensthabende(r) Leichenbeschauer(in)<sup>4</sup>

21

## Unit 13 Health Care Administration

Related Units: 14 Hospitals, 18 At the Doctor's, 15 Medical Staff & Specialties, 16 Paramedical Staff, 20 Hospital Routines

### health care [hɛlθ keə] n *sim* health service<sup>1</sup> [sɜ:rvɪs] n

care encompassing social, economic, and environmental influences, in addition to medical care  
**health-related** *adj* • **self-care**<sup>2</sup> n • **aftercare**<sup>3</sup> [æftə'keə] n

» *Newly diagnosed* [aɪ] *patients were started on a medical regimen* [edʒ] *and referred* [ɜ:] *to a clinic or private medical care. On-scene* [sɪ:n] *management of casualties* [æʒ] *was performed by disaster medical assistance teams*<sup>4</sup> *consisting of volunteer* [lɔ:] *health care and rescue* [reskjʊ:] *workers*<sup>5</sup>.

Use *national / quality / professional* **health care** • *home / primary*<sup>6</sup> [aɪ] **health care** • **health care system**<sup>7</sup> [ɪ] / *facility* [sɪ] / *administration* • **health care provider** [aɪ] / *institution* • **health care organization**<sup>8</sup> (*abbr* HCO) / **policy**<sup>9</sup> / *plan* • **health care professional / team / costs** • **primary (acute)**<sup>10</sup> / *secondary* [tɜ:r] / *tertiary* [tɜ:r] / *care* • *specialized / long-term (abbr LTC) / uncompensated* **care** • **care program / plan**<sup>11</sup> • *standard / duty*<sup>12</sup> / *quality of care* • **National**<sup>13</sup> (*abbr* NHS) / *School / preventive*<sup>14</sup> **health service** • **health-related services** • **Health Service Commissioner or Ombudsman**<sup>15</sup> [ɒ]

### health authorities [əθɔ:ri'tɪz] n *rel* health administration<sup>1</sup> [eɪ] n

administrative bodies responsible for organizing health care in a given area

» *Most cases of viral* [aɪ] *meningitis* [dʒaɪ] *in the U.S. go unreported*<sup>2</sup> *to public health authorities. If botulism is suspected, the local health authority should be notified*<sup>3</sup>. *An anxious* [kɪ] *parent or institutional authority may request a drug screen on an asymptomatic adolescent*.

Use *public / federal / state / regional*<sup>4</sup> [i:ɔ:] / *local* **health authorities** • *emergency* [ɜ:] *medical services / state / child welfare*<sup>5</sup> **authorities** • *Mental / Occupational Safety and Health Administration* • **health agency**<sup>6</sup> [eɪdʒ] / **department**<sup>7</sup> / *official*

### Public Health Service [pʌblɪk hɛlθ sɜ:rvɪs] n, *abbr* PHS

*rel* **National Institutes of Health**<sup>1</sup> n, *abbr* NIH

nationwide administration of health programs headed by the **Department of Health and Human Services**<sup>2</sup> (*abbr* DHHS) which is responsible for government hospitals, publication of sanitary reports, quarantine [ɒ], statistics, medical research, etc.; the NIH, the **National Library of Medicine** and the **Centers for Disease Control**<sup>3</sup> (*abbr* CDC) are associated institutions

» *What are the recommendations of the Public Health Service Advisory* [aɪ] *Committee on diphtheria* [ɪ] *and tetanus immunization. This quick reference guide on acute pain management was published by the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (abbr AHCPR), Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.*

Use *United States (abbr USPHS)* **Public Health Service** • *health care / (routine) clinical service* • **blood transfusion**<sup>4</sup> [jʊ:z] / **nursing**<sup>5</sup> [ɜ:] / *food / dietary* [aɪ] **service** • *community / ambulance*<sup>6</sup> / **emergency (medicine)**<sup>7</sup> **service** • *pain / crisis* [aɪ] **intervention**<sup>8</sup> / *mental health* **service** • *supportive / counseling*<sup>9</sup> [aɪ] / *geriatric* [dʒeri-] **service** • **medical social**<sup>10</sup> / *rehabilitation* **service** • **Chief** [tʃ] *of*<sup>11</sup> **Service** • **service-connected disability**<sup>12</sup> (*abbr* SCD) / *request* • **fee** [i:] *-for-service reimbursement*<sup>13</sup> [ɜ:]

### Surgeon General [sɜ:rdʒɪn dʒenə'l] n *term*

(i) *chief medical officer of the DHHS*<sup>1</sup> in the U.S.  
 (ii) *chief of medical services in the armed forces*<sup>2</sup>

» *The U.S. Surgeon General summarized* [ʌ] *the immediate* [i:] *health benefits of smoking cessation*<sup>3</sup> [s] *that are valid for*<sup>4</sup> *men and women of all ages. Surgeon General Heaton reported a 2.5% incidence of infection*<sup>5</sup> *in patients with contaminated*<sup>6</sup> *battle wounds* [u:].

Use *U.S. Surgeon General* • **Surgeon General** of the United States

**Note:** Mark the difference between a **general surgeon**<sup>7</sup> and the **Surgeon General**.

### Gesundheitsfürsorge

Gesundheitsdienst<sup>1</sup> selbstständige Versorgung u. Gesunderhaltung/ Gesundheitsbewusstsein, -pflege<sup>2</sup> Nachbehandlung, -sorge<sup>3</sup> katastrophenmedizin, Hilfsteams<sup>4</sup> Rettungshelfer<sup>5</sup> med. Grundbetreuung<sup>6</sup> Gesundheitswesen<sup>7</sup> Gesundheitsorganisation<sup>8</sup> Gesundheitspolitik<sup>9</sup> Erstversorgung<sup>10</sup> Pflegeplan<sup>11</sup> Behandlungspflicht<sup>12</sup> staatl. Gesundheitsdienst in GB<sup>13</sup> präventiver Gesundheitsdienst<sup>14</sup> Beschwerdebeauftragter/ Ombudsmann für das Gesundheitswesen<sup>15</sup>

1

### Gesundheitsbehörden

Gesundheitsverwaltung<sup>1</sup> werden nicht gemeldet<sup>2</sup> verständigt<sup>3</sup> Regionalbehörden d. staatl. brit. Gesundheitsdienstes<sup>4</sup> Jugendwohlfahrtsbehörden<sup>5</sup> Gesundheitseinrichtung<sup>6</sup> Gesundheitsamt, -ministerium<sup>7</sup>

2

### öffentl. Gesundheitsdienst

®Nationale biologisch-medizinische Forschungseinrichtungen d. U.S. Gesundheitsministeriums<sup>1</sup> U.S. Gesundheits- u. Sozialministerium<sup>2</sup> ®U.S. Seuchenschutzzentren<sup>3</sup> Blutspendedienst<sup>4</sup> Pflegedienst<sup>5</sup> Rettungsdienst<sup>6</sup> Notfalldienst, ärztl. Notdienst<sup>7</sup> Kriseninterventionsdienst<sup>8</sup> Beratungsdienst<sup>9</sup> sozial-med. Dienst<sup>10</sup> Obmann/ Obfrau d. Personalvertretung<sup>11</sup> Invaliddität durch einen Arbeitsunfall<sup>12</sup> Vergütung nach Fallpauschalen<sup>13</sup>

3

### (i) Leiter(in) d. U.S. Gesundheitswesens,

(ii) **Generalstabsarzt/-ärztin** oberster Beamter i. Gesundheitsministerium<sup>1</sup> Streitkräfte<sup>2</sup> Abgewöhnung d. Rauchens<sup>3</sup> gelten für<sup>4</sup> Infektionsrate<sup>5</sup> verunreinigt, kontaminiert<sup>6</sup> Allgemeinchirurg(in)<sup>7</sup>

4

**health insurance** [ɪnˈʃʊərəns] *n* *rel* **Medicare**<sup>1</sup>, **Medicaid**<sup>2</sup> [ˌmedɪkeɪd] *n* *term*  
 insurance covering [Δ] losses due to ill health  
**insure**<sup>3</sup> *v* • **insurer**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **insured** [ɪnˈʃʊəd] *adj & n* • **reinsurance**<sup>5</sup> *n*

» *Traditional fee-for-service insurance reimburses [ɜ:] the hospital and the physician [ɪ] for services rendered but frequently does not cover preventive care. Medicare covers approximately 80% of home oxygen expenses. A federal law requires Medicare or Medicaid providers to give their adult patients information on advance directives<sup>6</sup> at the time of initial care.*

Use *to take out an<sup>7</sup> insurance* • private / adequate **health insurance** • universal [ɜ:] health care **insurance** • hospitalization / **professional liability**<sup>8</sup> [ˌlaɪə-] / **medical malpractice**<sup>8</sup> **insurance** • life<sup>9</sup> / **trip cancellation**<sup>10</sup> [ˌkænsə-] / **evacuation**<sup>11</sup> / **social**<sup>12</sup> **insurance** • **insurance policy**<sup>13</sup> / **company**<sup>14</sup> / **carrier**<sup>15</sup> / **plan** • **insurance contract**<sup>16</sup> / **claim** / **premiums**<sup>17</sup> [ɪ:] • **insurance coverage**<sup>18</sup> [ˌkʌvərdʒ] / **rate** / **funds** [ʌ] / **physical** [ɪ] **examination** • **un/underinsured**<sup>19</sup> • **the insured**<sup>20</sup> • **Medicare funds** / **coverage** / **reimbursement** [ɜ:]

**Note:** Mark the difference in pronunciation and stress between **to insure** [ɪnˈʃʊə] and **to injure** [ɪndʒə].

**(public or social) welfare** [ˌsəʊʃl wɛlfəə] *n* *rel* **social security**<sup>1</sup> [ˌsɪkjʊəɪtɪ] *n*  
 economic assistance to persons in need provided by the state or an organization

» *The legal [ɪ:] counsel [aʊ] of the welfare department filed [aɪ] a court [ɔ:] petition<sup>2</sup> [ɪ] for temporary removal of the father of the abuse victim from the home. Huge [hju:dʒ] surpluses<sup>3</sup> [ɜ:] in the US Social Security system are supposed to finance [aɪ] the deficit.*

Use *to be on<sup>4</sup> welfare* • **welfare** state / **benefits**<sup>5</sup> / authorities • **welfare** officer / policy / work • **Department of Health, Education and<sup>6</sup> Welfare** • **child welfare** consultation / authorities / **personnel**<sup>7</sup> • **Social Security** administration / days / **payments**<sup>8</sup> / statistics • **social** services / **insurance**<sup>9</sup> / support (system) • **social agency** [eɪdʒɪ] / **medicine**<sup>10</sup> • **social network**<sup>11</sup> / life / functioning • **social** contacts / independence • **social** conflicts / **maladjustment**<sup>12</sup> [dʒʌ] • **social** isolation / **diseases**<sup>13</sup> / stigma

**health maintenance** [ˌmeɪntənəns] **organization** *n* *term, abbr* HMO

prepaid system of health care to individuals and families enrolled on a voluntary basis which offers continuity of care by member physicians<sup>1</sup> and limited referral<sup>2</sup> [ɜ:] to outside specialists

» *The federal Patient Self-Determination Act<sup>3</sup> requires hospitals and HMOs to inform patients of their right to make health care decisions [sɪ] and to provide advance directives.*

Use routine [ɪ:] / appropriate **health maintenance** • **preferred** [ɜ:] **provider**<sup>4</sup> (*abbr* PPO) **organization** • **health maintenance** needs / care / **visit**<sup>5</sup> / **measures** [ɛʒ]

**managed care** [ˌmænɪdʒd keə] *n* *term*

health care system in which redundant<sup>1</sup> [Δ] services are eliminated and costs are minimized by administrative control<sup>2</sup> over medical services<sup>3</sup> provided in a health care facility<sup>4</sup>

» *By 1995, about 20% of the U.S. population was in managed care plans, and in some parts of the U.S. the enrollment<sup>5</sup> [əw] was above 50 percent.*

Use **managed care** organization (*abbr* MCO) / plan (*abbr* MCP)

**Food and Drug Administration** *n* *term, abbr* FDA

U.S. agency of the DHHS responsible for the purity<sup>1</sup> and wholesomeness<sup>2</sup> of foods, effectiveness and safety of drugs, therapeutic devices [aɪ], and cosmetics as well as their correct packaging<sup>3</sup> and labeling<sup>4</sup>

» *In the USA, regulations for collecting, storing, and transporting blood and its components are established by the FDA. The tool [u:] was FDA-approved [u:] in 1988 and is currently [ɜ:] undergoing FDA trials<sup>5</sup> [ˌtraɪəlz] of gallstone [ɔ:] lithotripsy<sup>6</sup> [ɪ].*

Use U.S. **Food and Drug Administration** • **FDA-approved**<sup>7</sup> / regulations / study group • **FDA** patient data collection / **adverse** [ɜ:] **drug reaction monitoring program**<sup>8</sup> / warning

**Krankenversicherung**

U.S. Krankenversicherung bes. f. Senioren<sup>1</sup> U.S. Gesundheitsfürsorgeprogramm f. Bedürftige<sup>2</sup> versichern (lassen)<sup>3</sup> Versicherer, Versicherungsgesellschaft, -geber<sup>4</sup> Rückversicherung<sup>5</sup> Patiententestament<sup>6</sup> eine Versicherung abschließen<sup>7</sup> Arzthaftpflichtversicherung<sup>8</sup> Lebensversicherung<sup>9</sup> Reiserücktrittsversicherung<sup>10</sup> Rückholversicherung<sup>11</sup> Sozialversicherung<sup>12</sup> Versicherungspolice, -schein<sup>13</sup> Versicherungsgesellschaft<sup>14</sup> Versicherungsträger<sup>15</sup> Versicherungsvertrag<sup>16</sup> Versicherungsbeiträge, -prämien<sup>17</sup> Versicherungsschutz<sup>18</sup> unterversichert<sup>19</sup> d. Versicherte, Versicherungsnehmer(in)<sup>20</sup>

5

**Fürsorge, Wohlfahrt**

Sozialhilfe<sup>1</sup> e. Antrag bei Gericht einreichen<sup>2</sup> Überschüsse<sup>3</sup> Sozialhilfe beziehen<sup>4</sup> Sozialleistungen, -hilfe<sup>5</sup> US Ministerium f. Gesundheitswesen, Ausbildung u. Wohlfahrt<sup>6</sup> Kinderfürsorger(innen)<sup>7</sup> Sozialhilfeleistungen, Sozialbeiträge<sup>8</sup> Sozialversicherung<sup>9</sup> Sozialmedizin<sup>10</sup> soziales Netz<sup>11</sup> Verhaltensstörung<sup>12</sup> (sozial) stigmatisierte Erkrankungen<sup>13</sup>

6

**®private Krankenversicherungsorganisation**

HMO-Vertragsärzte<sup>1</sup> Überweisung<sup>2</sup> **®Verordnung** z. Selbstbestimmungsrecht v. Patienten<sup>3</sup> **®bevorzugte** med. Versorgungsorganisation<sup>4</sup> Vorsorgeuntersuchung<sup>5</sup>

7

**®Managed Care**

nicht zwingend erforderlich<sup>1</sup> verwaltungstechnisches Management<sup>2</sup> med. Versorgung<sup>3</sup> Gesundheitseinrichtung<sup>4</sup> Beteiligung<sup>5</sup>

8

**®U.S. Arznei- u. Lebensmittelbehörde**

Reinheit<sup>1</sup> Bekömmlichkeit<sup>2</sup> Verpackung<sup>3</sup> Kennzeichnung<sup>4</sup> FDA-Studien<sup>5</sup> Cholelithotripsie, Gallensteinzertrümmerung<sup>6</sup> von d. FDA zugelassen<sup>7</sup> FDA-Überwachungsprogramm v. unerwünschten Nebenwirkungen<sup>8</sup>

9

**Cancer Registry** [kæn'sə redʒɪstri] *n term* *syn* **tumor registry** *n term*

central agency collecting data on the **prevalence**<sup>1</sup> and/or **incidence**<sup>2</sup> of specific **malignancies**<sup>3</sup>

» *The problem is that there is no nationwide cancer registry*<sup>4</sup>. *The National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance Registry has been monitoring nosocomial infection*<sup>5</sup> rates since 1970.

Use **trauma** [dʒi]/ **multicenter** / **national** / **state-wide**<sup>6</sup> **registry** • **Testicular Tumor Panel** and / **International Bone Marrow Transplant**<sup>7</sup> / **Organ Replacement**<sup>8</sup> **Registry** • **Registry of Myocardial** [maɪə-] **Infarction**

**World Health Organization** *n term, abbr WHO or OMS (French)*

United Nations agency based in Geneva (SUI) that is concerned with promoting worldwide health standards and regulations, coordinating international cooperation and research, **epidemiologic studies**<sup>1</sup>, etc.

» *Since the start of the WHO eradication*<sup>2</sup> [eɪ] *program, the number of infected persons has declined* [aɪ] *by 97%. The WHO list of reportable diseases*<sup>3</sup> *is widely regarded as a satisfactory minimum.*

Use **Pan American** (abbr PAHO) **Health Organization** • **WHO guidelines**<sup>4</sup> [aɪ]/ **certificate** / **formulation** / **classification** • **WHO recommendations**<sup>5</sup> / **criteria** [kraɪtɪəɪə] • **WHO grading** [eɪ] **system** / **expert committee** • **WHO case-control study**<sup>6</sup> / **scientific group**<sup>7</sup> / **workshop report**

**International** [æʃ] **Red Cross** *n term, abbr IRC*

worldwide humanitarian organization founded to relieve human suffering of victims of war and calamity<sup>1</sup>; volunteers make a major contribution to many of its activities, e.g. collection of **blood donations**<sup>2</sup>, public health and community programs such as **maternity courses**<sup>3</sup>

» *Various disaster relief* [i:] *organizations*<sup>4</sup>, e.g. *the IRC, the Salvation* [eɪ] *Army*<sup>5</sup>, *and various private or nonprofit organizations*<sup>6</sup> *provide assistance in the form of shelter*<sup>7</sup>, *food, clothing, and services to victims. The American National Red Cross and the American Heart Association teach CPR techniques*<sup>8</sup> *both to lay* [leɪ] *persons*<sup>9</sup> *and to paramedical professionals.*

Use (national) **American** / **regional Red Cross** • **IRC Society**<sup>10</sup> [saɪ] • **Red Cross organization** / **Blood Center**<sup>11</sup> / **Children's Hospital**

**American Medical Association** [æsoʊsɪeɪʃən] *n term, abbr AMA*

*rel* **Infectious Diseases Society** [səʊsɪəɪʃi] **of America**<sup>1</sup> *n term, abbr IDSA*

professional association of **licensed physicians**<sup>2</sup> in the U.S.

» *The AMA guidelines define domestic violence*<sup>3</sup> *as "an ongoing, debilitating experience of physical, psychological, and/or sexual abuse*<sup>4</sup> *in the home, associated with increasing isolation from the outside world and limited personal freedom and accessibility to resources."*

Use **AMA Council on Scientific Affairs** / **Guidelines for Adolescent Preventive Services** (abbr GAPS) • **AMA Handbook of Poisonous and Injurious Plants**<sup>5</sup> • **British Medical**<sup>6</sup> (abbr BMA) / **California Medical Association** • **American Urologic** (abbr AUA) **Association** • **British Pediatric** / **British Dental** (abbr BDA) **Association** • **American Dental**<sup>7</sup> (abbr ADA) / **New York Heart** (abbr NYHA) **Association** • **American Nurses**<sup>8</sup> (abbr ANA) / **Visiting Nurse** (abbr VNA) **Association** • **Association of Poison Control Centers** • **Undersea Medical** / **International Continence** (abbr ICS) / **American Cancer**<sup>9</sup> (abbr ACS) **Society** • **Canadian Pediatric** / **Child Neurology Society** • **Society of Critical Care Medicine** / **Pediatric Oncology**

**Medical Board** [medɪkəl bɔ:rd] *n term*

*rel* **General Medical Council**<sup>1</sup> [kəʊn'səʊl] *n term BE, abbr GMC*

the state agency that **licenses**<sup>2</sup> [aʊs] MDs, investigates complaints [eɪ], **disciplines**<sup>3</sup> those who **violate** [aɪə] **the law**<sup>4</sup>, conducts physician evaluations, and facilitates rehabilitation

» *The Medical Board of California performs similar functions* [Δ] *for affiliated healing* [i:] *arts professions*<sup>5</sup> *such as registered dispensing opticians*<sup>6</sup> [ɪ], *licensed midwives*<sup>7</sup> [ɪ], *and research psychoanalysts* [saɪkəʊ-]. *The GMC licenses doctors to practice medicine in the UK, protects patient's rights, fosters*<sup>8</sup> *good medical practice, promotes a high standard of medical education, and deals with doctors whose fitness to practice is in doubt* [daʊt].

Use **North Carolina** / **State of Ohio** / **Arkansas State** / **New South Wales** / **Veterinary Medical Board** • **Medical Board of California** • **Australian** / **South African** / **Singapore Medical Council** • **Medical Council of Canada** / **New Zealand** / **India**

**Krebsregister**

**Prävalenz**<sup>1</sup> **Inzidenz**<sup>2</sup> **bösartige Tumoren**<sup>3</sup> **nationales Krebsregister**<sup>4</sup> **Krankenhaus-, Nosokomialinfektion**<sup>5</sup> **US-bundesstaatl. Register**<sup>6</sup> **Internat. Register für Knochenmarktransplantationen**<sup>7</sup> **Register f. Organtransplantationen**<sup>8</sup> 10

**Weltgesundheitsorganisation**

**epidemiolog. Studien**<sup>1</sup> **Ausrottung**<sup>2</sup> **meldepflichtige Krankheiten**<sup>3</sup> **WHO-Richtlinien**<sup>4</sup> **Empfehlungen der WHO**<sup>5</sup> **von der WHO durchgeführte Fallkontrollstudie**<sup>6</sup> **WHO-Forschungsgruppe**<sup>7</sup>

11

**Internationales Komitee des Roten Kreuzes**

**Katastrophe**<sup>1</sup> **Blutspenden**<sup>2</sup> **Geburtsvorbereitungskurse**<sup>3</sup> **Katastrophenhilfsorganisationen**<sup>4</sup> **Heilsarmee**<sup>5</sup> **gemeinnützige Organisationen**<sup>6</sup> **Unterkunft**<sup>7</sup> **Reanimations-techniken**<sup>8</sup> **Laien**<sup>9</sup> **Rot-Kreuz-Gesellschaft**<sup>10</sup> **Blutspendedienst d. Roten Kreuzes**<sup>11</sup>

12

**®Amerik. Ärzteverband**

®**Amerikanische Gesellschaft für Infektionskrankheiten**<sup>1</sup> **approbierte Ärzte**<sup>2</sup> **Gewalt i. d. Familie**<sup>3</sup> **sexueller Missbrauch**<sup>4</sup> **AMA-Handbuch d. Giftpflanzen u. pflanzl. Schadstoffe**<sup>5</sup> **Brit. Ärzteverband**<sup>6</sup> ®**Amerikanischer Zahnärzteverband**<sup>7</sup> ®**Amerikanischer Krankenschwesternverband**<sup>8</sup> ®**Amerikanische/ US-Krebsgesellschaft**<sup>9</sup>

13

**U.S. Ärztekammer**

**Brit. Ärztekammer**<sup>1</sup> **approbieren**<sup>2</sup> **zur Rechenschaft ziehen**<sup>3</sup> **das Gesetz verletzen, widerrechtlich handeln**<sup>4</sup> **nichtärztliche Heilberufe**<sup>5</sup> **Augenoptiker**<sup>6</sup> **staatl. geprüfte Hebammen/ Geburtshelfer(innen)**<sup>7</sup> **fördert**<sup>8</sup>

14

## Unit 14 Hospitals & Medical Facilities

Related Units: 13 Health Care Administration, 15 Medical Staff, 16 Nurses, 20 Hospital Routines

**hospital** [hɒːspɪtəl] *n* *syn* **medical center** [ˌmɛdɪkəl sɛntə] *n*

health facility [sɪ] or medical institution where the sick or injured receive medical or surgical treatment

**hospitalize**<sup>1</sup> *v* • **hospitalization**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **hospitalism**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **prehospital**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» Patients with first-degree [i:] burns [ɜ:] may be discharged [tʃ] from the hospital<sup>5</sup> after a short period of observation. No benefit of hypertonic saline [əɪ] was demonstrated for in-hospital resuscitations<sup>6</sup> [ʌs]. The patient must be moved to a medical center that has an artificial [ɪf] kidney program<sup>7</sup>.

Use to send to/admit sb. to<sup>1</sup> (the) **hospital** • general<sup>8</sup> / specialty / teaching<sup>9</sup> **hospital** • university / state / private **hospital** • army<sup>10</sup> / urban [ɜ:] / city / country [ʌ] **hospital** • field<sup>11</sup> / accredited / acute (care)<sup>12</sup> **hospital** • affiliated / AHA-registered / certified [sɜ:] **hospital** • chronic disease / closed-staff **hospital** • children<sup>13</sup> / sole community (abbr SCH) **hospital** • day (care)<sup>14</sup> / night / hotel<sup>15</sup> / rehabilitation **hospital** • maternity<sup>16</sup> [ɜ:] / psychiatric [saɪk-] **hospital** • long-term<sup>17</sup> / in-/ out-of **hospital** • community health<sup>8</sup> (abbr CHC) / drug treatment **center** • burn / cancer [ʔs] / retirement [aɪ] **center** • trauma [v:] / childbirth or birthing<sup>16</sup> [ɜ:] **center** • stone / free-standing emergency [ɜ:] (abbr FEC) **center** • **hospital stay**<sup>18</sup> / day / facilities [fəʃɪləʔi:z] / bed • **hospital setting** / environment [aɪ] / diet / nursing [ɜ:] care / air • **hospital-acquired** [aɪ] **infection**<sup>19</sup> / course / attendant<sup>20</sup> • **hospital administration** / birth certificate / mortality rate • **pre-hospital care**<sup>21</sup> / treatment / phase [feɪz] / transport

**Note:** In AmE a patient is *in the hospital* while in BE a patient is *in hospital*.

**clinic** *n* *sim* **outpatient department**<sup>1</sup> *n term, abbr OPD*  
**ambulatory care center**<sup>1</sup> *n term, rel infirmary<sup>2</sup> [ɜ:] *n**

(i) health facility providing [aɪ] outpatient care or group practice run by several specialists [ɛf]

(ii) medical instruction held at the bedside or cases presented to physicians with discussion (pre)clinical [pri:kliɪnɪkəl] *adj term* • **clinician**<sup>3</sup> [kliɪnɪʔn] *n* • **clinico-** *comb*

» Neck pain is a common complaint in most outpatient clinics. Most of these patients can be treated in the clinic, but a few severe refractory<sup>4</sup> cases may require treatment in the hospital under anesthesia [i:z]. Dr. Pit will hold a clinic on the subject next week. The infirmary is the place to go to have ticks<sup>5</sup> removed or headaches and other minor problems handled.

Use free / pain<sup>6</sup> / walk-in<sup>7</sup> / venereal [vɛrɪəl] disease (abbr VDC) / group<sup>8</sup> **clinic** • quit-smoking<sup>9</sup> / maternal [ɜ:] and infant care<sup>10</sup> **clinic** • volunteers in medicine (abbr VIM) **clinic** • outpatient clinic<sup>1</sup> / facility / service / care / treatment<sup>11</sup> • outpatient follow-up<sup>12</sup> / visit / contact • ambulatory clinic<sup>1</sup> (visit) / care<sup>13</sup> system • ambulatory patient<sup>14</sup> / ECG (monitoring) / surgery [ɜ:] (center) • clinical test / cases / course<sup>15</sup> / findings<sup>16</sup> • clinical picture<sup>17</sup> / suspicion [ɪf] / features<sup>18</sup> [fi:tʃəz] / trial<sup>19</sup> [aɪ] • experienced clinician • clinicopathologic • school / campus / prison infirmary • Eye and Ear / Leeds General Infirmary • infirmary room<sup>20</sup> / report

**sanatorium** or **sanitarium** *n* *rel* **skilled nursing facility**<sup>1</sup> *n term, abbr SNF*

hospital for recuperation<sup>2</sup> [k(j)u:] or posthospital treatment of chronic diseases, esp. in combination with dietary [daɪətəri] or exercise regimens<sup>3</sup> [rɛdʒɪmənz]

» The sanatorium is not equipped to handle major [mɛɪdʒə] medical problems. She took a medical cure [kjuə] at a sanatorium. The insurance will pay for care in a hospital and a SNF, and for home health and hospice care. After each injection [dʒɛ] visit you have to remain at the treatment facility [sɪ] for at least 30 minutes.

Use private [aɪ] / TB<sup>4</sup> **sanatorium** • sanatorium doctor / treatment • Medicaid / (non-)hospice SNF • SNF care / services<sup>5</sup> / resident • SNF administrator / rates<sup>6</sup> / reimbursement<sup>7</sup> [ɜ:] • day<sup>8</sup> / acute (abbr ACF) / intermediate [i:] (abbr ICF) care facility • chronic<sup>9</sup> / long-term care facility • hospital / dialysis [daɪəlɪsɪs] / health care<sup>10</sup> facilities • outpatient / psychiatric [saɪk-] / x-ray<sup>11</sup> [eksreɪ] facilities • toilet / sanitary<sup>12</sup> / free-standing facilities • supportive / independent living (abbr ILF) facilities

**Krankenhaus, Klinik, Hospital, Spital**

ins Krankenhaus einweisen/ -liefern, stationär aufnehmen, hospitalisieren<sup>1</sup> Krankenhauseinweisung, stationäre Aufnahme, Hospitalisierung<sup>2</sup> Hospitalismus<sup>3</sup> präklinisch<sup>4</sup> aus d. Krankenhaus entlassen<sup>5</sup> Reanimation<sup>6</sup> Dialyseeinheit, -programm<sup>7</sup> allem. Krankenhaus<sup>8</sup> Lehrkrankenhaus<sup>9</sup> Militärkrankenhaus, -spital, Lazarett<sup>10</sup> Feldlazarett, -spital<sup>11</sup> Akutkrankenhaus<sup>12</sup> Kinderkrankenhaus<sup>13</sup> Tagesklinik<sup>14</sup> Hostel<sup>15</sup> Entbindungsanstalt, -heim, Geburtsklinik<sup>16</sup> Langzeitkrankenhaus<sup>17</sup> Krankenhausaufenthalt<sup>18</sup> Nosokomialinfektion, nosokomiale Infektion<sup>19</sup> Krankenpfleger(in)<sup>20</sup> präklin. Versorgung/ Betreuung<sup>21</sup>

1

(i) **Poliklinik, Ambulanz, Ambulatorium**

(ii) **klin. Unterricht, Klinikum**  
Ambulanz<sup>1</sup> Krankenzimmer, -station; Krankenhaus (BE)<sup>2</sup> Kliniker(in)<sup>3</sup> hartnäckig, therapieresistent<sup>4</sup> Zecken<sup>5</sup> Ambulanz m. Behandlung ohne Voranmeldung<sup>6</sup> Schmerzlinik<sup>7</sup> Gemeinschaftspraxis, Ärzthaus<sup>8</sup> Raucherentwöhnungsseminar<sup>9</sup> Mütterberatung<sup>10</sup> ambulante Behandlung<sup>11</sup> ambulante Nachsorge<sup>12</sup> ambulante Betreuung<sup>13</sup> gehfähige(r) Patient(in)<sup>14</sup> klin. Verlauf<sup>15</sup> klin. Befund<sup>16</sup> klin. Bild, Krankheitsbild<sup>17</sup> klin. Symptome<sup>18</sup> klin. Studie<sup>19</sup> Krankenzimmer<sup>20</sup>

2

**Sanatorium, Genesungsheim, (Lungen)heilstätte**

Pflegeheim<sup>1</sup> Genesung, Erholung<sup>2</sup> therapeut. Übungen, Krankengymnastik<sup>3</sup> Lungenheilstätte<sup>4</sup> Pflegedienste<sup>5</sup> Pflegesätze<sup>6</sup> Pflegekostenrückerstattung<sup>7</sup> Tagesklinik, -heim<sup>8</sup> Pflegeheim/ Krankenheim f. chronisch Kranke<sup>9</sup> medizin. Einrichtungen, Gesundheitseinrichtungen<sup>10</sup> Röntgeneinrichtungen<sup>11</sup> sanitäre Einrichtungen/ Anlagen<sup>12</sup>

3

**hospice** [hɒːspɪs] *n* → U12-1f *rel nursing home*<sup>1</sup> [nɜːrɪŋ hɒm] *n*

health facility or program providing palliative and supportive care for the **terminally** [ɜː] ill<sup>2</sup>

» Many patients prefer to be cared for in their homes or in a hospice setting rather than a hospital. Only 20% of people over age 85 reside [aɪ] in a nursing home.

Use free-standing **hospice** • **hospice care**<sup>3</sup> / medicine / facility • **hospice support** / team / nurse [ɜː] / volunteer [ɪvɔː] • **nursing home** stay / care / **resident**<sup>4</sup> • **nursing home placement**<sup>5</sup> / admission • **rest or old people's**<sup>6</sup> / **foster or adoptive**<sup>7</sup> / **funeral**<sup>8</sup> [fjʊː] **home**

**mental institution** [mentl̩ ɪnstɪ(j)ʊːʃn] *n* *syn* **psychiatric** [saɪkɪətrɪk]**hospital, (mental) asylum** [əspɪtəl] *n* → U77-24

medical facility for providing care and treatment for mentally incompetent or unbalanced clients [aɪ]

(de)**institutionalize**<sup>1</sup> *v term* • **institutionalism**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **hospitalism**<sup>2</sup> *n*

» Decide whether to start procedures for **involuntary commitment**<sup>3</sup> to a mental institution. The disadvantages of psychiatric **hospitalization**<sup>4</sup> include decreased **self-confidence**<sup>5</sup>, the stigma of being a "psychiatric patient", possible increased **dependency**<sup>6</sup> and **regression**<sup>7</sup>. If **inpatient care**<sup>8</sup> is needed, units that are divisions of general hospitals and those in psychiatric hospitals are equally effective.

Use **mental hospital**<sup>9</sup> / **home**<sup>9</sup> • **closed**<sup>10</sup> **hospital** • pediatric / **educational**<sup>11</sup> **institution** • **institution** for mental diseases<sup>9</sup> (abbr IMD) / of therapy<sup>12</sup> • **psychiatric patient** / **disorder**<sup>13</sup> / emergency service • **psychiatric hold**<sup>3</sup> / hospitalization / practice • **psychiatric nursing** / **inpatient unit**<sup>14</sup> / **outpatient treatment**<sup>15</sup> • **psychiatric home care** / social worker (abbr PSW) • **mental patient** / **disorder**<sup>16</sup> / **confusion**<sup>17</sup> [jʊːʒ] • **mental clarity** [eə] / **disability or handicap**<sup>18</sup> • **institutional care**<sup>8</sup> (facility) • to become **institutionalized** • **institutionalized** elderly / children • \***insane**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] or \***lunatic**<sup>9</sup> [ʊː] **asylum** • **asylum** for the mentally ill<sup>9</sup>

**Note:** Among the numerous colloquial expressions, which mostly have a negative connotation, the most widely used ones are: **sanatorium**, **\*funny farm**, **\*mad-house**, **\*nuthouse**, **\*(loony) bin**, **\*booby hatch**, and **\*cuckoo's nest**.

**emergency** [ɪmɜːrdʒən'si] **room** or **department** *n*, *abbr* ER or ED

*syn* **casualty** [kæʒʊəlti] (**department**) *n* BE → U6-12,18

hospital area equipped and staffed to treat patients or trauma victims requiring urgent care

**emergency**<sup>1</sup> *n* • **casualty**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **multicasualty**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» On arrival in the ER, a reliable IV route was established<sup>4</sup>, and blood drawn<sup>5</sup> for enzyme [aɪ] analysis. The patient was evaluated by an **obstetrician**<sup>6</sup> [ɪ] before being discharged<sup>7</sup> from the emergency department. If a doctor treats a patient while performing normal duties in the ER or as part of the responding "crash cart" team<sup>8</sup> in a hospital, the Good Samaritan statute does not apply.

Use hospital / pediatric [i:] **ED** • **emergency center** / **measures**<sup>9</sup> [eɪ] / care / call<sup>10</sup> • **emergency management**<sup>11</sup> / **medical service**<sup>12</sup> (abbr EMS) / **physician**<sup>13</sup> [ɪ] • **accident and emergency**<sup>14</sup> (A & E) / hospital / clinical / **surgical**<sup>15</sup> **department** • records / central supply [aɪ] / **radiology or x-ray**<sup>16</sup> **department** • **Department of Pediatrics** / **Urology** • **mass casualty incident**<sup>17</sup> • arriving / bomb / **military**<sup>18</sup> **casualties** • **multicasualty** event

**intensive care unit** *n term*, *abbr* ICU *syn* **critical care unit** *n term* → U125-1f

hospital facility equipped with sophisticated monitoring and **resuscitative** [sɜːs] equipment<sup>1</sup> and staffed for high-quality continuous nursing and medical supervision of critically ill patients

» Patients who show no favorable response to aggressive therapy should be hospitalized in an intensive care unit. Transport the patient to an ICU with **one-on-one nursing**<sup>2</sup>.

Use medical / surgical / prenatal [eɪ] **neonatal**<sup>3</sup> [i:] (abbr NICU) **intensive care unit** • patient (abbr PCU) / transitional [ɪ] (abbr TCU) **care unit** • extended (abbr ECU) / special **care unit** • (mobile) **coronary**<sup>4</sup> (abbr MCCU) **care unit** • **ICU admission**<sup>5</sup> / patient / setting / management • ambulatory / tropical disease / **EMS**<sup>6</sup> **unit** • **paramedic**<sup>7</sup> / psychiatric / neurological **unit** • **trauma**<sup>8</sup> / burn [ɜː] / hematology **unit** • **preoperative holding**<sup>9</sup> / ambulatory surgery **unit** • advanced life support **unit** • cardiac surveillance [eɪ] / **dialysis**<sup>10</sup> [æ] / tuberculosis **unit** • intermediate [i:] (medical) care / **intensive observation**<sup>11</sup> **unit**

**Sterbeklinik, Hospiz**

Pflegeheim<sup>1</sup> Patienten i. Endstadium, Terminalkranke<sup>2</sup> Sterbebegleitung, -betreuung<sup>3</sup> Pflegeheimbewohner(in)<sup>4</sup> Einweisung ins Pflegeheim<sup>5</sup> Alters-, Seniorenheim<sup>6</sup> Kinderheim<sup>7</sup> Leichenhalle<sup>8</sup>

4

**Nervenheilstalt, psychiatrische Klinik**

in e. Heim/ Anstalt einweisen; institutionalisieren<sup>1</sup> Hospitalismus<sup>2</sup> Zwangseinweisung<sup>3</sup> stationäre Aufnahme<sup>4</sup> Selbstvertrauen, -bewusstsein<sup>5</sup> Abhängigkeit<sup>6</sup> Regression<sup>7</sup> stationäre Betreuung/ Pflege<sup>8</sup> Nervenheilstalt, psychiatr. Klinik<sup>9</sup> geschlossene Anstalt<sup>10</sup> Erziehungsanstalt<sup>11</sup> Therapieeinleitung, -beginn<sup>12</sup> psychiatrische Störung<sup>13</sup> psychiatr. Station<sup>14</sup> ambulante psychiatr. Behandlung<sup>15</sup> psychische Störung, Geisteskrankheit<sup>16</sup> geistige Verwirrtheit<sup>17</sup> geistige Behinderung<sup>18</sup>

5

**Unfallstation, Notaufnahme**

Notfall<sup>1</sup> (Unfall)opfer, Verletzte(r); Unfallstation (BE)<sup>2</sup> Katastrophen<sup>3</sup> venöser Zugang wurde gelegt<sup>4</sup> Blut abgenommen<sup>5</sup> Geburtshelfer(in)<sup>6</sup> entlassen<sup>7</sup> Notarztteam<sup>8</sup> Notmaßnahmen<sup>9</sup> Notruf<sup>10</sup> Not(fall)behandlung<sup>11</sup> Notfalldienst, Notdienst<sup>12</sup> Notarzt/-ärztin<sup>13</sup> allgemeine Notaufnahme/ Unfallambulanz<sup>14</sup> chirurg. Abteilung<sup>15</sup> radiolog. Abteilung<sup>16</sup> Massenunfall<sup>17</sup> Kriegsverletzte, Gefallene<sup>18</sup>

6

**Intensivstation**

Reanimationsausrüstung, -geräte<sup>1</sup> Einzelpflege, individuelle Pflege<sup>2</sup> Neugeborenenintensivstation<sup>3</sup> kardiolog. Intensivstation<sup>4</sup> Aufnahme in d. Intensivstation<sup>5</sup> notärztliches Team<sup>6</sup> Arzthelfer-, Sanitätsteam<sup>7</sup> Frischverletzenstation<sup>8</sup> Wartebereich (vor OP-Schleuse)<sup>9</sup> Dialysestation<sup>10</sup> Intensivbeobachtungsstation, IBS<sup>11</sup>

7

**newborn nursery** [n(j)u:bɔ:rn nɜ:rsəri] *n*

hospital section where newborn infants are taken care of

**nurse**<sup>1</sup> [nɜ:rs] *n* & *v* • **nursing**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **nursing**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **nursing**<sup>4</sup> *n* → U16-2

» The single most important principle in nursery infection control is good hand washing. Otitis [outaɪtɪs] media<sup>5</sup> [i:] may be present in a significant number of long-term nursery residents. Rooming-in promotes [ou] breast [e] feeding while bottle supplements<sup>6</sup> [Δ] in the nursery at night undermine<sup>7</sup> [aj] it.

Use well-baby<sup>8</sup> / transitional [ɪj] / intensive care / level 2 / level 3 **nursery** • **nursery staff or personnel**<sup>9</sup> / care / epidemic • **nursery**-acquired [aj] pneumonia [n(j)u:-] / infection rate / outbreak • day<sup>10</sup> **nursery** • **nursery school**<sup>11</sup> / rhyme [ai] • **nursing mother**<sup>12</sup> / infant / bra(ssiere)<sup>13</sup> • **nursing** diarrhea [i:] / bottle (caries)<sup>14</sup> [keə:ɪz] / home<sup>15</sup> (BE) • wet<sup>16</sup> **nurse**

**radiology suite** [reɪdɪɔ:lədʒi swi:t] *n term* → U99-1f

rel **section**<sup>1</sup>, **division**<sup>2</sup> [ɪʒ] *n*

series of connected rooms in a medical facility equipped for radiographic diagnosis and/or treatment

» The patient is then moved from the radiology suite to an operating room that has fluoroscopic capabilities. The room temperature in the delivery suite<sup>3</sup> should be raised (esp. for infants weighing < 1500 g). He's professor and chairman of the Division of Neurosurgery [aj].

Use surgical or operating<sup>4</sup> / obstetrical<sup>3</sup> **suite** • labor-delivery-recovery-postpartum<sup>3</sup> (abbr LDRPS) **suite** • ultrasonography<sup>5</sup> / endoscopy **suite** • bronchoscopy [kɔ:] / trauma<sup>6</sup> [p:] / urologic **suite** • **Section of Genetics** / Pulmonary [u] Medicine • **Division of Vascular Surgery**<sup>7</sup> / Orthopedic [i:] Trauma • **Division of Plastic and Reconstructive [Δ] Surgery**<sup>8</sup> • **Division of Gynecologic [gam] dʒɪnɪkə-] Oncology** / Infectious Diseases

**quarantine ward or station** [kwɔ:rɪnti:n wɔ:rd] *n term*

rel **isolation**<sup>1</sup> [aɪsəleɪʃn] *n term* → U94-1f; U139-9f

facility for isolating [aj] persons with highly contagious<sup>2</sup> [eɪdʒ] diseases (e.g. Lassa fever<sup>3</sup>) [i:]

**quarantine (off)**<sup>4</sup> *v term* • **quarantinable**<sup>5</sup> *adj* • **isolate**<sup>6</sup> *v* & *n* • **isolate**<sup>7</sup> *n*

» As a well-trained pathologist she knew the quarantine would not be lifted<sup>8</sup>. All patients must be managed under conditions of strict barrier isolation. Reassure [ɪ] the patient that it's the pathogen, not the person, that is being isolated.

Use to be in/establish<sup>9</sup>/put sb. in<sup>4</sup> **quarantine** • detention in / involuntary / full-scale<sup>10</sup> **quarantine** • **quarantine** facility / hospital / ship / period<sup>11</sup> • **quarantine measures**<sup>12</sup> [eʒ] / officer / procedure [si:] • **quarantined** patient • **quarantinable disease**<sup>13</sup> • **contact**<sup>14</sup> / respiratory / protective<sup>15</sup> **isolation** • patient / disease-specific **isolation** • **isolation** precautions [p:] / room / from peers<sup>16</sup> [ɪə] • infant placed in an **isolate**

**tissue typing laboratory** [tɪʃju: || tɪsju: taɪpɪŋ læbrətɔ:ri] *n term* → U136-10

sim **path lab**<sup>1</sup> [pæθ læb] *n jar* → U116-1

room or unit equipped for the performance of tests, and investigative procedures and for the preparation of reagents [eɪdʒ], etc. used in the identification of tissue types, esp. for evaluating compatibility<sup>2</sup> of tissues from a donor<sup>3</sup> [ou] and a recipient<sup>4</sup> [sɪ] before transplantation

» A battery of screening laboratory tests cannot substitute [Δ] for<sup>5</sup> a thorough<sup>6</sup> initial [ɪ] evaluation. Take the specimen<sup>7</sup> to the lab and ask for a complete tumor tissue type as soon as possible. Which role does the toxicology lab have in the treatment of acute poisoning?

Use clinical / bacteriology<sup>8</sup> / microbiology / toxicology **laboratory** • pathology<sup>1</sup> / venereal [ɪə] disease research (VDRL) **laboratory** • catheterization / maximum containment [eɪ] **laboratory** • forensic<sup>9</sup> / central / sleep<sup>10</sup> **laboratory** • **laboratory tests or examinations**<sup>11</sup> / data / workup<sup>11</sup> / diagnosis • **laboratory findings**<sup>12</sup> / values<sup>13</sup> / technician<sup>14</sup> [ɪ] / techniques [i:] • tissue specimen / culture [Δ] sent to the lab • lab work<sup>15</sup> / study / tests<sup>11</sup> / report<sup>16</sup>

**Säuglingsstation, -zimmer, Neugeborenenstation**

Krankenschwester, -pfleger; pflegen<sup>1</sup> Säugling; Pflegekind<sup>2</sup> stillend<sup>3</sup> Krankenpflege<sup>4</sup> Mittelohrentzündung<sup>5</sup> zusätzl. Flaschnahrung, Zufüttern<sup>6</sup> untergräbt<sup>7</sup> allem. Säuglingsstation<sup>8</sup> Kinderschwestern<sup>9</sup> Kindertagesstätte, Kinderhort, -krippe<sup>10</sup> Kindergarten<sup>11</sup> stillende Mutter<sup>12</sup> Still-BH<sup>13</sup> Flaschenkaries<sup>14</sup> priv. Entbindungsklinik, Privatklinik; Pflegeheim<sup>15</sup> Amme<sup>16</sup>

8

**radiologische Abteilung**

Abteilung, Trakt<sup>1</sup> Abteilung, Institut<sup>2</sup> Entbindungsstation, -abteilung<sup>3</sup> Operationstrakt<sup>4</sup> Ultraschallraum<sup>5</sup> Schockraum, Frischverletztambulanz<sup>6</sup> Abteilung für Gefäßchirurgie<sup>7</sup> Abteilung für Plastische u. Wiederherstellungschirurgie<sup>8</sup>

9

**Quarantäne-, Isolierstation**

Isolierung<sup>1</sup> hochinfektiös<sup>2</sup> Lassa-Fieber<sup>3</sup> unter Quarantäne stellen, isolieren<sup>4</sup> quarantänepflichtig<sup>5</sup> isolieren; Isolat<sup>6</sup> Brutkasten<sup>7</sup> aufgehoben<sup>8</sup> Quarantäne verhängen<sup>9</sup> strenge/ vollkommene Isolierung<sup>10</sup> Quarantänezeit<sup>11</sup> Quarantänemaßnahmen<sup>12</sup> quarantänepflichtige Krankheit<sup>13</sup> Isolierung<sup>14</sup> protektive Isolierung<sup>15</sup> Isolierung v. Gleichaltrigen/ Kollegen<sup>16</sup>

10

**HLA-Labor**

Pathologielabor<sup>1</sup> Verträglichkeit<sup>2</sup> Spender(in)<sup>3</sup> Empfänger(in)<sup>4</sup> ersetzen<sup>5</sup> gründlich<sup>6</sup> Gewebeprobe<sup>7</sup> bakteriolog. Labor<sup>8</sup> gerichtsmedizin. Labor<sup>9</sup> Schlaforschungslabor<sup>10</sup> Labordiagnostik<sup>11</sup> Laborbefund(e)<sup>12</sup> Laborwerte<sup>13</sup> (med. techn.) Laborassistent(in)<sup>14</sup> Laboruntersuchungen<sup>15</sup> Laborbericht<sup>16</sup>

11

**blood bank** [blʌd bæŋk] *n term* → U136-15f

hospital unit or **free-standing**<sup>1</sup> facility [sɪ] in which blood is collected from **donors**, **typed**<sup>2</sup>, stored and/or prepared for **transfusion** [jʊ:z] to recipients [sɪ]

**bank**<sup>3</sup> *v term* • **blood banking** *n* • **banked**<sup>4</sup> *adj*

» Most hospitals have a **blood bank program** whereby the **patient** can **donate** [ɔu] **blood**<sup>5</sup> prior [prɪə] to admission to **replace** the **units**<sup>6</sup> used. A **clotted sample** of the **patient's blood** should be sent to the **blood bank** for **retyping** and **cross-matching**<sup>7</sup>.

Use hospital-based / regional / commercial [ɜ:] / community **blood bank** • **tissue**<sup>8</sup> [tɪʃ|sju:] / **skin**<sup>9</sup> / **bone**<sup>10</sup> **bank** • **sperm**<sup>11</sup> [ɜ:] / **eye**<sup>12</sup> / **stroke** [ou] data **bank** • **blood bank** procedure / **technology specialist**<sup>13</sup> • **blood bank services**<sup>14</sup> / physician [fɪzɪʃn] / support • **blood bank** immunohematology / and **donor center** • **banked blood**<sup>6</sup> / serum [ɪə] / **plasma**<sup>15</sup> • **bank** blood • **autologous blood**<sup>16</sup> / **tissue**<sup>17</sup> / **skin banking**

**Unit 15 Medical Staff & Specialties**

Related Units: 14 Hospitals, 18 At the Doctor's, 16 Nurses & Paramedical Staff

**physician** [fɪzɪʃn] *n clin & term* *syn (medical) doctor, MD, Dr. n, doc n inf*

(i) person trained at a college of medicine who is **licensed** [aɪs] to **practice medicine**<sup>1</sup>

(ii) practitioner [ɪʃ] of **medicine**<sup>2</sup>, as contrasted with a **surgeon**<sup>3</sup> [sɜ:rdʒn] → U131-5

**physic**<sup>4</sup> [fɪzɪk] *n* • **physics**<sup>5</sup> [ɪ] *n* • **doctorate**<sup>6</sup> [dɒ:ktəət] *n* • **doctoral** *adj*

» These patients should be **referred**<sup>7</sup> [ɜ:] to their **primary physician** for **outpatient follow-up**<sup>8</sup>. The doctor said it would never get better by itself and could lead to **arthritis** [aɪ]. Doc, I hardly eat anything. This section was contributed by Mary T. Holmes, MD.

Use to seek [i:] help from/present to/visit<sup>9</sup>/consult [Δ] **a physician** • **primary** [aɪ] (care)<sup>10</sup> (abbr PCP) / **house**<sup>11</sup> (BE) / **family**<sup>10</sup> (practice) **physician** • **board-certified**<sup>12</sup> [sɜ:] / office-based / woman / salaried **physician** • **full-time** / **contract**<sup>13</sup> / **treating** [i:] or **attending**<sup>14</sup> / **referring**<sup>15</sup> [ɜ:] **physician** • specialty care (abbr SPC) / **emergency**<sup>16</sup> [ɜ:] (abbr EP) / **chest** [tʃ] / **osteopathic** / **general**<sup>17</sup> **physician** • **physician's private office** / **assistant** (abbr P.A.) • **physician-directed** / **on call**<sup>18</sup> • **to see**<sup>9</sup> / call **a doctor** • **family**<sup>10</sup> / **country** [Δ] **doctor** • **doctor-patient relationship**<sup>19</sup> • **doctor's office**<sup>20</sup> / **bill** / **duty** / **signature** • **Doctor of Medicine** or **Medical Doctor** (abbr MD) / **Philosophy** (abbr PhD) • **doctoral thesis**<sup>21</sup> [i:] / **candidate**

**Note:** Mark the difference between **physician** and **physicist**<sup>22</sup>. **Physical** can refer to both the body (e.g. physical [ɪ] fitness) or to physics (e.g. **physical laws**<sup>23</sup>).

**medical staff** [stæf|BE sta:f] *n* *rel hospital staff*<sup>1</sup> *n*

physicians, residents, physician's assistants, and interns employed by a medical facility [sɪ]

**staff**<sup>2</sup> *v* • (**well-/under**)**staffed**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **staffing**<sup>4</sup> *n*

» Staff members **hurrying** [ɜ:] by who are calling to each other can be extremely **disturbing** [ɜ:] to an acutely ill patient. At least one **physician on duty**<sup>5</sup> in the emergency [ɜ:] care area is **available** [eɪ] within 30 minutes through a **medical staff call roster**<sup>6</sup> [ɔ:].

Use to be on the<sup>7</sup> **staff** • **open** / **closed** / **active** / **associate** [ɔu] / **honorary** [ɔ:] **medical staff** • **provisional** [ɪz] / **president** of the **medical staff** • **health care** / **professional** / **in-service**<sup>8</sup> **staff** • **OR** / **emergency department** / **intensive care**<sup>9</sup> / **obstetric staff** • **laboratory** / **nursing**<sup>10</sup> [ɜ:] / **office** / **senior**<sup>11</sup> [i:] / **chief** of **staff** • **staff member**<sup>12</sup> / **nurse**<sup>13</sup> / **orientation** • **staff-to-patient transmission** / **privilege** • **staffing** problems • **medical profession**<sup>14</sup> / **assistant** (abbr MA) / **director**<sup>15</sup> • **medical oncologist** / **assistance** (team)

**Blutbank, Blutdepot**

eigenständig<sup>1</sup> Blutgruppe bestimmt<sup>2</sup> konservieren u. lagern<sup>3</sup> konserviert<sup>4</sup> Blut spenden<sup>5</sup> Blut-konserve(n)<sup>6</sup> Durchführung einer Kreuzprobe<sup>7</sup> Gewebekbank<sup>8</sup> Hautbank<sup>9</sup> Knochenbank<sup>10</sup> Samenbank<sup>11</sup> Augenbank<sup>12</sup> Blutbanktechniker(in)<sup>13</sup> Blutspendedienst<sup>14</sup> Plasmakonserve<sup>15</sup> Herstellung v. Eigenblutkonserven<sup>16</sup> Zell-, Gewebekonservierung<sup>17</sup>

12

**Arzt, Ärztin**

(in diesem Kapitel wird zur besseren Übersichtlichkeit Arzt für beide Formen verwendet)

d. Arztberuf ausüben<sup>1</sup> innere Medizin<sup>2</sup> Chirurg(in)<sup>3</sup> Arzneimittel, Medikament, Abführmittel<sup>4</sup> Physik<sup>5</sup> Doktorat, Dokortitel<sup>6</sup> überwiesen<sup>7</sup> ambulante Nachsorge<sup>8</sup> einen Arzt aufsuchen<sup>9</sup> Hausarzt, prakt. Arzt<sup>10</sup> ®PJ-Student(in), Turnusarzt (öst.) im 1. Turnusjahr (interne Abt.)<sup>11</sup> approbierter Arzt<sup>12</sup> Vertragsarzt<sup>13</sup> behandelnder Arzt<sup>14</sup> überweisen der Arzt<sup>15</sup> Notarzt<sup>16</sup> Allgemeinmediziner(in)<sup>17</sup> diensthabender Arzt<sup>18</sup> Arzt-Patient-Beziehung<sup>19</sup> (Arzt)praxis<sup>20</sup> Doktorarbeit<sup>21</sup> Physiker(in)<sup>22</sup> physikalische Gesetze<sup>23</sup>

1

**ärztl. Personal (i. Krankenhaus)**

Krankenhaus-, Klinikpersonal<sup>1</sup> Mitarbeiter finden für, besetzen<sup>2</sup> unterbesetzt<sup>3</sup> Stellenbesetzung<sup>4</sup> diensthabender Arzt<sup>5</sup> Dienstplan<sup>6</sup> zum Mitarbeiterstab gehören<sup>7</sup> Belegschaft<sup>8</sup> Intensivpflegepersonal<sup>9</sup> Pflegepersonal<sup>10</sup> dienstl. Mitarbeiter(innen)<sup>11</sup> Mitarbeiter(in), Kollege/-in<sup>12</sup> ausgebildete Kranken-/ Stationschwester<sup>13</sup> Arztberuf, Ärzteschaft<sup>14</sup> ®Klinikdirektor<sup>15</sup>

2



**attending (physician or surgeon)** *n term* *syn* **consultant** [ˌ] *n term BE*

(i) physician or surgeon on the staff of a hospital who regularly attends patients at the hospital, supervises and teaches house staff, fellows<sup>1</sup>, medical students, etc.

(ii) doctor who is responsible for a particular (usually private) patient

**attend**<sup>2</sup> [ətend] *v* • **attend** to<sup>3</sup> *v* • **attendance**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **consult**<sup>5</sup> *v* • **consultation**<sup>6</sup> *n*

» The child must be hospitalized and the attending physician informed of the emergency physician's suspicions [1]. Physicians can also relieve suffering [Δ] by spending time with dying patients, listening to them, and attending to their psychological [saik-] distress. A skilled anesthesiologist should be in attendance<sup>7</sup> during labor<sup>8</sup> [e1].

Use **attending** staff / cardiologist • full-time / assistant<sup>9</sup> **attending** • **to attend** clinics / a day care center<sup>10</sup> / school • **to attend to** a patient's needs / task<sup>11</sup> • **consultant** radiologist / neuro-ophthalmologist • house<sup>12</sup> (BE) / plastic / vascular / transplant / oral **surgeon**

**Note:** In the U.S. a **consultant**<sup>13</sup> is a physician or surgeon who acts in an advisory capacity counseling the attending doctors.

**resident** [rezɪdʰnt] *n term* *syn* **registrar** [redʒɪstrɑ:r] *n term BE*

rel **PGY-2, 3 or 4**<sup>1</sup> *n jar*

(i) medical doctor who has completed medical school and internship and is receiving [sɪ:] training in a specialized area; completion [i:] of a residency program is required for board [bɔ:rd] certification in a medical or surgical specialty

(ii) someone living at a particular place for a prolonged period

**residency**<sup>2</sup> *n term* • **residence**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **resident**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **residential** [rezɪdenʰʃl] *adj*

» The length of residency varies according to the specialty. Then the monocytes [-saɪts] penetrate the endothelial [i:] layer and take up residence<sup>5</sup> in the intima.

Use **medical** (specialty) / surgical [sɜ:] / first year / PGY-2 / senior<sup>6</sup> [i:] / chief [tʃɪ:f] **resident** • medical<sup>7</sup> / administrative **residency** • **residency** (training) program<sup>2</sup> / Review Committee (abbr RRC) • senior<sup>6</sup> [i:] **registrar** • **resident** bacteria<sup>8</sup> [ɪə:] / flora<sup>9</sup> / cells • **residential** care<sup>10</sup> / center • **nursing home**<sup>11</sup> / rural [rʌə:] / long-term **residents** • place / area / change / history of **residence**

**Note:** In the U.S. a **registrar** is an administrative officer whose chief responsibility is to maintain the medical records. **PGY** stands for 'postgraduate year'.

**(medical) intern** [ɪntɜ:rɪn] *n term*

*syn* **houseman** [haʊsmən||mæn], **house officer** *n term BE, abbr H.O.*

physician in the first postgraduate year (PGY-1) gaining supervised [u:] practical experience before beginning a residency program

**internship**<sup>1</sup> *n term* • **subintern**<sup>2</sup> *n* • **intern(e)** *v* • **in-house**<sup>3</sup> *adj*

» The medical intern is responsible for primary patient care. I was the intern assigned [aɪ] to the case. The internship year is often quite rigorous [ɪ]. It's hard to describe an intern's typical day since we rotate through different services, each with its own schedule.

Use **to work as** an<sup>4</sup> / nurse [ɜ:] **intern** • senior<sup>5</sup> (abbr SHO) **house officer** • student **internship** • preregistration<sup>6</sup> [dʒ] / junior<sup>7</sup> [dʒu:] (abbr JHO) **house officer** • **house** surgeon (abbr HS) / staff

**extern** [ekstɜ:rɪn] *n term* *syn* **medical clerk** [ɑ:] or **elective** *n term BE*

rel **locum (tenens)**<sup>1</sup> [loʊkəm tɪnənz] *n term*

nonresident advanced medical student assisting with patient care as an extracurricular activity

**externship**<sup>2</sup> [ekstɜ:rɪnʃɪp] *n term* • **clerkship**<sup>2</sup> [ɑ:] *n BE* • **medical student** *n*

» An extern who was infected with AIDS by a needle sued [u:] the hospital for negligence<sup>3</sup>. Medical clerks perform clerical work<sup>4</sup> to support the care given to patients in a ward<sup>5</sup> [ɔ:].

Use **medical**<sup>6</sup> **extern** • surgical / hospital / clinic / unit / ward<sup>7</sup> **clerk** • supply [aɪ] / admissions / **medical records**<sup>8</sup> / office **clerk** • **to do**<sup>9</sup> / require a **locum** • medical / dental / pharmacy **locum** • **locum post**<sup>10</sup> / doctor / recruitment<sup>11</sup> [u:] • 3rd-year / 4th-year **medical student** • **medical graduate**<sup>12</sup> / assistant • **to do** an<sup>13</sup> **elective** • **to work as** an<sup>13</sup> **extern**

(i) **®Chefarzt, Primar(arzt) (öst.)**

(ii) **Behandelnder Arzt**

Fachärzte i. Ausbildung<sup>1</sup> versorgen, behandeln; besuchen, anwesend sein<sup>2</sup> s. kümmern um<sup>3</sup> Anwesenheit, Dienst, Bereitschaft<sup>4</sup> konsultieren, zu Rate ziehen<sup>5</sup> Beratung, Besprechung, Konsultation<sup>6</sup> anwesend<sup>7</sup> bei d. Entbindung<sup>8</sup> stellvertretende(r) Leiter(in)<sup>9</sup> ein Tagenheim besuchen<sup>10</sup> s. einer Aufgabe widmen<sup>11</sup> PJ-Student, Turnusarzt (öst.) im 1. Turnusjahr (chirurg. Abt.)<sup>12</sup> Konsiliararzt<sup>13</sup>

3

(i) **Assistenzarzt i. d. Fachausbildung**

(ii) **Bewohner(in)**

Assistenzarzt i. 2., 3., 4. Ausbildungsjahr<sup>1</sup> Facharztausbildung<sup>2</sup> Wohnort<sup>3</sup> wohnhaft, ansässig<sup>4</sup> sich ansiedeln<sup>5</sup> Assistenzarzt in einem fortgeschrittenen Ausbildungsjahr, Oberarzt<sup>6</sup> internistische Ausbildung<sup>7</sup> Bakterienflora<sup>8</sup> Residentflora<sup>9</sup> stationäre Pflege<sup>10</sup> Bewohner eines Pflegeheims<sup>11</sup>

4

**®Assistenzarzt, Turnusarzt (öst.)**

®Assistenzarztausbildung, Turnus (öst.) <sup>®</sup>PJ-Student(in) i. letzten Studienjahr, der/die das sog. praktische Jahr i. Krankenhaus absolviert<sup>2</sup> (haus)intern, im Haus<sup>3</sup> den Turnus machen (öst.), das prakt. Jahr absolvieren<sup>4</sup> <sup>®</sup>Turnusarzt i. 3. Turnusjahr (öst.), Assistenzarzt<sup>5</sup> PJ-Student, Arzt im 1. Turnusjahr (öst.), Assistenzarzt<sup>6</sup> <sup>®</sup>Turnusarzt im 2. Turnusjahr (öst.)<sup>7</sup>

5

**Famulant(in)**

(Urlaubs)vertreter(in)<sup>1</sup> Famulatur<sup>2</sup> klagte d. KH wegen Fahrlässigkeit<sup>3</sup> Schreibarbeit<sup>4</sup> Station<sup>5</sup> Famulant(in) i. d. medizin. Abteilung<sup>6</sup> Stationshelferin, -gehilfe<sup>7</sup> med. Dokumentationsassistent(in)<sup>8</sup> e. Vertretung übernehmen<sup>9</sup> Vertretungsstelle<sup>10</sup> Einstellung e. Vertreters(in)<sup>11</sup> promovierter Arzt<sup>12</sup> famulieren<sup>13</sup>

6

**fellow** [feləʊ] *n term* *syn* **PGY-4** or **5 n jar**, **trainee** [traɪniː] *n term* *BE*

(i) medical school graduate who has completed residency and is undergoing specialized training in a subspecialty (ii) member of a learned [i] society

**fellowship**<sup>1</sup> *n term* • **traineeship**<sup>2</sup> *n BE*

» *The Division of Transplantation is staffed by 3 transplant fellows, a fourth-year surgical resident, 2-3 interns, and one medical fellow. Most patients, when informed, allow trainees to play an active role in their care.*

*Use* postdoctoral / senior [i:] / (non)medical / clinical **fellow** • infectious diseases / **research**<sup>3</sup> / visiting **fellow** • anesthesia [i:] / graduate **trainee** • **trainee** dentist / **nurse**<sup>4</sup> [ɜ:] • to supervise **trainees** • **fellow** in nephrology / **specialist**<sup>5</sup>

**Note:** In the U.S. everybody receiving specialized training can be referred to as a **trainee**.

**general practitioner** [præktɪˈnɪʃ] *n term abbr GP*

*syn* **family** or **primary-care physician** *n*, *opposite* **specialist**<sup>1</sup> *n*

doctor who is not a specialist but treats all illnesses

**practice**<sup>2</sup> *v & n* • **generalist**<sup>3</sup> *n & adj* • (**sub**)**specialty**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **specialize (in)**<sup>5</sup> *v*

» *While the majority of family physicians and general practitioners do treat HIV-infected patients, many feel uncomfortable doing so. Fifty percent of women presenting to GPs with a variety of symptoms suggestive [dʒɛ] of acute UTI<sup>6</sup> were found to have upper tract infection.*

*Use* to see/consult [Δ] **a practitioner** • primary-care / **dental**<sup>7</sup> / **medical**<sup>8</sup> / emergency **practitioner** • pediatric / mental health / experienced / **nurse**<sup>9</sup> **practitioner** • **family practice** (*abbr* FP) / medicine / doctor / **counseling** [aʊ] • **primary-care patient** / provider [aɪ] • **mental health**<sup>10</sup> / infectious disease / pain / **cancer**<sup>11</sup> **specialist** • medical / hand / **pulmonary** [ʊ] [Δ] **disease**<sup>12</sup> **specialist** • **specialist in** blood bank technology (*abbr* SBBT) • **specialist in** nuclear [u:] medicine / **otorhinolaryngology**<sup>13</sup> • medical / **surgical specialty** • **specialty management**<sup>14</sup> / **referral**<sup>15</sup> [ɜ:] / **training**

**(general) internist** [ɪntɜːrnɪst] *n term* *rel* **internal** [ɜ:] **medicine**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

physician specialized in the medical diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the internal organs; **subspecialties**<sup>2</sup> include cardiology, hematology [hi:], gastroenterology, endocrinology, and nephrology

» *Refer the patient to an internist or gastroenterologist within 4-5 days. Unfortunately, internists frequently do not examine the breasts [e] in women, they are apt to<sup>3</sup> refer this to gynecologists. What is the internist's role in the management of cardiovascular trauma [ɒ:]?*

*Use* **the internist's** role / approach [-aʊtʃ] to diagnosis / perspective • **internal** anatomy / **organs**<sup>4</sup> / structures [Δ] / disease / **injury**<sup>5</sup>

**dermatologist** [dɜːrmətɒlɒdʒɪst] *n term* *rel* **venereologist**<sup>1</sup> [vənɪə-] *n term*

physician specialized in disorders of the skin; venereologists specialize in sexually transmitted disease

**dermatology**<sup>2</sup> *n term* • **venereology** *n* • **venereal**<sup>3</sup> *adj* • **derm(a)-** *comb*

» *Rather than using systemic steroids in difficult cases, consultation should be sought from a dermatologist or allergist with experience in managing severe urticaria [ɜːrtɪk-]. If the lesions [i:] do not resolve<sup>4</sup>, referral [ɜ:] to a dermatologist or venereologist is necessary.*

*Use* to refer to/see<sup>5</sup>/be treated by **a dermatologist** • department of<sup>6</sup> / pediatric **dermatology** • **dermatologic** consultation / manifestations<sup>7</sup> / disorders<sup>8</sup> • **venereal** infection / transmission<sup>9</sup> / disease • **dermatologic** [tɪtɪs [aɪ] / **toxis**<sup>10</sup>

**anesthesiologist** [ænzəstɪzɪjəloʒɪst] *n term*

*syn* **anesthetist** [e] [i:] *n term* *BE* → U131-6

physician trained in administering anesthetics [e] and caring for people who are anesthetized **anesthesiology**<sup>1</sup> *n term* • **anesthetic**<sup>2</sup> [e] *adj & n* • **anesthesia**<sup>3</sup> [-θɪzɪə] *n* → U135-1

» *It is essential that the anesthesiologist continuously assess the depth of anesthesia<sup>4</sup>. The anesthesiologist should be aware of the severity [e] of ventricular dysfunction.*

*Use* **physician**<sup>5</sup> / pediatric / geriatric / experienced / skilled **anesthesiologist** • **nurse**<sup>6</sup> **anesthetist** • **anesthetic** drugs<sup>2</sup> / spray / solution [u:] / properties • general / local<sup>7</sup> / volatile **anesthetic**

(i) **Facharzt (FA) i. Ausbildung**

(ii) **Forschungsstipendiat(in)**  
Facharztausbildung; Forschungsstipendium<sup>1</sup> Ausbildung(szeit)<sup>2</sup> Forschungsstipendiat(in)<sup>3</sup> Krankenpflege-, Schwesternschüler(in)<sup>4</sup> Fachkollege/-in<sup>5</sup>

7

**praktischer Arzt, Arzt für Allgemeinmedizin**

Facharzt, Spezialist(in)<sup>1</sup> praktizieren, ausüben; Praxis<sup>2</sup> Allgemeinmediziner(in); allgemeinmedizinisch<sup>3</sup> Spezial-, Fachgebiet<sup>4</sup> s. spezialisieren auf<sup>5</sup> Harnwegsinfektion<sup>6</sup> Zahnarzt<sup>7</sup> prakt. Arzt<sup>8</sup> @selbstständige(r) Diplomkrankenschwester/-pfleger (allgem. Krankenpflege)<sup>9</sup> Psychiater(in)<sup>10</sup> Krebsspezialist(in)<sup>11</sup> Lungenfacharzt<sup>12</sup> HNO-Facharzt<sup>13</sup> fachärztl. Behandlung<sup>14</sup> Überweisung an e. Facharzt<sup>15</sup>

8

**Facharzt für innere Medizin, Internist(in)**

innere Medizin<sup>1</sup> Teilbereiche<sup>2</sup> neigen dazu<sup>3</sup> innere Organe<sup>4</sup> innere Verletzung<sup>5</sup>

9

**Hautfacharzt, Dermatologe, -login**

Facharzt f. Geschlechtskrankheiten/ Venerologie<sup>1</sup> Dermatologie<sup>2</sup> Geschlechts-, sexuell, venerisch<sup>3</sup> abklären<sup>4</sup> e. Dermatologen/-in konsultieren<sup>5</sup> dermatolog. Abteilung<sup>6</sup> Hautmanifestationen<sup>7</sup> Hautkrankheiten<sup>8</sup> Übertragung durch Sexualkontakt<sup>9</sup> Dermatoze, Hautkrankheit<sup>10</sup>

10

**FA f. Anästhesiologie, Anästhesist(in), Narkosefacharzt**

Anästhesiologie<sup>1</sup> anästhetisch, Narkose-; Anästhetikum<sup>2</sup> Anästhesie, Ausschaltung d. Schmerzempfindlichkeit, Schmerzunempfindlichkeit<sup>3</sup> Narkosetiefe<sup>4</sup> Narkosefacharzt<sup>5</sup> Narkoseschwester<sup>6</sup> Lokalanästhetikum<sup>7</sup>

11

**psychiatrist** [saɪkəˈɪətrɪst] *n term* *syn* **analyst**, \***shrink**, \***alienist** [eɪˈliən-] *n inf*  
*rel* **psychologist**<sup>1</sup> [saɪkəˈlɒdʒɪst] *n term* → U77-16

physician trained in the diagnosis and treatment of mental, emotional [ouf] and behavioral disorders<sup>2</sup>

**psychiatry**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **psychology** *n* • **psychiatric**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **psych(o)- comb**

- » *Optimally, evaluation of the child who is failing [eɪ] to thrive*<sup>5</sup> [aɪ] *is performed by a team including a physician, nutritionist, child developmentalist*<sup>6</sup>, *social worker, and psychiatrist or psychologist. Formerly the province*<sup>7</sup> *of psychiatrists and psychoanalysts*<sup>8</sup>, *psychotherapy*<sup>9</sup> *is now also practiced by social workers, clinical psychologists, nurses* [aɪ], *clergymen*<sup>10</sup> [kɪˈɹɪdʒɪmən], *and many paraprofessionals.*

Use consulting [Δ] **psychiatrist** • **psychotherapist**<sup>11</sup> /analysis • social / child / biologic / adolescent<sup>12</sup> [es]/ geriatric<sup>13</sup> [dʒɪəri-] **psychiatry** • descriptive / dynamic [daɪ-]/ forensic<sup>14</sup> **psychiatry** • **psychiatric care**<sup>15</sup> / disorder / evaluation / consultant • **psychotic** [saɪkəˈɒtɪk] /ogenic [saɪkəʊdʒenɪk] /ic<sup>16</sup> /ologic /omotor /osocial • **psychosomatic** /otropic /ostimulant<sup>17</sup> /edelic drug<sup>18</sup>

**radiologist** [reɪdɪˈɒlɒdʒɪst] *n term* → U99-1f

*rel* **x-ray technician**<sup>1</sup> [teknɪˈɒn] *n term*

physician trained in the use of radioactive substances, x-rays, and other imaging techniques<sup>2</sup>

**radiology**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **radiologic(al)** *adj* • **radiation**<sup>4</sup> [eɪ] *n* • **radio-** *comb*

- » *Thorough cleansing*<sup>5</sup> [e] *of the colon and examination by a skilled radiologist are essential if small polyps are to be demonstrated. The diagnosis of bone tumors is most precise* [saɪ] *when made by the clinician* [ɪf], *the radiologist, and the pathologist in close consultation.*

Use diagnostic / pediatric / experienced **radiologist** • **radiation therapist**<sup>6</sup> / oncologist • diagnostic / **interventional or invasive**<sup>7</sup> [eɪ] / therapeutic [ju:] **radiology** • **radiologic technology**<sup>1</sup> / examination • **radiobiology** /activity /graph<sup>8</sup> /isotope [aɪ] /nuclide /dense<sup>9</sup> /paque<sup>9</sup> [-peɪk] /therapist<sup>6</sup> • **radiologically** detectable / **guided**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] / normal

**neurologist** [n(j)ʊəˈɒlɒdʒɪst] *n term* *rel* **neurosurgeon**<sup>1</sup> *n term*

physician specializing in the diagnosis and treatment of nervous [aɪ] system disease

**neurology** *n term* • **neurologic(al)**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **neuro-** *comb*

- » *If the headache persists refer the patient to a neurologist. Consult* [Δ] *a neurologist or vascular surgeon*<sup>3</sup> *about evaluation and definitive treatment of transient ischemic* [ki:] *attacks*<sup>4</sup>. *If the fracture is more than a week old and there are no abnormal symptoms or signs, referral to a neurologist or neurosurgeon is satisfactory.*

Use **pediatric or child**<sup>5</sup> / clinical **neurologist** • **neurologic assessment or examination**<sup>6</sup> / status [æ|eɪ] • **neurologic** function [Δ] / abnormalities / **impairment**<sup>7</sup> [eə] / **deficit**<sup>8</sup> • **neuropathologist** /**psychologist**<sup>9</sup> /radiologist /-oncologist

**orthopedist** [ɔːrθəˈpiːdɪst] *n term* *syn* **orthoped** [ɔːrθəˈpɛd] *n jar*

*rel* **orthotist**<sup>1</sup>, **podiatrist**<sup>2</sup> [pəʊdɪˈɒtrɪst] *n term*

physician and surgeon specializing in the prevention, diagnosis and correction of disorders in the skeleton, muscles, joints and associated tissues

**orthopedics**<sup>3</sup> [ɪ:] *n term* • **orthopedic**<sup>4</sup> [ɪ:] *adj* • **orthotics**<sup>5</sup> [ɒ:] *n* • **ortho-** *comb* • **podiatry**<sup>6</sup> [aɪə] *n term* • **podiatric** [æ] *adj*

- » *Open injuries* [ɪndʒəˈiːz] *and complex dislocations require prompt examination by an orthopedist in the ER*<sup>7</sup>. *Most patients with tendinitis* [aɪ] *can be treated on an outpatient basis*<sup>8</sup>, *with referral* [aɪ] *to a rheumatologist* [ruːmə-] *or orthopedist as necessary.*

Use **pediatric orthopedist** • **orthopedic surgeon**<sup>9</sup> / nurse / consultation / referral • **orthopedic appliances**<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] / prosthesis [ɪ:] / shoes<sup>11</sup> / **surgery**<sup>12</sup> • **custom-made**<sup>13</sup> [Δ] **orthotics** • **orthotic devices**<sup>10</sup> [aɪs] / protection • practising / sports **podiatrist** • **podiatry** clinic • **podiatric** patient / ultrasound [Δ] / medicine

## Facharzt f. Psychiatrie, Psychiater(in)

Psychologe, -login<sup>1</sup> Verhaltensstörungen<sup>2</sup> Psychiatrie<sup>3</sup> psychiatrisch<sup>4</sup> m. Gedeihstörungen<sup>5</sup> Entwicklungspsychologe/-in<sup>6</sup> Kompetenzbereich<sup>7</sup> Psychoanalytiker<sup>8</sup> Psychotherapie<sup>9</sup> Geistliche<sup>10</sup> Psychiatrisch<sup>11</sup> Jugendpsychiatrie<sup>12</sup> Gerontopsychiatrie<sup>13</sup> forensische Psychiatrie<sup>14</sup> psychiatr. Betreuung<sup>15</sup> psychisch, seelisch<sup>16</sup> Psychostimulans, -tonikum<sup>17</sup> Psychedelikum, Psychotomimetikum, halluzinogene Substanz<sup>18</sup>

12

## Facharzt f. Radiologie, Radiologe, -login

Röntgenassistent(in)<sup>1</sup> bildgebende Verfahren<sup>2</sup> Radiologie<sup>3</sup> Strahlung, Bestrahlung<sup>4</sup> gründl. Reinigung<sup>5</sup> Strahlentherapeut(in)<sup>6</sup> Interventionsradiologie<sup>7</sup> Röntgenbild, -aufnahme<sup>8</sup> strahlendicht, -undurchlässig<sup>9</sup> unter Röntgendurchleuchtungskontrolle<sup>10</sup>

13

## Facharzt für Neurologie, Neurologe, -login

Facharzt f. Neurochirurgie, Neurochirurg(in)<sup>1</sup> neurologisch<sup>2</sup> Facharzt f. Gefäßchirurgie, Gefäßchirurg(in)<sup>3</sup> transitorische ischämische Attacken<sup>4</sup> Facharzt f. Kinderneurologie<sup>5</sup> neurolog. Untersuchung<sup>6</sup> neurolog. Schädigung<sup>7</sup> neurolog. Ausfall<sup>8</sup> Neuropsychologe/-in<sup>9</sup>

14

## FA f. Orthopädie, Orthopäde, Orthopädin

Bandagist(in), Orthopädiemechaniker(in)<sup>1</sup> Fußpfleger(in), Podologe, -login<sup>2</sup> Orthopädie<sup>3</sup> orthopädisch<sup>4</sup> Orthopädietechnik, orthopäd. Geräte/ Hilfsmittel<sup>5</sup> Fußpflege, Pediküre<sup>6</sup> Notaufnahme<sup>7</sup> ambulanz<sup>8</sup> Orthopäde/-in, Unfallchirurg(in), Orthopäde u. Chirurg<sup>9</sup> orthopädische Geräte<sup>10</sup> orthopädische Schuhe<sup>11</sup> orthopäd. Chirurgie<sup>12</sup> individuell angefertigte orthopäd. Hilfsmittel<sup>13</sup>

15

**gynecologist** [ɡaɪnəˈdʒɪnɪkɒːlədʒɪst] *n term*

rel **obstetrician**<sup>1</sup> [ɒːbstətrɪʃən] *n*, rel **neonatologist**<sup>2</sup> [niːəneɪtɒːlədʒɪst] *n term*

physician and surgeon specializing in disorders of sexual or reproductive function in women; in most countries it is practised in conjunction with obstetrics, the care of the mother and fetus [ɪ] during pregnancy, labor<sup>3</sup> [ɛɪ], childbirth and the puerperium<sup>4</sup> [ɪə]

**gynecology**<sup>5</sup> *n term* • **gynecologic(al)** *adj* • **obstetrics**<sup>6</sup> *n* • **neonatal** [ɛɪ] *adj*

- » Questionable abnormalities were noted on routine ultrasound examination done in the obstetrician's office. Multiple pregnancy should always be identified prenatally to allow the obstetrician and pediatrician or neonatologist to plan their management jointly [dʒ].

Use American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (abbr ACOG) • **gynecologist-in-chief**<sup>7</sup> • **gynecologic emergency**<sup>8</sup> / consultation / examination<sup>9</sup> / oncologist

**pediatrician** [piːdiətrɪʃən] *n term* opposite **geriatrician**<sup>1</sup> [dʒɛrɪətrɪʃən] *n term*

physician concerned with the development and care of children, childhood diseases and their treatment

**pediatrics**<sup>2</sup> [æ] *n term* • **geriatrics**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **pediatric** *adj* • **geriatric** [æ] *adj*

- » If the pediatrician is in attendance<sup>4</sup> in the delivery room<sup>5</sup> for a normal delivery, the physical examination is largely based on observation coupled [Δ] with auscultation of the chest. In case the nightmares<sup>6</sup> recur, the pediatrician has to make a more extensive investigation.

Use general **pediatrician** • **pediatric** cardiologist / nurse practitioner<sup>7</sup> (abbr PNP) • **pediatric dentistry**<sup>8</sup> / neurosurgery • **pediatric urology**<sup>9</sup> / otolaryngology / dietitian<sup>10</sup> [daɪətɪʃən] / intensive care unit<sup>11</sup> • **pediatric** advanced life support (abbr PALS) / anesthesia / surgery<sup>12</sup> • **pediatric** hospitalization / nursing / nutrition [ɪ] / dosage<sup>13</sup> [dɒʊsɪdʒ] / ward<sup>14</sup> [ɔː]

**ophthalmologist** [ɒːfθælmɒːlədʒɪst] *n term*, abbr **ophth**

syn **oculist** [ɒːkjuːlɪst] *n dated*, **eye specialist** *n clin*

physician trained in the anatomy, physiology and treatment of diseases of the eyes

**ophthalmology**<sup>1</sup> *n term* • **ophthalmic**<sup>2</sup> *adj* • **ophthalmologic** *adj* • **ophthalm(o)-** *comb*

- » Many facial [ɛɪ] injuries, if not promptly attended to<sup>3</sup> by an ophthalmologist, may lead to loss of vision<sup>4</sup> [ɪʒ]. Acute care by an eye specialist, including examination of the optic nerve head, is essential if blood is noted in the anterior chamber<sup>5</sup> [tʃɛɪ] (hyphema<sup>6</sup> [haɪfɪmə]).

Use neuro-**ophthalmologist** • general / clinical / pediatric / preventive **ophthalmologist** • **ophthalmic** surgeon / ointment<sup>7</sup> [ɔɪ] / examination / infection / solutions<sup>8</sup> • **ophthalmologic** assessment / referral / consultation / care • **ophthalmoscopy**<sup>9</sup> / dynamometry<sup>10</sup> [aɪ] / pathy / plegia<sup>11</sup> [ɒːfθælmouplɪdʒɪ(ɪ)ə]

**oto(rhino)laryngologist** [oʊˈtɔːraɪnɒlərɪŋɡɒːlədʒɪst] *n term*

syn **ENT specialist** *n clin*

physician trained in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the ear, the nose, and throat [ou]

**otorhinolaryngology**<sup>1</sup> *n term* • **ot(o)-**, **rhin(o)-**, **laryng(o)-** *comb*

- » Some otolaryngologists recommend prophylactic tympanoplasty [ɪ] tubes for children with cleft palate<sup>2</sup> and recurrent or persistent otitis [aɪ] media<sup>3</sup> [ɪɪ]. If cerebrospinal [aɪ] fluid rhinorrhea<sup>4</sup> [raɪnɒrɪə] is suspected, a CT scan followed by ENT and neurosurgical consultation is indicated.

Use pediatric **otolaryngologist** • **ENT chair**<sup>5</sup> / examination / trauma [ɒː] / emergency [ɔː] • **rhinitis**<sup>6</sup> [raɪnɪtɪs] / orrhea / oplasty<sup>7</sup> /ovirus [aɪ] • **ototoxic /scope**<sup>8</sup> /rrhea

**pharmacist** [fɑːrməsɪst] *n* → U9-4 rel **pharmacologist**<sup>1</sup> *n* → U92-1

professional trained in formulating and dispensing drugs and medications

**pharmaceutical**<sup>2</sup> [-suːtɪkəl] *adj & n* • **pharmacy**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **pharma(co)-** *comb*

- » Issues of grief and loss are addressed by all members of the hospice team (physician, nurse coordinator, psychosocial worker, chaplain<sup>4</sup> [tʃæplɪn], and pharmacist). Prior to discharge<sup>5</sup> from the hospital nurses and pharmacists will instruct patients on their medications.

Use clinical **pharmacist** • clinical<sup>6</sup> **pharmacy** • **pharmacopoeia**<sup>7</sup> [ɪɪ] /logy /therapy<sup>8</sup>

**Frauenarzt, FA f. Frauenheilkunde, Gynäkologe, -login**

Facharzt f. Geburtshilfe, Geburtshelfer(in)<sup>1</sup> Neonatologe, -login<sup>2</sup> Wehen<sup>3</sup> Wochenbett, Puerperium<sup>4</sup> Gynäkologie<sup>5</sup> Geburtshilfe<sup>6</sup> Vorstand d. gyn. Abteilung<sup>7</sup> gynäkolog. Notfall<sup>8</sup> gynäkolog. Untersuchung<sup>9</sup>

16

**FA f. Kinderheilkunde, Kinderarzt, Pädiater(in)**

Geriat(er)in<sup>1</sup> Kinderheilkunde, Pädiatrie<sup>2</sup> Altersheilkunde, Geriatrie<sup>3</sup> anwesend<sup>4</sup> Kreißaal<sup>5</sup> Alpträume<sup>6</sup> selbstständige(r) Kinderkrankenschwester/ -pfleger<sup>7</sup> Kinderzahnheilkunde<sup>8</sup> Kinderurologie<sup>9</sup> Kinderdiätassistent(in)<sup>10</sup> Kinderintensivstation<sup>11</sup> Kinderchirurgie<sup>12</sup> Kinderdosierung<sup>13</sup> Kinderstation<sup>14</sup>

17

**Facharzt f. Augenheilkunde, Augenarzt**

Augenheilkunde, Ophthalmologie<sup>1</sup> ophthalmisch, Augen-<sup>2</sup> behandelt, versorgt<sup>3</sup> Verlust d. Sehkraft, Visusverlust<sup>4</sup> vordere Augenkammer<sup>5</sup> Hyphaema<sup>6</sup> Augensalbe<sup>7</sup> Augewässer<sup>8</sup> Augenspiegelung, Ophthalmoskopie<sup>9</sup> Ophthalmodynamometrie<sup>10</sup> Augenmuskellähmung, Ophthalmoplegie<sup>11</sup>

18

**FA f. Hals-Nasen-Ohren-Heilkunde, HNO-Arzt**

Otorhinolaryngologie, Hals-Nasen-Ohren-Heilkunde, HNO<sup>1</sup> Gaumenspalte<sup>2</sup> Mittelohrentzündung, Otitis media<sup>3</sup> Liquorrhoe a. d. Nase<sup>4</sup> HNO-(Patienten)stuhl<sup>5</sup> Nasenschleimhautentzündung, Rhinitis<sup>6</sup> Nasen-, Rhinoplastik<sup>7</sup> Otoskop, Ohrenspiegel<sup>8</sup>

19

**Apotheker(in)**

Pharmakologe, -login<sup>1</sup> pharmazeutisch; Arzneimittel<sup>2</sup> Apotheke, Pharmazie<sup>3</sup> Krankenseelsorger(in)<sup>4</sup> Entlassung<sup>5</sup> Klinik-, Anstaltsapotheke<sup>6</sup> Arzneibuch, Pharmakopoe<sup>7</sup> Pharmakotherapie, medikamentöse Therapie<sup>8</sup>

20

**pathologist** [pəθɒlɔːlədʒɪst] *n term*rel **medical examiner**<sup>1</sup> *n term* → U12-21

physician trained in the nature, cause, process and effects of disease; examines samples of tissue removed during surgery [ɜː] to make an exact diagnosis and/or performs **postmortem examinations**<sup>2</sup>

**pathology**<sup>3</sup> *n term* • **pathologic(al)**<sup>4</sup> *adj* • **patho-** comb → U89-1

» Microscopically, the lesion can be confused with malignant melanoma by the inexperienced pathologist. Cervical polyps should be examined by a pathologist to exclude malignancy.

Use clinical or laboratory / surgical / neuro/ **forensic**<sup>1</sup> / **speech**<sup>5</sup> [spi:tʃ] **pathologist** • forensic / armed forces / aviation / independent **medical examiner** • **medical examiner's investigation**<sup>6</sup> • to notify the **medical examiner** • **cellular**<sup>8</sup> / clinical / brain / benign [bɪnəɪn] / **negative for**<sup>9</sup> **pathology** • **pathophysiology**<sup>10</sup> / **gen**<sup>11</sup>

**chiropractor** [kaɪrəpræktə] *n term* rel **osteopath(ist)**<sup>1</sup> [ɒːstɪpəθɪst] *n term*

specialist who treats disorders by manipulating the bones of the **spine**<sup>2</sup> [aɪ]

**chiropractic**<sup>3</sup> *adj & n term* • **osteopathy**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **osteopathic** *adj*

» Try to find a chiropractor whose practice is limited to conservative treatment of back pain and other musculoskeletal problems. Chiropractic treatment has been in existence for more than a hundred years. She is a practising osteopathist as well as a physiotherapist<sup>5</sup> [fɪziəʊ-]. A registered osteopath is an expert in the use of soft tissue techniques [teknɪːks], and **gentle** [dʒɛ] **mobilization and manipulation techniques**<sup>6</sup>.

Use **qualified**<sup>7</sup> / straight [streɪt] **chiropractor** • trained<sup>8</sup> **osteopathist** • **chiropractic** manipulation / **treatment**<sup>9</sup> / care • **chiropractic** healing [ɪː] / **medicine**<sup>10</sup> / **college** / **professional**<sup>11</sup> • **holistic**<sup>12</sup> [ou] / cranial [eɪ] / naturopathic **osteopathy** • **osteopathic practitioner or physician**<sup>1</sup> / **surgeon**

**quack (doctor)** [kwæk dɒːktə] *n* rel **healer**<sup>1</sup> [hiːlə] *n*

untrained person pretending to be a physician and claiming [eɪ] to cure diseases by useless procedures [sɪː], secret [ɪː] remedies, and worthless [ɜː] therapeutic [juː] machines [məʃɪːnz]

**quackery**<sup>2</sup> [kwækəri] *n* • **healing**<sup>3</sup> *n & adj*

» He was one of the most notorious [ɒː] **cancer-cure quacks**<sup>4</sup> of the day. Weight loss schemes [skiːmz] and devices [dɪːsɪs] probably are the most popular form of quackery.

Use **quack** treatment / cures [kjʊəz] / **remedies**<sup>5</sup> • **faith**<sup>6</sup> [feɪθ] **healer** • **healing power**<sup>7</sup> / **period** / **process** / **rate**<sup>8</sup> • **medical quackery**

**Pathologie, Pathologin**

Gerichtsmediziner(in)<sup>1</sup> Autopsien<sup>2</sup> Pathologie, Lehre v. d. Krankheiten; patholog. Abteilung<sup>3</sup> pathologisch, krankhaft<sup>4</sup> Logopäde/ -pädin<sup>5</sup> gerichtliche Sektion<sup>6</sup> d. Gerichtsmediziner(in) verständigen<sup>7</sup> Zellulärpathologie<sup>8</sup> kein patholog. Befund<sup>9</sup> Pathophysiologie<sup>10</sup> Krankheitserreger<sup>11</sup>

21

**Chiropraktiker(in)**

Osteopath(in)<sup>1</sup> Wirbelsäule<sup>2</sup> chiropraktisch; Chiropraktik, -praxis<sup>3</sup> Osteopathie<sup>4</sup> Physiotherapeutin<sup>5</sup> vorsichtige Mobilisations- und Manipulationstechniken<sup>6</sup> ausgebildete(r) Chiropraktiker(in)<sup>7</sup> ausgebildete(r) Osteopath(in)<sup>8</sup> Chirotherapie<sup>9</sup> Chiropraktik, manuelle Medizin, Chirotherapie<sup>10</sup> Chiropraktiker(in)<sup>11</sup> ganzheitl. Osteopathie<sup>12</sup>

22

**Kurpfuscher, Quacksalber**

Heiler(in)<sup>1</sup> Kurpfuscherei, Quacksalberei<sup>2</sup> Heilung; heilend, Heil-<sup>3</sup> berühmt-berüchtigter Krebsheiler<sup>4</sup> quacksalberische Mittel<sup>5</sup> Gesundheitsbeter(in)<sup>6</sup> Heilkraft<sup>7</sup> Heilungsrate<sup>8</sup>

23

**Unit 16 Nurses & Paramedical Staff**

Related Units: **14** Hospitals, **15** Medical Staff, **20** Hospital Routines, **134** Perioperative Management, **140** Wound Healing, **142** Physical Therapy

**health care worker** *n, abbr HCW* *syn* **health professional** *n*  
*sim* **allied** [ælaɪd] **health** or **paramedical personnel**<sup>1</sup> *n*

general term for professionals in medical, social, and paramedical services and supportive health care, e.g. physicians, dentists, podiatrists<sup>2</sup>, nurses, audiologists<sup>3</sup> [ɒː], and therapists

» Almost all hospitals have implemented body substance [Δ] isolation, which requires use of gloves [Δ] whenever a health care worker anticipates contact with body secretions [ɪː]. Hospitals may be categorized by their ability to provide acute care as determined by the availability of physicians [ɪː], nurses, allied health personnel, and other hospital resources.

Use hospital / **ancillary**<sup>4</sup> [sɪ] / occupationally [eɪ] exposed **health care worker** • pregnant / infected / (non)immunized **HCW** • **emergency**<sup>5</sup> [ɜː] / **social**<sup>6</sup> / **rescue**<sup>7</sup> **worker** • **laboratory**<sup>8</sup> / mental health / **grief**<sup>9</sup> **worker** • **health care** team / professional / **services**<sup>10</sup> • **health care** provider / center / **facilities**<sup>11</sup> [sɪ] • **health care** consumer / **proxy**<sup>12</sup> / costs / **system**<sup>13</sup> • **paramedical professions**<sup>14</sup> / specialists • **emergency medical services**<sup>15</sup> (abbr EMS) / (hospital) **auxiliary** [ɒːgz-] or **ancillary**<sup>16</sup> **personnel**

**Mitarbeiter(in) im Gesundheitswesen**

paramediz. Personal, ärztl. Hilfspersonal<sup>1</sup> Fußpfleger<sup>2</sup> Audiologen<sup>3</sup> medizinische Hilfskraft<sup>4</sup> Rettungsarbeiter(in)<sup>5</sup> Sozialarbeiter(in)<sup>6</sup> Rettungshelfer(in)<sup>7</sup> Laborant(in)<sup>8</sup> Trauerbegleiter(in)<sup>9</sup> Gesundheitsfürsorge, med. Versorgung<sup>10</sup> Gesundheitseinrichtungen<sup>11</sup> Betreuungsvollmacht, Patientenverfügung, Vorsorgevollmacht<sup>12</sup> Gesundheitswesen<sup>13</sup> Heilhilfsberufe<sup>14</sup> Notfalldienst<sup>15</sup> Hilfspersonal<sup>16</sup>

1

**nurse** [nɜːrs] *n* & *v* *sim* **sister**<sup>1</sup> [ˈsɪstə] *n* *BE*

(*n*) person trained in health care of sick, injured or handicapped people (usually under the direction of a physician)

**nursing**<sup>2</sup> [ˈnɜːsɪŋ] *n* & *adj* • **nursery**<sup>3</sup> *n* • **nursology**<sup>4</sup> *n* term • **nursemaid**<sup>5</sup> [eɪ] *n* *inf*

» *Examine the nurses' notes from the preceding evening. Authorize [v:] the nurse to dispense a mild analgesic [dʒɪ:] as necessary. As patients become progressively incapacitated [æɪ], visiting nurse assistance or part-time nurses<sup>7</sup> are almost invariably required.*

*Use* **to nurse sb. back to health**<sup>8</sup> • public [ʌ] health (*abbr* PHN) or community (*BE*)/ **general duty**<sup>9</sup> [(j)u:] **nurse** • **charge**<sup>10</sup> [tʃɑːrʒɪ] / school / **trained office**<sup>11</sup> **nurse** • specially trained / **surgical** [ɜː] or **scrub**<sup>12</sup> [ʌ] **nurse** • **staff**<sup>13</sup> / **assisting**<sup>14</sup> **nurse** • **nurse-patient relationship** /-client [aɪ] interaction • **nurse-patient ratio** [reɪʃiʊ] / **educator** • **nursing auxiliary**<sup>14</sup> / **assistant**<sup>14</sup> • special care (*abbr* SCN) / **newborn nursery** • well-baby / observation **nursery** • **director of**<sup>15</sup> / team **nursing** • **ward**<sup>10</sup> [ɔː] **sister** (*BE*) • **nurses' station**<sup>16</sup> • **nursing home**<sup>17</sup> / **staff**<sup>18</sup> / **mother**<sup>19</sup> • **nursing assessment**<sup>20</sup> / **diagnosis** / **intervention** • **nursing goal**<sup>21</sup> [gou] / **care plan** / **audit**<sup>22</sup> [ɔː] • **skilled**<sup>23</sup> / **home**<sup>24</sup> / **supportive** / **intensive nursing care** • **respiratory** / **orthopedic** [iː] / **constant nursing care** • **inadequate** / **psychiatric** [saɪkɪ-] **nursing care**

**student** [st(j)uːdɪnt] **nurse** *n* *syn* **trainee** [treɪniː] or **pupil** [pjuːpəl] **nurse** *n*, *syn* **probationer** [eɪ] (**nurse**) *n* *BE*

nursing student who is enrolled at a school of nursing<sup>1</sup> and is undergoing training at a hospital

» *The student nurse was asked to hold the patient's ankles. She planned to become a registered nurse but she only worked as a nurse probationer [eɪ]. The purpose of assignments<sup>2</sup> [aɪ] is to provide nursing care to patients in a learning environment for the trainee nurse.*

*Use* 2<sup>nd</sup> year **trainee nurse** • **practical** / **graduate**<sup>3</sup> [ædʒ] **nurse** • **nurse's aide**<sup>4</sup> [eɪd]

**registered nurse** [redʒɪstərd nɜːrs] *n* term, *abbr* RN

*sim* **certified** [sɜːtɪfaɪd] **nurse**<sup>1</sup> *n* term, *abbr* CN

professional nurse trained at an approved school of nursing and licensed [aɪs] by state authorities

» *The enterostomal therapist is usually a RN who has taken specialized training and is certified in the field. Student nurses help to ease<sup>2</sup> [iːz] the work load of certified nurses.*

*Use* certified (*abbr* CRN) / **state**<sup>3</sup> (*abbr* SRN) **registered nurse** • **qualified nurse** • **licensed practical**<sup>4</sup> (*abbr* LPN) / **licensed vocational**<sup>4</sup> (*abbr* LVN) **nurse**

**nurse specialist** *n* term *sim* **nurse practitioner**<sup>1</sup> *n*, *rel* **nurse clinician**<sup>2</sup> *n* term

registered nurse with advanced training in a particular area of patient care; e.g. neurosurgery

» *Once the diagnosis of cancer is made, management of the patient is best undertaken in collaboration with medical and surgical oncologists, oncology nurse specialists, and a number of other consulting<sup>3</sup> professionals. Functions of the clinical nurse specialist include providing direct patient care, teaching patients and their families, and conducting research<sup>4</sup>.*

*Use* **clinical**<sup>2</sup> **nurse specialist** • **nurse anesthetist**<sup>5</sup> [e] / **epidemiologist** [e|i:] (*abbr* NE) / **coordinator** • **pediatric**<sup>6</sup> (*abbr* PNP) / **family** (*abbr* FNP) **nurse practitioner**

**nurse-midwife** *n* term *sim* **midwife**<sup>1</sup> [mɪdwaɪf] *n*,

*rel* **wet nurse**<sup>2</sup>, **dry nurse**<sup>3</sup> *n* *clin*

registered nurse qualified by advanced training to assist women during pregnancy, labor [eɪ], delivery and the postpartum period

(**nurse**) **midwifery**<sup>4</sup> *n* term • **dry-nursing**<sup>5</sup> *n* *clin*

» *Nurse-midwives conduct delivery independently, care for the newborn, procure<sup>6</sup> [-kjuː] medical assistance when necessary, and execute emergency measures [eɪ] as required. A dry nurse is a female who is in charge of another woman's child but does not breast-feed<sup>7</sup> [e] it.*

*Use* certified nurse- (*abbr* CNM) / **lay**<sup>8</sup> **midwife** • American College of **Nurse-Midwives**

**(Kranken)schwester, -pfleger; pflegen; stillen**

Oberschwester, (Ordens)schwester<sup>1</sup> Krankenpflege; Pflege<sup>2</sup> Kindergarten; Kinder-, Säuglingszimmer<sup>3</sup> Pflegeforschung<sup>4</sup> Kindermädchen<sup>5</sup> behindert<sup>6</sup> Teilzeitkrankenschwestern, -pfleger<sup>7</sup> gesund pflegen<sup>8</sup> Hilfsschwester<sup>9</sup> Stationsschwester<sup>10</sup> ausgebild. Arzthelfer(in)<sup>11</sup> OP-Schwester, -pfleger<sup>12</sup> stellvert. Stationschwester, ausgebild. Krankenschwester<sup>13</sup> Schwesternhelfer(in)<sup>14</sup> Pflegedienstleiter(in), leitende Krankenpflegekraft<sup>15</sup> Schwesternzimmer<sup>16</sup> Pflegeheim; (*BE*) Privatklinik<sup>17</sup> Pflegepersonal<sup>18</sup> Pflegemutter; stillende M.<sup>19</sup> Pflegeanamnese<sup>20</sup> Pflegeziel<sup>21</sup> Pflegeevaluation<sup>22</sup> professionelle Krankenpflege<sup>23</sup> häusl. Krankenpflege<sup>24</sup>

2

**Schwesternschülerin, Lernschwester**

Krankenpflegeschule<sup>1</sup> prakt. Übungen<sup>2</sup> diplomierte(r) Krankenschwester/-pfleger<sup>3</sup> Schwesternhelfer(in)<sup>4</sup>

3

**diplom. Gesundheits- und Krankenschwester/-pfleger**

geprüfte(r) Krankenschwester/-pfleger<sup>1</sup> erleichtern<sup>2</sup> staatl. geprüfte(r) Gesundheits- u. Krankenschwester/-pfleger<sup>3</sup> geprüfte(r) Krankenpflegehelfer(in)<sup>4</sup>

4

**Fach(kranken)schwester, -pfleger**

®selbstständige(r) Diplomkrankenschwester/-pfleger (allgem. Krankenpflege)<sup>1</sup> selbstständige(r) Klinikschwester/-pfleger<sup>2</sup> beratende<sup>3</sup> Forschung betreiben<sup>4</sup> Narkose-schwester<sup>5</sup> Kinderkrankenschwester, -pfleger<sup>6</sup>

5

**diplomierte(r) Hebamme/Entbindungspfleger**

Hebamme, Entbindungspfleger, Geburtshelfer(in)<sup>1</sup> Amme<sup>2</sup> Säuglingsschwester<sup>3</sup> Geburtshilfe<sup>4</sup> Säuglingspflege<sup>5</sup> beziehen<sup>6</sup> stillen<sup>7</sup> Laienhebamme<sup>8</sup>

6

**visiting nurse** *n*, *abbr* VN *syn* **public** or **community health nurse** *n*

nurse specialized in **public** health and **primary** care **nursing** who is employed by the **local health authorities**<sup>1</sup> to treat patients in their homes; in Britain also called **district nurse**

- » The **visiting nurse** can **administer medications**<sup>2</sup> and **monitor**<sup>3</sup> the patient's **physical condition**. If there are further **problems** a **public health nurse** will be sent to the home.

**social worker** *n* *sim* **welfare worker**<sup>1</sup> *n*, **health visitor**<sup>2</sup> *n* BE → U13-6

individual, usually with a university degree in social work, who **provides counsel**<sup>3</sup> and aid to individuals with emotional and family problems

**social** [soʊʃəl] **work**<sup>4</sup> *n* • **socio-** *comb* • **society** [səˈsaɪəti] *n* • **welfare**<sup>5</sup> [ˈwɛlfəɪə] *n*

- » Have a **social worker** assess the ability of the family, friends, and **community agencies** [eɪdʒɪs] to provide [aɪ] the support that will allow the patient to remain at home. The families refused assistance from a **social worker** but accepted **community nurse intervention**. Home visiting by **welfare workers** or a **public health nurse** was needed.

Use **family**<sup>6</sup> / **medical**<sup>7</sup> / **clinical** / **psychiatric**<sup>8</sup> **social worker** • **psychological worker** • **community service work** • **social network**<sup>9</sup> / **isolation** / **interaction** • **social medicine**<sup>10</sup> / **security**<sup>11</sup> • **child**<sup>12</sup> **welfare** • **sociology** / **genetic** / **economic status**

**medic** [ˈmedɪk] *n* *inf* *syn* **medical corpsman** *n* *term*

*rel* **paramedic**<sup>1</sup>, **medical officer**<sup>2</sup> *n* *term* → U8-6

(i) member of a **medical unit** in the military or police forces

(ii) more broadly also used to refer to paramedics in the **emergency medical services**<sup>3</sup>, **medical students**, or any person involved in medical work

- » She's a **medic** with the 545th Military Police Company, Fort Hood, TX. **Central Hospital**, this is **medic 19**, how do you copy?<sup>4</sup> We analyzed the factors contributing to **paramedic on-scene time during evaluation** and **management of blunt** [ʌ] **trauma**<sup>5</sup>.

Use **army** or **military** / **special forces** / **combat**<sup>6</sup> **medic** • **medic unit** or **team** / **bag** • **emergency medical technician**<sup>7</sup> [ɪtɪ] (*abbr* EMT)-/ **field** / **well-trained paramedic** • **medic-alert** [æɪ] **tag**<sup>8</sup> / **-alert bracelet**<sup>9</sup> [eɪs] • **paramedic unit** / (**rescue**) **team** • **transport or loading**<sup>10</sup> [oʊ] / **triage**<sup>11</sup> [ˈtraɪdʒ] **officer** • **public relations**<sup>12</sup> / (**pediatric**) **house**<sup>13</sup> **officer**

**medical technologist** [ˈteknɒlədʒɪst] *n* *term*, *abbr* MT

*rel* **medical laboratory technician** [ˈteknɪləʃn] or **assistant**<sup>1</sup> *n* *term*

health care worker trained in clinical laboratory procedures; technologists mostly hold the highest rank in the field while technicians carry out routine work under the supervision of technologists or physicians

- » All **technologists involved in urography** should be well trained in the recognition of the early signs of **contrast reactions** and in **resuscitation**<sup>2</sup>. Transfer clearly labeled specimens directly to the **clinical pathologist in charge**<sup>3</sup> or to the **responsible laboratory technician**.

Use **emergency**<sup>4</sup> (*abbr* EMT) / **ophthalmic** (*abbr* OMT) **medical technician** • **dental** (**laboratory**)<sup>5</sup> / **tissue typing** **technician** • **x-ray** or **radiology**<sup>6</sup> / **respiratory care** / **parasitology** **technician** • **urodynamic** / **emergency transport or ambulance**<sup>4</sup> **technician** • **CT-scan** / **histologic** (*abbr* HT) **technician** • **medical record**<sup>7</sup> / **dietetic**<sup>8</sup> (*abbr* DT) / **cardiac rescue** **technician** • **office or physician's**<sup>9</sup> / **dental**<sup>10</sup> **assistant** • **surgical**<sup>11</sup> / **respiratory therapy** **assistant** • **medical** (*abbr* MT) / **registered care** (*abbr* RCT) / **chemistry** **technologist** • **certified surgical**<sup>12</sup> (*abbr* CST) / **cardiovascular** (*abbr* CVT) **technologist** • **cyto** / **electroneurodiagnostic** (*abbr* ENDT) **technologist**

**perfusionist** [pəˈfjuːʒənɪst] *n* *term*, *abbr* PERF

*syn* **perfusion technologist** *n* *term*, *abbr* PFT

highly skilled health professional who operates a heart-lung machine [ɪ] under the supervision of a physician or assists **extracorporeal** [ɪ] **circulation**<sup>1</sup>

**perfuse**<sup>2</sup> [pəˈfjuːz] *v* *term* • **perfusion**<sup>3</sup> [pəˈfjuːʒən] *n*

- » During **open heart** [hɑːt] **surgery**, the **perfusionist operates**<sup>4</sup> the **heart/lung bypass** [aɪ] **machine**<sup>5</sup>. The **perfusion technologist** is also trained in the administration of **blood products**, **anesthetic** [e] **agents** [eɪdʒənts] and **drugs**.

Use **certified clinical** (*abbr* CCP) / **cardiovascular** **perfusionist** • **perfusionist training program** / **instructor** [ɪ] • **tissue** / **arterial** [ɪ] / **cardiac** / **lung**<sup>6</sup> [ʌ] **perfusion** • **poor** **skin**<sup>7</sup> / **renal**<sup>8</sup> [ɪ] **perfusion** • **perfusion lung scan**<sup>9</sup> / **rate** / **catheter**<sup>10</sup>

**Gemeineschwester, -pfleger**  
regionale Gesundheitsbehörden!  
Medikamente verabreichen<sup>2</sup> über-  
prüfen<sup>3</sup>

7

**Sozialarbeiter(in)**

Fürsorger(in)<sup>1</sup> Krankenschwester  
m. Zusatzqualifikation in häusl.  
Krankenpflege u. Geburtshilfe<sup>2</sup> be-  
rät<sup>3</sup> Sozialarbeit<sup>4</sup> Sozialhilfe, Wohl-  
ergehen<sup>5</sup> Familienhelfer(in), -für-  
sorger(in)<sup>6</sup> Sozialbetreuer(in) i.  
Krankenhaus<sup>7</sup> psychiatr. Betreu-  
er(in)<sup>8</sup> soziales Netz<sup>9</sup> Sozialmedi-  
zin<sup>10</sup> Sozialversicherung, -hilfe<sup>11</sup>  
Kinderfürsorge<sup>12</sup>

8

(i) **Sanitätssoldat(in)**(ii) **med. Helfer(in)**

Retungsassistent(in)<sup>1</sup> Amtsarzt/-  
ärztin; Stabsarzt<sup>2</sup> Notfalldienst<sup>3</sup>  
wie ist d. Empfang<sup>4</sup> stumpfes Trau-  
ma<sup>5</sup> Feldsanitäter(in)<sup>6</sup> Rettungs-  
sanitäter<sup>7</sup> med. Informationsarm-  
plakette<sup>8</sup> med. Informationsarm-  
band<sup>9</sup> Logistikleiter(in)<sup>10</sup> ärztl. Ein-  
satzleiter(in)<sup>11</sup> Pressesprecher(in)<sup>12</sup>  
®Assistenzarzt/-ärztin, Turnusarzt/  
-ärztin (öst.)<sup>13</sup>

9

**medizinisch-technische(r)****Assistent(in), MTA**

Laboratorium(s)assistent(in)<sup>1</sup> Re-  
animation, Wiederbelebung<sup>2</sup> lei-  
tend, verantwortlich<sup>3</sup> Rettungs-  
sanitäter(in)<sup>4</sup> Zahntechniker(in)<sup>5</sup>  
radiolog.-techn. Assistent(in) /  
Röntgenassistent(in)<sup>6</sup> med. Doku-  
mentationsassistent(in)<sup>7</sup> Diätassis-  
tent(in)<sup>8</sup> Arzthelfer(in)<sup>9</sup> Zahnarzt-  
helfer(in), -assistent(in)<sup>10</sup> Operati-  
onsassistent(in), zweite(r) Chi-  
rurg(in)<sup>11</sup> technische(r) Operati-  
onsassistent(in)<sup>12</sup>

10

**Kardiotechniker(in)**

extrakorporaler Kreislauf<sup>1</sup> durch-  
strömen, perfundieren<sup>2</sup> Durchblu-  
tung, -strömung, Perfusion<sup>3</sup> be-  
dient<sup>4</sup> Herz-Lungen-Maschine<sup>5</sup>  
Lungenperfusion<sup>6</sup> schlechte Haut-  
durchblutung<sup>7</sup> Nierendurchblu-  
tung, -perfusion<sup>8</sup> Lungenperfusi-  
onsszintigramm<sup>9</sup> Perfusor, Sprit-  
zenpumpe<sup>10</sup>

11